

Document Database Service

User Guide

Issue 01
Date 2023-01-30



Copyright © Huawei Technologies Co., Ltd. 2024. All rights reserved.

No part of this document may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means without prior written consent of Huawei Technologies Co., Ltd.

Trademarks and Permissions



HUAWEI and other Huawei trademarks are trademarks of Huawei Technologies Co., Ltd.

All other trademarks and trade names mentioned in this document are the property of their respective holders.

Notice

The purchased products, services and features are stipulated by the contract made between Huawei and the customer. All or part of the products, services and features described in this document may not be within the purchase scope or the usage scope. Unless otherwise specified in the contract, all statements, information, and recommendations in this document are provided "AS IS" without warranties, guarantees or representations of any kind, either express or implied.

The information in this document is subject to change without notice. Every effort has been made in the preparation of this document to ensure accuracy of the contents, but all statements, information, and recommendations in this document do not constitute a warranty of any kind, express or implied.

Security Declaration

Vulnerability

Huawei's regulations on product vulnerability management are subject to the *Vul. Response Process*. For details about this process, visit the following web page:

<https://www.huawei.com/en/psirt/vul-response-process>

For vulnerability information, enterprise customers can visit the following web page:

<https://securitybulletin.huawei.com/enterprise/en/security-advisory>

Contents

1 Data Migration.....	1
1.1 Migration Scheme Overview.....	1
1.2 Migrating Data Using DRS.....	2
1.3 Migrating Data Using mongoexport and mongoimport.....	5
1.4 Migrating Data Using mongodump and mongorestore.....	8
2 Performance Tuning.....	13
2.1 Parameters.....	13
2.2 Read and Write Performance.....	14
2.3 High CPU Usage.....	15
2.4 High Storage Usage.....	21
2.5 High Memory Usage.....	23
2.6 Load Imbalance of Cluster Instances.....	24
2.7 Slow Request Locating.....	26
2.8 Statement Optimization.....	28
2.9 Sharding.....	30
3 Permissions Management.....	36
3.1 Creating a User and Granting Permissions.....	36
3.2 Creating a Custom Policy.....	37
3.3 Syntax of RBAC Policies.....	39
4 Instance Lifecycle Management.....	42
4.1 Instance Statuses.....	42
4.2 Exporting Instance Information.....	43
4.3 Restarting an Instance or a Node.....	46
4.4 Deleting a Pay-per-Use Instance.....	50
4.5 Recycling an Instance.....	51
4.5.1 Modifying the Recycling Policy.....	51
4.5.2 Rebuilding an Instance.....	52
5 Instance Modifications.....	54
5.1 Changing an Instance Name.....	54
5.2 Changing an Instance Description.....	54
5.3 Modifying an Instance Tag.....	55
5.4 Changing the Name of the Replica Set in the Connection Address.....	56

5.5 Upgrading a Minor Engine Version.....	56
5.6 Upgrading a Major Engine Version.....	59
5.7 Scaling Up Storage Space.....	60
5.7.1 Scaling Up a Cluster Instance.....	60
5.7.2 Scaling Up a Replica Set Instance.....	62
5.7.3 Scaling Up a Read Replica.....	65
5.7.4 Scaling Up a Single Node Instance.....	67
5.8 Changing an Instance Class.....	69
5.8.1 Changing a Cluster Instance Class.....	69
5.8.2 Changing a Replica Set Instance Class.....	77
5.8.3 Changing a Single Node Instance Class.....	82
5.9 Changing Cluster Instance Nodes.....	85
5.9.1 Adding Cluster Instance Nodes.....	85
5.9.2 Adding Read Replicas to a Cluster Instance.....	89
5.9.3 Reverting Cluster Instance Nodes.....	90
5.10 Changing Replica Set Instance Nodes.....	91
5.10.1 Adding Replica Set Instance Nodes.....	91
5.10.2 Adding Read Replicas to a Replica Set Instance.....	94
5.10.3 Manually Switching the Primary and Secondary Nodes of a Replica Set.....	95
5.10.4 Deleting Replica Set Instance Nodes.....	98
5.10.5 Deleting Read Replicas from a Replica Set Instance.....	99
5.11 Configuring the Maintenance Window.....	101
5.12 Changing an AZ.....	103
5.13 Updating the OS of a DB Instance.....	105
6 Data Backups.....	106
6.1 Backup Principles and Solutions.....	106
6.2 Configuring an Automated Backup Policy.....	109
6.3 Configuring an Incremental Backup Policy.....	116
6.4 Configuring the Cross-Region Backup Policy.....	119
6.5 Setting Backup Method for a Single Node Instance.....	122
6.6 Creating a Manual Backup.....	124
6.7 Deleting a Manual Backup.....	127
6.8 Deleting an Automated Backup.....	128
6.9 Stopping a Backup.....	129
6.10 Downloading a Backup File.....	131
6.10.1 Using OBS Browser+.....	131
6.10.2 Using Current Browser.....	133
6.10.3 Using Download URL.....	134
7 Data Restorations.....	137
7.1 Solutions.....	137
7.2 Restoring Data to a New Instance.....	138
7.2.1 Restoring a Cluster Backup to a New Instance.....	138

7.2.2 Restoring a Replica Set Backup to a New Instance.....	140
7.2.3 Restoring a Single Node Backup to a New Instance.....	141
7.2.4 Restoring a Cross-Region Backup to a New DB Instance.....	143
7.3 Restoring Data to the Original Instance.....	144
7.3.1 Restoring a Cluster Backup to the Original Instance.....	144
7.3.2 Restoring a Replica Set Backup to the Original Instance.....	146
7.3.3 Restoring a Single Node Backup to the Original Instance.....	147
7.4 Restoring Data to a Point in Time.....	149
7.4.1 Restoring a Cluster Instance to a Point in Time.....	149
7.4.2 Restoring a Replica Set Instance to a Point in Time.....	151
7.4.3 Restoring a Replica Set Database and Table to a Point in Time.....	153
7.4.4 Restoring a Cross-Region Backup to a Point in Time.....	156
7.5 Restoring Data to an On-Premises Database.....	158
7.5.1 Restoring a Cluster Backup to an On-premises Database.....	159
7.5.1.1 Overview.....	159
7.5.1.2 Directories and Configurations.....	159
7.5.1.3 Restoring the configsvr Replica Set.....	161
7.5.1.4 Restoring the shardsvr1 Replica Set.....	164
7.5.1.5 Restoring the shardsvr2 Replica Set.....	167
7.5.1.6 Restoring the dds mongos Node.....	171
7.5.1.7 Checking the Cluster Status.....	171
7.5.2 Restoring a Replica Set Backup to an On-Premises Database.....	171
7.5.3 Restoring a Single Node Backup to an On-Premises Database.....	174
7.6 Restoring Data of Enhanced Edition.....	175
8 Parameter Template Management.....	176
8.1 Overview.....	176
8.2 Creating a Parameter Template.....	177
8.3 Modifying DDS DB Instance Parameters.....	179
8.4 Viewing Parameter Change History.....	182
8.5 Exporting a Parameter Template.....	183
8.6 Comparing Parameter Templates.....	184
8.7 Replicating a Parameter Template.....	185
8.8 Resetting a Parameter Template.....	186
8.9 Applying a Parameter Template.....	187
8.10 Viewing Application Records of a Parameter Template.....	188
8.11 Modifying the Description of a Parameter Template.....	188
8.12 Deleting a Parameter Template.....	189
9 Connection Management.....	190
9.1 Querying DB Instance Connections and Managing Sessions.....	190
9.2 Configuring Cross-CIDR Access.....	193
9.3 Enabling IP Addresses of Shard and Config Nodes.....	195
9.4 Changing a Private IP Address.....	202

9.5 Changing a Database Port.....	203
9.6 Applying for and Modifying a Private Domain Name.....	205
10 Database Usage.....	207
10.1 Creating a Database Account Using Commands.....	207
10.2 Creating a Database Using Commands.....	210
10.3 Which Commands are Supported or Restricted by DDS?.....	211
11 Data Security.....	220
11.1 Enabling or Disabling SSL.....	220
11.2 Resetting the Administrator Password.....	224
11.3 Changing a Security Group.....	225
12 Monitoring and Alarm Reporting.....	229
12.1 DDS Metrics.....	229
12.2 Configuring Monitoring by Seconds.....	246
12.3 Viewing DDS Metrics.....	248
12.4 Configuring Alarm Rules.....	250
12.5 Managing Alarm Rules.....	251
12.6 Event Monitoring.....	252
12.6.1 Introduction to Event Monitoring.....	252
12.6.2 Viewing Event Monitoring Data.....	253
12.6.3 Creating an Alarm Rule to Monitor an Event.....	254
12.6.4 Events Supported by Event Monitoring.....	256
13 Auditing.....	261
13.1 Key Operations Recorded by CTS.....	261
13.2 Viewing CTS Traces.....	264
14 Logs.....	265
14.1 Log Reporting.....	265
14.2 Error Logs.....	271
14.3 Slow Query Logs.....	274
14.4 Audit Logs.....	278
14.4.1 Audit Log Policy Management.....	278
14.4.2 Viewing Audit Logs on the LTS Console.....	283
14.4.3 Viewing Audit Logs on the DDS Console.....	285
15 Task Center.....	287
16 DBA Assistant.....	290
16.1 Real-Time Diagnosis.....	290
16.1.1 Real-Time Sessions.....	290
17 SQL Execution Control.....	292
18 Cross-AZ Disaster Recovery.....	301
18.1 Creating a Cross-AZ Cluster Instance.....	301

18.2 Creating a Cross-AZ Replica Set Instance.....	302
19 Billing.....	305
19.1 Renewing Instances.....	305
19.2 Changing the Billing Mode from Pay-per-Use to Yearly/Monthly.....	306
19.3 Changing the Billing Mode from Yearly/Monthly to Pay-per-Use.....	307
19.4 Unsubscribing from a Yearly/Monthly Instance.....	308
20 Tags.....	311
20.1 Adding or Modifying a Tag.....	311
20.2 Filtering Instances by Tag.....	313
20.3 Deleting a Tag.....	314
21 Quotas.....	316
22 DDS Usage Suggestions.....	318
22.1 Design Rules.....	318
22.2 Development Rules.....	319
A Change History.....	323

1 Data Migration

1.1 Migration Scheme Overview

DDS provides multiple migration schemes to migrate MongoDB databases in different service scenarios.

Table 1-1 Migration schemes

Scenario	Migration Types	References
Migrating data using the export and import tools	Full	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Migrating Data Using mongoexport and mongoimport• Migrating Data Using mongodump and mongorestore
Migrating data from other cloud MongoDB to DDS	Full +incremental	Migrating from Other Cloud MongoDB to DDS
Migrating data from on-premises MongoDB to DDS	Full +incremental	Migrating from On-Premises MongoDB to DDS
Migrating data from ECS-hosted MongoDB to DDS	Full +incremental	Migrating from ECS MongoDB Databases to DDS
Migrating data from DDS to MongoDB	Full +incremental	Migrating from DDS to MongoDB

1.2 Migrating Data Using DRS

Data Replication Service (DRS) helps migrate your databases to DDS DB instances. During the migration, the source remains operational even if a transfer is interrupted, thereby minimizing application downtime.

Prerequisites

To improve the stability and security of your migration ensure that your instances meet the migration requirements described in [Migration Preparations](#).

Migration Types

- Full migration**
 This migration type is suitable for scenarios where some service interruptions are acceptable. All objects and data in non-system databases are migrated to the destination database in a single batch. The objects include tables, views, and stored procedures. If you perform a full migration, stop operations on the source database, or data generated in the source database during the migration will result in inconsistencies with the destination database.
- Full+Incremental migration**
 This migration type allows you to migrate data without interrupting services. After a full migration initializes the destination database, an incremental migration initiates and parses logs to ensure data consistency between the source and destination databases. If you select the **Full+Incremental** migration type, data generated during the full migration will be synchronized to the destination database with zero downtime, ensuring that both the source and destination databases remain accessible throughout the process.

Supported Source and Destination Databases

Table 1-2 Supported databases

Source DB	Destination DB
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> On-premises Mongo (versions 3.2, 3.4, and 4.0) Self-built MongoDB on ECSs (versions 3.2, 3.4, and 4.0) MongoDB 3.2, 3.4, and 4.0 on other clouds (Tencent Cloud MongoDB 3.2 is not supported.) DDS DB instances (versions 3.4 and 4.0) 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> DDS DB instances (versions 3.4, 4.0, and 4.2) <p>NOTE The destination database version must be the same as or later than the source database version.</p>

Supported Migration Objects

Different types of migration tasks support different migration objects. For details, see [Table 1-3](#). DRS will automatically check the objects you selected before the migration.

Table 1-3 Migration objects

Type	Precautions
Migration objects	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● Object level: table level, database level, or instance level (full migration). ● Supported migration objects: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> – Associated objects must be migrated at the same time to avoid migration failure caused by missing associated objects. Common associations: collections referenced by views, and views referenced by views – Replica set: Only collections (including validator and capped collections), indexes, and views can be migrated. – Cluster: Only collections (including validator and capped collections), shard keys, indexes, and views can be migrated. – Single node: Only collections (including validator and capped collections), indexes, and views can be migrated. – Only user data and source database account information can be migrated. The system databases (for example, local, admin, and config) and system collection cannot be migrated. If service data is stored in a system database, run the renameCollection command to move the service data to the user database. – The statement for creating a view cannot contain a regular expression. – Collections that contain the _id field without indexes are not supported. – The first parameter of BinData() cannot be 2. – If ranged sharding is used, maxKey cannot be used as the primary key. <p>NOTE The objects that can be migrated have the following constraints:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ● The source database name cannot contain \. or spaces. The collection name and view name cannot start with system. or contain the dollar sign (\$).

Database Account Permission Requirements

To start a migration task, the source and destination database users must have permissions listed in the following table. Different types of migration tasks require different permissions. For details, see [Table 1-4](#). DRS automatically checks the

database account permissions in the pre-check phase and provides handling suggestions.

 **NOTE**

- You are advised to create an independent database account for DRS task connection to prevent task failures caused by database account password modification.
- After changing the account passwords for the source and destination databases, **modify the connection information** in the DRS task as soon as possible to prevent automatic retry after a task failure. Automatic retry will lock the database accounts.

Table 1-4 Database account permission

Type	Full migration	Full+Incremental Migration
Source database user	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Replica set: The source database user must have the readAnyDatabase permission for the admin database. • Single node: The source database user must have the readAnyDatabase permission for the admin database. • Cluster: The source database user must have the readAnyDatabase permission for the admin database and the read permission for the config database. • To migrate accounts and roles of the source database, the source and destination database users must have the read permission for the system.users and system.roles system tables of the admin database. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Replica set: The source database user must have the readAnyDatabase permission for the admin database and the read permission for the local database. • Single node: The source database user must have the readAnyDatabase permission for the admin database and the read permission for the local database. • Cluster: The source dds mongos node user must have the readAnyDatabase permission for the admin database and the read permission for the config database. The source shard node user must have the readAnyDatabase permission for the admin database and the read permission for the local database. • To migrate accounts and roles of the source database, the source and destination database users must have the read permission for the system.users and system.roles system tables of the admin database.

Type	Full migration	Full+Incremental Migration
Destination database user	The destination database user must have the dbAdminAnyDatabase permission for the admin database and the readWrite permission for the destination database. If the destination database is a cluster instance, the database user must have the clusterManager permission for the admin database.	

NOTE

For example, the source database user must have the readAnyDatabase permission for the admin database and the read permission for the config database.

```
db.grantRolesToUser("Username",[{role:"readAnyDatabase",db:"admin"},  
{role:"read",db:"config"}])
```

Migration Operations

For details, see [MongoDB Database Migration](#) in *Data Replication Service Best Practices*.

1.3 Migrating Data Using mongoexport and mongoimport

mongoexport and mongoimport are backup and restoration tools provided by the MongoDB client. You can install a MongoDB client on the local device or ECS and use the mongoexport and mongoimport tools to migrate your on-premises MongoDB databases or other cloud MongoDB databases to DDS instances.

Before migrating data from a MongoDB database to DDS, transfer data to a .json file using the mongoexport tool. This section describes how to import the data from the JSON files to DDS using the mongoimport tool on the ECS or from some other devices that can access DDS.

Precautions

- The mongoexport and mongoimport tools support only full migration. To ensure data consistency, stop services on the source database and stop writing data to the source database before the migration.
- You are advised to perform the migration during off-peak hours to avoid impacting services.
- The admin and local system databases cannot be migrated.
- Make sure that no service set has been created in the system databases admin and local in the source database. If there is already a service set, migrate them out of the system databases admin and local before migration.
- Before importing data, ensure that the necessary indexes are there on the source database. Delete any unnecessary indexes and create any necessary indexes before migration.

- If you choose to migrate a sharded cluster, you must create a set of shards in the destination database and configure sharding. In addition, indexes must be created before migration.

Prerequisites

1. An ECS or a device that can access DDS is ready for use.
 - To connect to a DDS DB instance through a private network from an ECS, create and log in to the ECS. For details, see [Purchasing an ECS](#) and [Logging In to an ECS](#).
 - To bind an EIP to a DB instance:
 - i. Bind an EIP to a node in the instance. For details about how to bind an EIP to a node, see "Binding an EIP" in *Getting Started with Document Database Service*.
 - ii. Ensure that your local device can access the EIP that has been bound to the DB instance.
2. A migration tool has been installed on the prepared ECS.
For details on how to install the migration tool, see [How Can I Install a MongoDB Client?](#)

NOTE

The MongoDB client provides the mongoexport and mongoimport tools.

Exporting Data

Step 1 Log in to the ECS or the device that can access DDS.

Step 2 Use the mongoexport tool to transfer data from the source database to a .json file.

The SSL connection is used as an example. If you select a common connection, delete `--ssl --sslAllowInvalidCertificates` from the following command.

```
./mongoexport --host <DB_ADDRESS> --port <DB_PORT> --ssl --  
sslAllowInvalidCertificates --type json --authenticationDatabase <AUTH_DB> -  
u <DB_USER> --db <DB_NAME> --collection <DB_COLLECTION> --out  
<DB_PATH>
```

- **DB_ADDRESS** is the database address.
- **DB_PORT** is the database port.
- **AUTH_DB** is the database for storing DB_USER information. Generally, this value is **admin**.
- **DB_USER** is the database user.
- **DB_NAME** is the name of the database from which data will be exported.
- **DB_COLLECTION** is the collection of the database from which data will be exported.
- **DB_PATH** is the path where the .json file is located.

Enter the database administrator password when prompted:

Enter password:

The following is an example. After the command is executed, the **exportfile.json** file will be generated:

```
./mongoexport --host 192.168.1.21 --port 8635 --ssl --  
sslAllowInvalidCertificates --type json --authenticationDatabase admin -u  
rwuser --db test02 --collection Test --out /tmp/mongodb/export/  
exportfile.json
```

Step 3 View the results

If information similar to the following is displayed, the data has been successfully exported. **x** is the number of exported data records.

```
exported x records
```

Step 4 Compress the exported .json file.

```
gzip exportfile.json
```

Compressing the file helps reduce the time needed to transmit the data. The compressed file is **exportfile.json.gz**.

----End

Importing Data

Step 1 Log in to the ECS or whichever device you will be using to access DDS.

Step 2 Upload the data to be imported to the ECS or the device.

Select an uploading method based on the OS you are using.

- In Linux, for example, you can use secure copy protocol (SCP):

```
scp <IDENTITY_FILE>  
<REMOTE_USER>@<REMOTE_ADDRESS>:<REMOTE_DIR>
```

 - **IDENTITY_FILE** is the directory where the **exportfile.json.gz** file is located. The file access permission is 600.
 - **REMOTE_USER** is the ECS OS user.
 - **REMOTE_ADDRESS** is the ECS address.
 - **REMOTE_DIR** is the directory of the ECS to which the **exportfile.json.gz** file is uploaded.
- In Windows, upload **exportfile.json.gz** to the ECS using file transfer tools.

Step 3 Decompress the package.

```
gzip -d exportfile.json.gz
```

Step 4 Import the JSON file to the DDS database.

The SSL connection is used as an example. If you select a common connection, delete **--ssl --sslAllowInvalidCertificates** from the following command.

```
./mongoimport --host <DB_ADDRESS> --port <DB_PORT> --ssl --  
sslAllowInvalidCertificates --type json --authenticationDatabase <AUTH_DB> -  
u <DB_USER> --db <DB_NAME> --collection <DB_COLLECTION> --file  
<DB_PATH>
```

- **DB_ADDRESS** indicates the DB instance IP address.
- **DB_PORT** indicates the database port.
- **AUTH_DB** indicates the database that authenticates DB_USER. Generally, this value is **admin**.
- **DB_USER** indicates the account name of the database administrator.
- **DB_NAME** indicates the name of the database to which data will be imported.
- **DB_COLLECTION** indicates the collection of the database to which data will be imported.
- **DB_PATH** indicates the path where the .json file is located.

Enter the database administrator password when prompted:

```
Enter password:
```

The following is an example:

```
./mongoimport --host 192.168.1.21 --port 8635 --ssl --  
sslAllowInvalidCertificates --type json --authenticationDatabase admin -u  
rwuser --db test02 --collection Test --file /tmp/mongoddb/export/  
exportfile.json
```

Step 5 View the results.

If information similar to the following is displayed, the data has been successfully imported. **x** is the number of imported data records.

```
imported x records
```

```
----End
```

1.4 Migrating Data Using mongodump and mongorestore

mongodump and mongorestore are backup and restoration tools provided by the MongoDB client. You can install a MongoDB client on the local device or ECS and use the mongodump and mongorestore tools to migrate your on-premises MongoDB databases or other cloud MongoDB databases to DDS instances.

Precautions

- The mongodump and mongorestore tools support only full migration. To ensure data consistency, stop services on the source database and stop writing data to the source database before the migration.
- You are advised to perform the migration during off-peak hours to avoid impacting services.
- The admin and local system databases cannot be migrated.
- Make sure that no service set has been created in the system databases admin and local in the source database. If there is already a service set, migrate them out of the system databases admin and local before migration.
- Before importing data, ensure that the necessary indexes are there on the source database. Delete any unnecessary indexes and create any necessary indexes before migration.

- If you choose to migrate a sharded cluster, you must create a set of shards in the destination database and configure sharding. In addition, indexes must be created before migration.
- If the backup using the mongodump tool fails (for example, an error is reported when the backup progress reaches 97%), you are advised to increase the storage space of the VM that fails to be backed up and reserve some redundant space before performing the backup again.
- User **rwuser** can only operate service database tables. You are advised to specify databases and tables to import and export only service data. Otherwise, the insufficient permission problem may occur during full import and export.
- For details about how to restore backup data to an on-premises database, see [Restoring Data to an On-Premises Database](#).

Prerequisites

1. Prepare an ECS or a device that can access DDS.
 - To connect to a DDS instance over a private network from an ECS, create and log in to the ECS. For details, see [Purchasing an ECS](#) and [Logging In to an ECS](#).
 - To bind an EIP to a DB instance:
 - i. Bind an EIP to a node in the DB instance. For details about how to bind an EIP to a node, see "Binding an EIP" in the *Getting Started with Document Database Service*.
 - ii. Ensure that your local device can access the EIP that has been bound to the DB instance.
2. A migration tool has been installed on the prepared ECS.
For details on how to install the migration tool, see [How Can I Install a MongoDB Client?](#)

NOTE

- The mongodump and mongorestore tools are part of the MongoDB client installation package.
- The MongoDB client version must match the instance version. Otherwise, compatibility issues may occur.

Exporting Data

Step 1 Log in to the ECS or the device that can access DDS.

Step 2 Back up the source database data using the mongodump tool.

An SSL connection is used in this example. If you select an unencrypted connection, delete `--ssl --sslCAFile <FILE_PATH> --sslAllowInvalidCertificates` from the following command.

```
./mongodump --host <DB_HOST> --port <DB_PORT> --authenticationDatabase <AUTH_DB> -u <DB_USER> --ssl --sslCAFile <FILE_PATH> --sslAllowInvalidCertificates --db <DB_NAME> --collection <DB_COLLECTION> --gzip --archive=<Name of the backup file that contains the file path>
```

Table 1-5 Parameter description

Parameter	Description
<DB_HOST>	Database address
<DB_PORT>	Database port
<DB_USER>	Database username
<AUTH_DB>	Database that stores <DB_USER> information. Generally, the value is admin .
<FILE_PATH>	Path for storing the root certificate
<DB_NAME>	The name of the database to be migrated.
<DB_COLLECTION>	Collection in the database to be migrated

Enter the database administrator password when prompted:

```
Enter password:
```

After the command is executed, the file specified by **archive** is the final backup file. The following command uses **backup.tar.gz** as an example.

```
./mongodump --host 192.168.XX.XX --port 8635 --authenticationDatabase admin -u rwuser --ssl --sslCAFile/tmp/ca.crt --sslAllowInvalidCertificates --db test --collection usertable --gzip --archive=backup.tar.gz
```

```
2019-03-04T18:42:10.687+0800 writing admin.system.users to
2019-03-04T18:42:10.688+0800 done dumping admin.system.users (1 document)
2019-03-04T18:42:10.688+0800 writing admin.system.roles to
2019-03-04T18:42:10.690+0800 done dumping admin.system.roles (0 documents)
2019-03-04T18:42:10.690+0800 writing admin.system.version to
2019-03-04T18:42:10.691+0800 done dumping admin.system.version (2 documents)
2019-03-04T18:42:10.691+0800 writing test.test_collection to
2019-03-04T18:42:10.691+0800 writing admin.system.profile to
2019-03-04T18:42:10.692+0800 done dumping admin.system.profile (4 documents)
2019-03-04T18:42:10.695+0800 done dumping test.test_collection (198 documents)
```

----End

Importing Data

Step 1 Log in to the ECS or whichever device you will be using to access DDS.

Step 2 Upload the data to be imported to the ECS or the device.

Select an uploading method based on the OS you are using.

- In Linux, for example, you can use secure copy protocol (SCP):

```
scp -r <IDENTITY_DIR>
<REMOTE_USER>@<REMOTE_ADDRESS>:<REMOTE_DIR>
```

Table 1-6 Parameter description

Parameter	Description
<IDENTITY_DIR>	Directory where the backup folder is located.
<REMOTE_USER>	User of ECS OS in Step 1
<REMOTE_ADDRESS>	IP address of the ECS in Step 1
<REMOTE_DIR>	Directory of the ECS to be imported

- In Windows, upload the backup directory to the ECS using a file transfer tool.

Step 3 Import the backup data to DDS.

An SSL connection is used in this example. If you use an unencrypted connection, delete `--ssl --sslCAFile <FILE_PATH> --sslAllowInvalidCertificates` from the following command.

```
./mongorestore --host <DB_HOST> --port <DB_PORT> --
authenticationDatabase <AUTH_DB> -u<DB_USER> --ssl --sslCAFile
<FILE_PATH> --sslAllowInvalidCertificates --db <DB_NAME> --collection
<DB_COLLECTION> --gzip --archive=<Name of the backup file that contains the
file path>
```

Table 1-7 Parameter description

Parameter	Description
<DB_HOST>	DDS database address
<DB_PORT>	Database port
<AUTH_DB>	The database that authenticates <i>DB_USER</i> . Generally, the value is admin .
<DB_USER>	Account name of the database administrator. The default value is rwuser .
<FILE_PATH>	Path for storing the root certificate
<DB_NAME>	The name of the database to be migrated.
<DB_COLLECTION>	Collection in the database to be migrated

Enter the database administrator password when prompted:

Enter password:

The following is an example:

```
./mongorestore --host 192.168.xx.xx --port 8635 --authenticationDatabase  
admin -u rwuser --ssl --sslCAFile/tmp/ca.crt --sslAllowInvalidCertificates --db  
test --collection usertable --gzip --archive=backup.tar.gz
```

```
2019-03-05T14:19:43.240+0800 preparing collections to restore from  
2019-03-05T14:19:43.243+0800 reading metadata for test.test_collection from dump/test/  
test_collection.metadata.json  
2019-03-05T14:19:43.263+0800 restoring test.test_collection from dump/test/test_collection.bson  
2019-03-05T14:19:43.271+0800 restoring indexes for collection test.test_collection from metadata  
2019-03-05T14:19:43.273+0800 finished restoring test.test_collection (198 documents)  
2019-03-05T14:19:43.273+0800 restoring users from dump/admin/system.users.bson  
2019-03-05T14:19:43.305+0800 roles file 'dump/admin/system.roles.bson' is empty; skipping roles  
restoration  
2019-03-05T14:19:43.305+0800 restoring roles from dump/admin/system.roles.bson  
2019-03-05T14:19:43.333+0800 done
```

----End

Related Issues

When you back up the entire instance using mongodump and mongorestore, the permission verification fails.

- Cause
The **rwuser** user has limited permissions on the **admin** and **config** databases of the instance. As a result, the permission verification fails.
- Solution
Grant permissions on certain databases and tables to the user.

2 Performance Tuning

2.1 Parameters

Database parameters are key configuration items in a database system. Improper parameter settings may adversely affect database performance. This document describes some important parameters. For details on parameter descriptions, visit [MongoDB official website](#).

For details about how to change parameter values on the console, see [Modifying DDS DB Instance Parameters](#).

- **enableMajorityReadConcern**

This parameter indicates whether data read has been acknowledged by a majority of nodes.

The default value is **false**, indicating that data read is returned after being acknowledged by a single node.

If this parameter is set to **true**, data read is returned after being acknowledged by a majority of nodes. This operation will increase the size of the LAS file, resulting in high CPU usage and disk usage.

In DDS, read concern cannot be set to majority. If majority read concern is required, you can set write concern to majority, indicating that data is written to a majority of nodes. In this way, data on most nodes is consistent. Then, by reading data from a single node, it can be ensured that the data has been written to a majority of nodes, and there are no dirty reads.

 **NOTE**

Write concern and read concern respectively specify the write and read policies for MongoDB.

If read concern is set to majority, data read by users has been written to a majority of nodes and will not be rolled back to avoid dirty reads.

- **failIndexKeyTooLong**

The default value is **true**.

This parameter cannot be modified to avoid an excessively long index key.

- **net.maxIncomingConnections**

This parameter indicates the maximum number of concurrent connections that dds mongos or mongod can accept. The default value depends on the [instance specifications](#). This parameter is displayed as **default** before being set, indicating that the parameter value varies with the memory specifications.

- **security.javascriptEnabled**

The default value is **false**.

This parameter indicates whether JavaScript scripts can be executed on mongod. For security purposes, the default value is **false**, indicating that JavaScript scripts cannot be executed on mongod, and the mapreduce and group commands cannot be used.

- **disableJavaScriptJIT**

The default value is **true**.

This parameter indicates whether to disable JavaScript JIT compilation. JavaScript JIT compilation enables just-in-time (JIT) compilation to improve the performance of running scripts.

disableJavaScriptJIT: The default value is **true**, indicating that the JavaScriptJIT compiler is disabled. To enable JavaScript JIT compilation, set **disableJavaScriptJIT** to **false**.

- **operationProfiling.mode**

The parameter value is **slowOp** by default.

This parameter indicates the level of the database analyzer.

This parameter supports the following values:

- The default value is **slowOp**, indicating that the collector records statements whose response time exceeds the threshold.
- The value **off** indicates that the analyzer is disabled and does not collect any data.
- The value **all** indicates that the collector collects data of all operations.

- **operationProfiling.slowOpThresholdMs**

The default value is **500** and the unit is ms.

This parameter indicates the threshold for slow queries in the unit of ms. Queries that take longer than the threshold are deemed as slow queries.

Unless otherwise specified, setting the value to 500 ms is recommended.

- **maxTransactionLockRequestTimeoutMillis**

The value ranges from **5** to **100**, in milliseconds. The default value is **5**.

This parameter specifies the time for a transaction to wait for locks. If the time is exceeded, the transaction is rolled back.

2.2 Read and Write Performance

Common check items:

1. If the error message Timeout is displayed in the database, check whether the number of connections to the instance reaches the upper limit.
 - Check method: View the [monitoring metric](#) to check whether the [maximum number of active connections](#) has been reached.

- Solution: See [What Can I Do If the Number of Connections of an Instance Reaches Its Maximum?](#)
- 2. Check whether the instance is properly connected.
 - Check method: Check whether multiple dds mongos nodes in a cluster instance are connected and whether both the primary and standby nodes in a replica set instance are connected.
 - Solution: If you connect to a cluster instance, connect to multiple dds mongos nodes at the same time to share the load and improve availability. If you connect to a replica set instance, connect to both the primary and standby nodes. This improves read/write performance and prevents errors reported when data is written from the client after a primary/standby switchover.
- 3. Check whether the monitoring metrics of the instance are normal.
 - Check method: View [monitoring metrics](#) to check the CPU usage and memory usage.
 - Solution: If the CPU and memory metrics are abnormal, check whether the client service load is too centralized or instance data is too intensive. If the client service load is too centralized, optimize the client architecture. If data is too intensive, shard data.
- 4. Check whether there are too many slow query logs.
Check method: For details, see [Viewing Slow Query Logs](#).
Solution: For details, see [Slow Operation Optimization](#).

Other precautions:

- During the query, select only the fields that need to be returned. When modifying data, modify only the fields that need to be modified. Do not directly store all modifications of the entire object. In this way, the network and processing loads are reduced.
- In the same service scenario, reduce the number of interactions with the database and query data at a time if possible.
- In a single instance, the total number of databases cannot exceed 200, and the total number of collections cannot exceed 500.
- Before bringing a service online, perform a load test to measure the performance of the database in peak hours.
- Do not execute a large number of concurrent transactions at the same time or leave a transaction uncommitted for a long time.
- Before the service is brought online, execute the query plan to check the query performance for all query types.
- Check the performance baseline of the instance specifications and analyze whether the current service requirements reach the upper limit.

2.3 High CPU Usage

If your CPU usage reaches 80%, a CPU bottleneck exists. In this case, data read and write are slow, affecting your services.

The following describes how to analyze current slow queries. After the analysis and optimization, query performance will be improved and indexes will be used more efficiently.

Analyzing Current Queries

1. Connect to an instance using Mongo Shell.

To enable public access, see:

- [Connecting to a Cluster Instance over a Public Network](#)
- [Connecting to a Replica Set Instance over a Public Network](#)
- [Connecting to a Single Node Instance over a Public Network](#)

To access an instance over a private network, see:

- [Connecting to a Cluster Instance over a Private Network](#)
- [Connecting to a Replica Set Instance over a Private Network](#)
- [Connecting to a Single Node Instance over a Private Network](#)

2. Run the following command to view the operations being performed on the database:

db.currentOp()

Command output:

```
{
  "raw" : {
    "shard0001" : {
      "inprog" : [
        {
          "desc" : "StatisticsCollector",
          "threadId" : "140323686905600",
          "active" : true,
          "opid" : 9037713,
          "op" : "none",
          "ns" : "",
          "query" : {
          },
          "numYields" : 0,
          "locks" : {
          },
          "waitingForLock" : false,
          "lockStats" : {
          }
        },
        {
          "desc" : "conn2607",
          "threadId" : "140323415066368",
          "connectionId" : 2607,
          "client" : "172.16.36.87:37804",
          "appName" : "MongoDB Shell",
          "active" : true,
          "opid" : 9039588,
          "secs_running" : 0,
          "microsecs_running" : NumberLong(63),
          "op" : "command",
          "ns" : "admin.",
          "query" : {
            "currentOp" : 1
          },
          "numYields" : 0,
          "locks" : {
          }
        }
      ]
    }
  }
}
```



```
    },
    "waitingForLock" : false,
    "lockStats" : {
      }
    }
  ],
  "ok" : 1
},
...
}
```

NOTE

- **client**: IP address of the client that sends the request
 - **opid**: unique operation ID
 - **secs_running**: elapsed time for execution, in seconds. If the returned value of this field is too large, check whether the request is reasonable.
 - **microsecs_running**: elapsed time for execution, in seconds. If the returned value of this field is too large, check whether the request is reasonable.
 - **op**: operation type. The operations can be query, insert, update, delete, or command.
 - **ns**: target collection
 - For details, see the **db.currentOp()** command in [official document](#).
3. Based on the command output, check whether there are requests that take a long time to process.

If the CPU usage is low while services are being processed but then becomes high during just certain operations, analyze the requests that take a long time to execute.

If an abnormal query is found, find the **opid** corresponding to the operation and run **db.killOp(*opid*)** to kill it.

Analyzing Slow Queries

Slow query profiling is enabled for DDS by default. The system automatically records any queries whose execution takes longer than 500 ms to the **system.profile** collection in the corresponding database. You can:

1. Connect to an instance using Mongo Shell.
To access an instance from the Internet
For details, see
 - [Connecting to a Cluster Instance over a Public Network](#)
 - [Connecting to a Replica Set Instance over a Public Network](#)
 - [Connecting to a Single Node Instance over a Public Network](#)To access an instance that is not publicly accessible
For details, see
 - [Connecting to a Cluster Instance over a Private Network](#)
 - [Connecting to a Replica Set Instance over a Private Network](#)
 - [Connecting to a Single Node Instance over a Private Network](#)
2. Select a specific database (using the **test** database as an example):
use test

3. Check whether slow SQL queries have been collected in **system.profile**.

show collections;

- If the command output includes **system.profile**, slow SQL queries have been generated. Go to the next step.

```
mongos> show collections
system.profile
test
```

- If the command output does not contain **system.profile**, no slow SQL queries have been generated, and slow query analysis is not required.

```
mongos> show collections
test
```

4. Check the slow query logs in the database.

db.system.profile.find().pretty()

5. Analyze slow query logs to find the cause of the high CPU usage.

The following is an example of a slow query log. The log shows a request that scanned the entire table, including 1,561,632 documents and without using a search index.

```
{
  "op" : "query",
  "ns" : "taiyiDatabase.taiyiTables$10002e",
  "query" : {
    "find" : "taiyiTables",
    "filter" : {
      "filed19" : NumberLong("852605039766")
    },
    "shardVersion" : [
      Timestamp(1, 1048673),
      ObjectId("5da43185267ad9c374a72fd5")
    ],
    "chunkId" : "10002e"
  },
  "keysExamined" : 0,
  "docsExamined" : 1561632,
  "cursorExhausted" : true,
  "numYield" : 12335,
  "locks" : {
    "Global" : {
      "acquireCount" : {
        "r" : NumberLong(24672)
      }
    },
    "Database" : {
      "acquireCount" : {
        "r" : NumberLong(12336)
      }
    },
    "Collection" : {
      "acquireCount" : {
        "r" : NumberLong(12336)
      }
    }
  },
  "nreturned" : 0,
  "responseLength" : 157,
  "protocol" : "op_command",
  "millis" : 44480,
  "planSummary" : "COLLSCAN",
  "execStats" : {
    "stage" :
    "SHARDING_FILTER",
    [3/1955]
    "nReturned" : 0,
    "executionTimeMillisEstimate" : 43701,
```

```
    "works" : 1561634,
    "advanced" : 0,
    "needTime" : 1561633,
    "needYield" : 0,
    "saveState" : 12335,
    "restoreState" : 12335,
    "isEOF" : 1,
    "invalidates" : 0,
    "chunkSkips" : 0,
    "inputStage" : {
      "stage" : "COLLSCAN",
      "filter" : {
        "filed19" : {
          "$eq" : NumberLong("852605039766")
        }
      }
    },
    "nReturned" : 0,
    "executionTimeMillisEstimate" : 43590,
    "works" : 1561634,
    "advanced" : 0,
    "needTime" : 1561633,
    "needYield" : 0,
    "saveState" : 12335,
    "restoreState" : 12335,
    "isEOF" : 1,
    "invalidates" : 0,
    "direction" : "forward",
    "docsExamined" : 1561632
  }
},
"ts" : ISODate("2019-10-14T10:49:52.780Z"),
"client" : "172.16.36.87",
"appName" : "MongoDB Shell",
"allUsers" : [
  {
    "user" : "__system",
    "db" : "local"
  }
],
"user" : "__system@local"
}
```

The following stages can be causes for a slow query:

- **COLLSCAN** involves a full collection (full table) scan.
When a request (such as query, update, and delete) requires a full table scan, a large amount of CPU resources are occupied. If you find **COLLSCAN** in the slow query log, a full table scan was performed and that occupy a lot of CPU resources.
If such requests are frequent, create indexes for the fields to be queried.
- **docsExamined** involves a full collection (full table) scan.
You can view the value of **docsExamined** to check the number of documents scanned. A larger value indicates a higher CPU usage.
- **IXSCAN** and **keyExamined** scan indexes.

NOTE

- An excessive number of indexes can affect the write and update performance.
- If your application has more write operations, creating indexes may increase write latency.

You can view the value of **keyExamined** to see how many indexes are scanned in a query. A larger value indicates a higher CPU usage.

If an index is not properly created or there are many matching results, the CPU usage does not decrease greatly and the execution speed is slow.

Example: For the data of a collection, the number of values of the **a** field is small (only **1** and **2**), but the **b** field has more values.

```
{ a: 1, b: 1 }
{ a: 1, b: 2 }
{ a: 1, b: 3 }
.....
{ a: 1, b: 100000 }
{ a: 2, b: 1 }
{ a: 2, b: 2 }
{ a: 2, b: 3 }
.....
{ a: 1, y: 100000 }
```

The following shows how to implement the `{a: 1, b: 2}` query.

```
db.createIndex({a: 1}): The query is not effective because the a field has too many same values.
db.createIndex({a: 1, b: 1}): The query is not effective because the a field has too many same values.
db.createIndex({b: 1}): The query is effective because the b field has a few same values.
db.createIndex({b: 1, a: 1}): The query is not effective because the a field has a few same values.
```

For the differences between `{a: 1}` and `{b: 1, a: 1}`, see the [official documents](#).

- **`SORT`** and **`hasSortStage`** may involve sorting a large amount of data.

If the value of the **`hasSortStage`** parameter in the **`system.profile`** collection is **`true`**, the query request involves sorting. If the sorting cannot be implemented through indexes, the query results are sorted, and sorting is a CPU intensive operation. In this scenario, you need to create indexes for fields that are frequently sorted.

If the **`system.profile`** collection contains **`SORT`**, you can use indexing to improve sorting speed.

Other operations, such as index creation and aggregation (combinations of traversal, query, update, and sorting), also apply to the above mentioned scenarios because they are also CPU intensive operations. For more information about profiling, see [official documents](#).

Analysis Capability

After the analysis and optimization of the requests that are being executed and slow requests, all requests use proper indexes, and the CPU usage becomes stable. If the CPU usage remains high after the analysis and troubleshooting, the current instance may have reached the performance bottleneck and cannot meet service requirements. In this case, you can perform the following operations to solve the problem:

1. View monitoring information to analyze instance resource usage. For details, see [Viewing Monitoring Metrics](#).
2. Change the DDS instance class or add shard nodes.

2.4 High Storage Usage

If the storage usage of a DDS instance is too high or fully used, the instance becomes unavailable.

This section describes how to analyze and fix high storage usage.

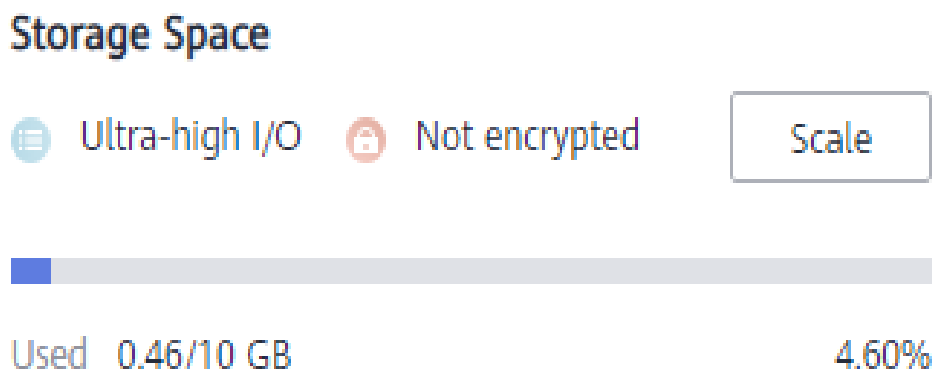
Checking the Storage Usage

DDS provides the following two methods to check the storage usage of an instance:

1. Check the storage usage on the DDS console.

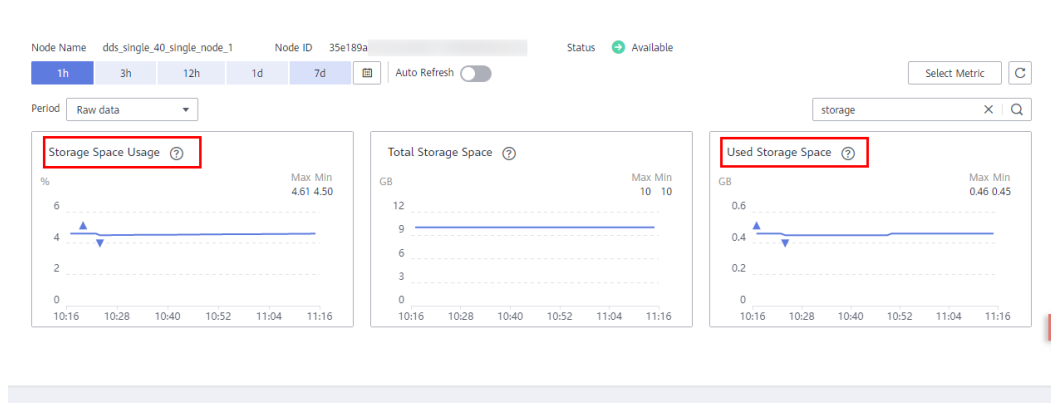
You can log in to the DDS console and click the instance. On the **Basic Information** page, you can view the storage space of the instance in the **Storage Space** area.

Figure 2-1 Checking the storage usage



2. View the monitoring metrics (storage usage and used storage).
To view monitoring metrics, see [Viewing Monitoring Metrics](#).

Figure 2-2 Checking the storage usage



Solution

1. For cluster instances, data may be unevenly distributed because the database collection is not properly sharded. As a result, the storage usage is high.
To shard the database collection properly, see [How Do I Improve Database Performance by Configuring Sharding?](#)
2. As service data increases, the original database storage is insufficient. You can expand the storage space to fix this problem.
 - To scale up storage for cluster instances, see [Scaling Up a Cluster Instance](#).
 - To scale up storage for replica set instances, see [Scaling Up a Replica Set Instance](#).
 - To scale up storage for single node instances, see [Scaling Up a Single Node Instance](#).

If the storage space has reached the upper limit of your instance class, change the instance class first.

- To change the cluster instance class, see [Changing a Cluster Instance Class](#).
 - To change the replica set instance class, see [Changing a Replica Set Instance Class](#).
 - To change the single node instance class, see [Changing a Single Node Instance Class](#).
3. If a large number of expired files occupy the storage space, delete the expired files in time. For example, if the entire database is no longer used, run **dropDatabase** to delete it.
 4. The background data processing mechanism is faulty.

Operations such as write, update, and delete (including index insert and delete) are actually converted to write operations in the background. When data of an instance in use is deleted, the disk space is not reclaimed. Such unreclaimed disk space is called disk fragments. When new data is inserted, these fragments are reused without applying for new disk space. Different underlying storage engines (RocksDB and WiredTiger) vary according to specific scenarios.

After deleting data, RocksDB directly converts the **delete** operation to append write. After a certain amount of redundant data is accumulated, the background compact thread is automatically triggered to merge and aggregate data of multiple versions to release redundant disk space. You are advised to wait for the system to automatically reclaim the disk space. If the disk space usage is high and close to the **read-only** threshold, contact Huawei technical support.

After deleting data, WiredTiger merges and aggregates data of multiple versions, causing disk space fragments. However, WiredTiger does not return the disk space to the operating system. WiredTiger marks the disk space for subsequent writes of the current collection, the reserved disk space is preferentially used for subsequent writes of the collection. To release the disk space, run the **compact** command. (Note: This command blocks normal services and is disabled by default.)

2.5 High Memory Usage

If the memory usage of a DDS instance reaches 90% and the swap space usage exceeds 5%, the system responds slowly and even out of memory (OOM) may occur.

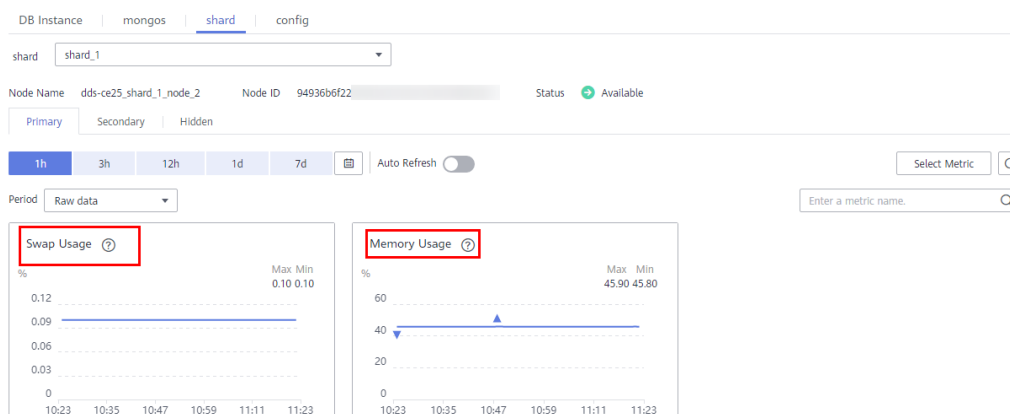
This section describes how to fix high memory usage of DB instances.

Viewing the Memory Usage

You can view the monitoring metrics (memory usage and swap usage) to learn the memory usage of instances.

For details, see [Viewing DDS Metrics](#).

Figure 2-3 Memory and swap usage



NOTE

By default, 50% memory is reserved, so if the memory usage is 50% but the instance is unloaded, this is normal and you can ignore it.

Solution

1. Control the number of concurrent connections. When connecting to databases, calculate the number of clients and the size of the connection pool configured for each client. The total number of connections cannot exceed 80% of the maximum number of connections supported by the current instance. If there are too many connections, the memory and multi-thread context overhead increases, affecting the delay in request processing.
2. Configure a connection pool. The maximum number of connections in a connection pool is 200.
3. Reduce the memory overhead of a single request. For example, create indexes to reduce collection scanning and memory sorting.
4. If the number of connections remain unchanged but the memory usage keeps increasing, upgrade the memory configuration to prevent system performance deterioration caused by memory overflow and large-scale cache clearing.

- To change cluster instance memory, see [Changing a Cluster Instance Class](#).
- To change replica set instance memory, see [Changing a Replica Set Instance Class](#).
- To change single node instance memory, see [Changing a Single Node Instance Class](#).

2.6 Load Imbalance of Cluster Instances

It is common that load is imbalanced between shard nodes in a cluster instance. If the shard key is incorrectly selected, no chunk is preset, and the load balancing speed between shard nodes is lower than the data insertion speed, load imbalance may occur.

This section describes how to fix load imbalance.

Fault Locating

Step 1 [Connect to a database from the client.](#)

Step 2 Run the following command to check the shard information:

sh.status()

```
mongos> sh.status()
\--- Sharding Status ---
  sharding version: {
    "_id" : 1,
    "minCompatibleVersion" : 5,
    "currentVersion" : 6,
    "clusterId" : ObjectId("60f9d67ad4876dd0fe01af84")
  }
  shards:
    { "_id" : "shard_1", "host" : "shard_1/172.16.51.249:8637,172.16.63.156:8637", "state" : 1 }
    { "_id" : "shard_2", "host" : "shard_2/172.16.12.98:8637,172.16.53.36:8637", "state" : 1 }
  active mongoses:
    "4.0.3" : 2
  autosplit:
    Currently enabled: yes
  balancer:
    Currently enabled: yes
    Currently running: yes
    Collections with active migrations:
      test.coll started at Wed Jul 28 2021 11:40:41 GMT+0000 (UTC)
    Failed balancer rounds in last 5 attempts: 0
    Migration Results for the last 24 hours:
      300 : Success
  databases:
    { "_id" : "test", "primary" : "shard_2", "partitioned" : true, "version" : { "uuid" : UUID("d612d134-
a499-4428-ab21-b53e8f866f67"), "lastMod" : 1 } }
    test.coll
      shard key: { "_id" : "hashed" }
      unique: false
      balancing: true
      chunks:
        shard_1 20
        shard_2 20
```

- **databases** lists databases for which you enable **enableSharding**.
- **test.coll** is the collection namespace. **test** indicates the name of the database where the collection is located, and **coll** indicates the name of the collection for which sharding is enabled.

- **shard key** is the shard key of the previous collection. **_id**: indicates that the shard is hashed based on **_id**. **_id: -1** indicates that the shard is sharded based on the range of **_id**.
- **chunks** indicates the distribution of shards.

Step 3 Analyze the shard information based on the query result in [Step 2](#).

1. If no shard information is queried, the collections are not sharded.

Run the following command to enable sharding:

```
mongos> sh.enableSharding("<database>")
mongos> use admin
mongos> db.runCommand({shardcollection:"<database>.<collection>",key:{"keyname":<value> }})
```

2. If an improper shard key is selected, the load may be imbalanced. For example, if a large number of requests are processed on a range of shards, the load on these shards is heavier than other shards, causing load imbalance.

You can redesign the shard key, for example, changing ranged sharding to hashed sharding.

```
mongos> db.runCommand({shardcollection:"<database>.<collection>",key:{"keyname":<value> }})
```

NOTE

- If a sharding mode is determined, it cannot be changed easily. The sharding mode must be fully considered in the design phase.
 - For details about how to set data shards, see [How Do I Improve Database Performance by Configuring Sharding?](#)
3. If a large amount of data is inserted and the data volume exceeds the load capacity of a single shard, shard imbalance occurs and the storage usage of the primary shard is too high.

You can run the following command to check the network connection of the server and check whether the amount of data transmitted by each network adapter reaches the upper limit.

```
sar -n DEV 1 //1 is the interval.
Average: IFACE rxpck/s txpck/s rxkB/s txkB/s rxcmp/s txcmp/s rxmcast/s %ifutil
Average: lo 1926.94 1926.94 25573.92 25573.92 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.00
Average: A1-0 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.00
Average: A1-1 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.00
Average: NIC0 5.17 1.48 0.44 0.92 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.00
Average: NIC1 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.00
Average: A0-0 8173.06 92420.66 97102.22 133305.09 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.00
Average: A0-1 11431.37 9373.06 156950.45 494.40 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.00
Average: B3-0 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.00
Average: B3-1 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.00 0.00
```

NOTE

- **rxkB/s** is the number of KBs received per second.
- **txkB/s** is the number of KBs sent per second.

After the check is complete, press **Ctrl+Z** to exit.

If the network load is too high, analyze MQL statements, optimize the roadmap, reduce bandwidth consumption, and increase specifications to expand network throughput.

- Check whether there are sharded collections that do not carry ShardKey. In this case, requests are broadcast, which increases the bandwidth consumption.
- Control the number of concurrent threads on the client to reduce the network bandwidth traffic.

- If the problem persists, [increase instance specifications](#) in a timely manner. High-specification nodes can provide higher network throughput.

----End

2.7 Slow Request Locating

In the same service scenario, the query performance depends on the design of the architecture, databases, collections, and indexes. A good design can improve the query performance. On the contrary, a large number of slow queries (statements that take a long time to execute) may occur, which deteriorates system performance.

This document describes the causes and solutions of slow queries.

Fault Locating

DDS allows you to [view slow query logs](#) on the console. You can start from the slowest operation recorded in the log and optimize the operations one by one.

- If a query takes longer than 1s, the corresponding operation may be abnormal. You need to analyze the problem based on the actual situation.
- If a query takes longer than 10s, the operation needs to be optimized.

NOTE

If an aggregate operation takes more than 10s, it is normal.

Analysis Method

Step 1 Connect to the database.

- To connect to a cluster instance, see [Connecting to a Cluster Instance](#).
- To connect to a replica set instance, see [Connecting to a Replica Set Instance](#).
- For details about how to connect to a single node instance, see [Connecting to a Single Node Instance](#).

Step 2 Run the following command to check the execution plan of a slow query:

explain()

Example:

```
db.test.find({"data_id" : "ae4b5769-896f-465c-9fbd-3fd2f3357637"}).explain();
db.test.find({"data_id" : "775f57c2-b63e-45d7-b581-3822dba231b4"}).explain("executionStats");
```

A covered query does not need to read a document, but directly returns a result from an index, which is very efficient. You can use covering indexes as much as possible. If the output of `explain()` shows that `indexOnly` is true, the query is covered by an index.

Step 3 Parse the execution plan.

1. Check the execution time.

The smaller the values of the following parameters, the better the performance: **executionStats.executionStages.executionTimeMillisEstimate**

and `executionStats.executionStages.inputStage.executionTimeMillisEstimate`

Table 2-1 Parameter description

Parameter	Description
<code>executionStats.executionTimeMillis</code>	Execution plan selection and execution time
<code>executionStats.executionStages.executionTimeMillisEstimate</code>	Completion time of the optimal execution plan
<code>executionStats.executionStages.inputStage.executionTimeMillisEstimate</code>	Execution completion time of the sub-phase of the optimal execution plan

2. Check the number of scanned records.
If the three items in [Table 2-2](#) have the same value, the query performance is the best.

Table 2-2 Parameter description

Parameter	Description
<code>executionStats.nReturned</code>	Number of documents matching the search criteria
<code>executionStats.totalKeysExamined</code>	Number of rows scanned through indexes
<code>executionStats.totalDocsExamined</code>	Number of scanned documents

3. Check the stage status.
The combinations of stage statuses with better performance are as follows:
 - Fetch+IDHACK
 - Fetch+ixscan,
 - Limit+ (Fetch+ixscan)
 - PROJECTION+ixscan

Table 2-3 Status description

Status Name	Description
COLLSCAN	Full table scan
SORT	In-memory sorting
IDHACK	_id-based query

Status Name	Description
TEXT	Full-text index
COUNTSCAN	Number of unused indexes
FETCH	Index scanning
LIMIT	Using Limit to limit the number of returned records
SUBPLA	\$or query stage without using an index
PROJECTION	Number of used indexes
COUNT_SCAN	Number of used indexes

----End

Optimization Plan

- For queries without indexes, create indexes based on the search criteria.
- Hash indexes can be created for point queries.
- Create composite indexes for multi-field queries where a single field is highly repeated.
- Create an ascending or descending index for range lookups with ordered result sets.
- Compound indexes are those indexes sort query results by prefix, so the sequence of query conditions must be the same as that of index fields.
- For partitioned collections (tables) and large collections (with more than 100,000 records), do not use fuzzy query (or do not use LIKE) for tables with a large amount of data. As a result, a large number of records are scanned. You can query data based on the index field, filter out small collections, and then perform fuzzy queries.
- Do not use \$not. MongoDB does not index missing data. The \$not query requires that all records be scanned in a single result collection. If \$not is the only query condition, a full table scan will be performed on the collection.
- If you use \$and, put the conditions with the fewest matches before other conditions. If you use \$or, put the conditions with the more matches first.
- Check the performance baseline of instance specifications and analyze whether the current service requirements can be met. If the performance bottleneck of the current instance is reached, upgrade the instance specifications in a timely manner.

2.8 Statement Optimization

DDS is inherently a NoSQL database with high performance and strong extensibility. Similar to relational databases, such as RDS for MySQL, RDS for SQL Server, and Oracle, DDS instance performance may also be affected by database design, statement optimization, and index creation.

The following provides suggestions for improving DDS performance in different dimensions:

Creating Databases and Collections

- Use short field names to save storage space. Different from an RDS database, each DDS document has its field names stored in the collection. Short name is recommended.
- Limit the number of documents in a collection to avoid the impact on the query performance. Archive documents periodically if necessary.
- Each document has a default `_id`. Do not change the value of this parameter.
- Capped collections have a faster insertion speed than other collections and can automatically delete old data. You can create capped collections to improve performance based on your service requirements.

Query Operations

Indexes

- Create proper number of indexes for frequently queried fields based on service requirements. Indexes occupy some storage space, and the insert and indexing operations consume resources. It is recommended that the number of indexes in each collection should not exceed 5.
- If data query is slow due to lack of indexes, create proper indexes for frequently queried fields.
- For a query that contains multiple shard keys, create a compound index that contains these keys. The order of shard keys in a compound index is important. A compound index support queries that use the leftmost prefix of the index, and the query is only relevant to the creation sequence of indexes.
- TTL indexes can be used to automatically filter out and delete expired documents. The index for creating TTL must be of type date. TTL indexes are single-field indexes.
- You can create field indexes in a collection. However, if a large number of documents in the collection do not contain key values, you are advised to create sparse indexes.
- When you create text indexes, the field is specified as **text** instead of **1** or **-1**. Each collection has only one text index, but it can index multiple fields.

Command usage

- The `findOne` method returns the first document that satisfies the specified query criteria from the collection according to the natural order. To return multiple documents, use this method.
- If the query does not require the return of the entire document or is only used to determine whether the key value exists, you can use **\$project** to limit the returned field, reducing the network traffic and the memory usage of the client.
- In addition to prefix queries, regular expression queries take longer to execute than using selectors, and indexes are not recommended.
- Some operators that contain **\$** in the query may deteriorate the system performance. The following types of operators are not recommended in services. `$or`, `$nin`, `$not`, `$ne`, and `$exists`.

Table 2-4 Operator description

Operator	Description
\$or	The times of queries depend on the number of conditions. It is used to query all the documents that meet the query conditions in the collection. You are advised to use \$in instead.
\$nin	Matches most of indexes, and the full table scan is performed.
\$not	The query optimizer may fail to match a specific index, and the full table scan is performed.
\$ne	Selects the documents where the value of the field is not equal to the specified value. The entire document is scanned.
\$exists	Matches each document that contains the field.

For more information, see [official MongoDB documents](#).

Precautions

- Indexes cannot be used in operators \$where and \$exists.
- If the query results need to be sorted, control the number of result sets.
- If multiple field indexes are involved, place the field used for exact match before the index.
- If the key value sequence in the search criteria is different from that in the compound index, DDS automatically changes the query sequence to the same as index sequence.

- Modification operation

Modify a document by using operators can improve performance. This method does not need to obtain and modify document data back and forth on the server, and takes less time to serialize and transfer data.

- Batch insert

Batch insert can reduce the number of times data is submitted to the server and improve the performance. The BSON size of the data submitted in batches cannot exceed 48 MB.

- Aggregate operation

During aggregation, \$match must be placed before \$group to reduce the number of documents to be processed by the \$group operator.

2.9 Sharding

You can shard a large-size collection for a sharded cluster instance. Sharding distributes data across different machines to make full use of the storage space and compute capability of each shard.

Number of Shards

The following is an example using database **mytable**, collection **mycoll**, and the field **name** as the shard key.

Step 1 Log in to a sharded cluster instance using Mongo Shell.

Step 2 Check whether a collection has been sharded.

```
use <database>
db.<collection>.getShardDistribution()
```

Example:

```
use mytable
db.mycoll.getShardDistribution()
```

```
mongos> db.mycoll.getShardDistribution()
Collection test.mycoll is not sharded.
```

Step 3 Enable sharding for the databases that belong to the cluster instance.

- Method 1
sh.enableSharding("<database>")

Example:

```
sh.enableSharding("mytable")
```

- Method 2
use admin
db.runCommand({enablesharding:"<database>"})

Step 4 Shard a collection.

- Method 1
sh.shardCollection("<database>.<collection>",<keyname>:<value> })

Example:

```
sh.shardCollection("mytable.mycoll",{"name":"hashed"},{numInitialChunks:5})
```

- Method 2
use admin
db.runCommand({shardcollection:"<database>.<collection>",key:{"keyname":<value> }})

Table 2-5 Parameter description

Parameter	Description
<database>	Database name
<collection>	Collection name.
<keyname>	Shard key. Cluster instances are sharded based on the value of this parameter. Select a proper shard key for the collection based on your service requirements. For details, see Selecting a Shard Key .

Parameter	Description
<value>	<p>The sort order based on the range of the shard key.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • 1: Ascending indexes • -1: Descending indexes • hashed: indicates that hash sharding is used. Hashed sharding provides more even data distribution across the sharded cluster. <p>For details, see sh.shardCollection().</p>
numInitialChunks	Optional. The minimum number of shards initially created is specified when an empty collection is sharded using a hashed shard key.

Step 5 Check the data storage status of the database on each shard.

```
sh.status()
```

Example:

```

mongos> sh.status()
--- Sharding Status ---
  sharding version: {
    '_id' : 1,
    'minCompatibleVersion' : 5,
    'currentVersion' : 6,
    'clusterId' : ObjectId('5c6136090b37506e03d27297')
  }
  shards:
    [ '_id' : 'ReplicaSet1', 'host' : 'ReplicaSet1',
      '_id' : 'ReplicaSet2', 'host' : 'ReplicaSet2' ]
  active mongoses:
    '3.4.17' : 2
  autosplit:
    Currently enabled: yes
  balancer:
    Currently enabled: yes
    Currently running: no
  NaN
  Failed balancer rounds in last 5 attempts: 0
  Migration Results for the last 24 hours:
    2 : Success

```

----End

Selecting a Shard Key

- **Background**

Each sharded cluster contains collections as its basic unit. Data in the collection is partitioned by the shard key. Shard key is a field in the collection. It distributes data evenly across shards. If you do not select a proper shard key, the cluster performance may deteriorate, and the sharding statement execution process may be blocked.

Once the shard key is determined it cannot be changed. If no shard key is suitable for sharding, you need to use a sharding policy and migrate data to a new collection for sharding.

- **Characteristics of proper shard keys**

- All inserts, updates, and deletes are evenly distributed to all shards in a cluster.
- The distribution of keys is sufficient.
- Rare scatter-gather queries.

If the selected shard key does not have all the preceding features, the read and write scalability of the cluster is affected. For example, If the workload of the find() operation is unevenly distributed in the shards, hot shards will be generated. Similarly, if your write load (inserts, updates, and deletes) is not uniformly distributed across your shards, then you could end up with a hot shard. Therefore, you need to adjust the shard keys based on service requirements, such as read/write status, frequently queried data, and written data.

After existing data is sharded, if the **filter** field of the update request does not contain shard keys and **upsert:true** or **multi:false**, the update request will report an error and return message "An upsert on a sharded collection must contain the shard key and have the simple collation."

- **Judgment criteria**

You can use the dimensions provided in [Table 2-6](#) to determine whether the selected shard keys meet your service requirements:

Table 2-6 Reasonable shard keys

Identification Criteria	Description
Cardinality	Cardinality refers to the capability of dividing chunks. For example, if you need to record the student information of a school and use the age as a shard key, data of students of the same age will be stored in only one data segment, which may affect the performance and manageability of your clusters. A much better shard key would be the student number because it is unique. If the student number is used as a shard key, the relatively large cardinality can ensure the even distribution of data.
Write distribution	If a large number of write operations are performed in the same period of time, you want your write load to be evenly distributed over the shards in the cluster. If the data distribution policy is ranged sharding, a monotonically increasing shard key will guarantee that all inserts go into a single shard.
Read distribution	Similarly, if a large number of read operations are performed in the same period, you want your read load to be evenly distributed over the shards in a cluster to fully utilize the computing performance of each shard.

Identification Criteria	Description
Targeted read	The dds mongos query router can perform either a targeted query (query only one shard) or a scatter/gather query (query all of the shards). The only way for the dds mongos to be able to target a single shard is to have the shard key present in the query. Therefore, you need to pick a shard key that will be available for use in the common queries while the application is running. If you pick a synthetic shard key, and your application cannot use it during typical queries, all of your queries will become scatter/gather, thus limiting your ability to scale read load.

Choosing a Distribution Policy

A sharded cluster can store a collection's data on multiple shards. You can distribute data based on the shard keys of documents in the collection.

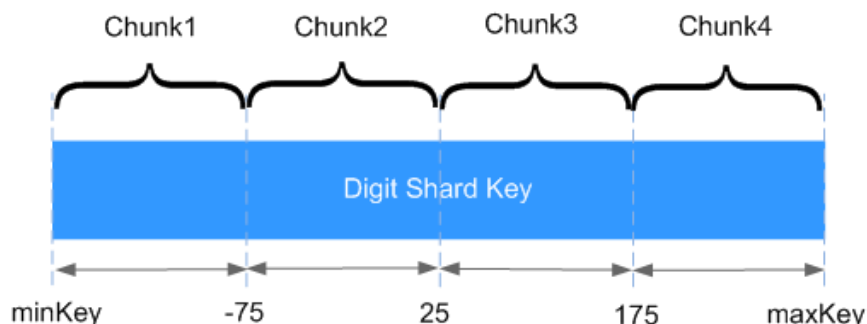
There are two data distribution policies: ranged sharding and hashed sharding. For details, see [Step 4](#).

The following describes the advantages and disadvantages of the two methods.

- **Ranged sharding**

Ranged-based sharding involves dividing data into contiguous ranges determined by the shard key values. If you assume that a shard key is a line stretched out from positive infinity and negative infinity, each value of the shard key is the mark on the line. You can also assume small and separate segments of a line and that each chunk contains data of a shard key within a certain range.

Figure 2-4 Distribution of data



As shown in the preceding figure, field *x* indicates the shard key of ranged sharding. The value range is $[minKey, maxKey]$ and the value is an integer. The value range can be divided into multiple chunks, and each chunk (usually 64 MB) contains a small segment of data. For example, chunk 1 contains all documents in range $[minKey, -75]$ and all data of each chunk is stored on the same shard. That means each shard containing multiple chunks. In addition,

the data of each shard is stored on the config server and is evenly distributed by dds mongos based on the workload of each shard.

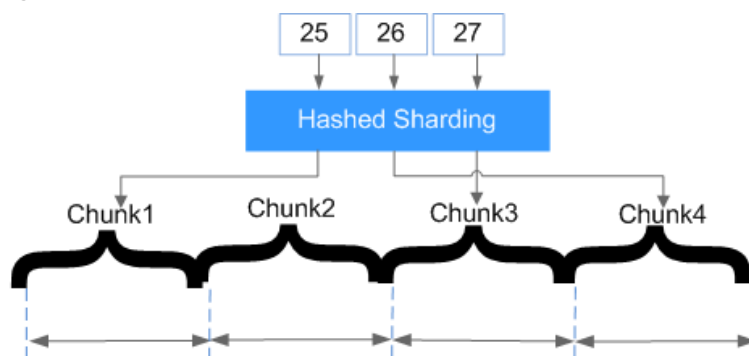
Ranged sharding can easily meet the requirements of query in a certain range. For example, if you need to query documents whose shard key is in range [-60,20], dds mongos only needs to forward the request to chunk 2.

However, if shard keys are in ascending or descending order, newly inserted documents are likely to be distributed to the same chunk, affecting the expansion of write capability. For example, if `_id` is used as a shard key, the high bits of `_id` automatically generated in the cluster are ascending.

- **Hashed sharding**

Hashed sharding computes the hash value (64-bit integer) of a single field as the index value; this value is used as your shard key to partition data across your shared cluster. Hashed sharding provides more even data distribution across the sharded cluster because documents with similar shard keys may not be stored in the same chunk.

Figure 2-5 Distribution of data



Hashed sharding randomly distributes documents to each chunk, which fully expands the write capability and makes up for the deficiency of ranged sharding. However, queries in a certain range need to be distributed to all backend shards to obtain documents that meet conditions, resulting in low query efficiency.

3 Permissions Management

3.1 Creating a User and Granting Permissions

This section describes how to use [IAM](#) to implement fine-grained permissions control for your DDS resources. With IAM, you can:

- Create IAM users for employees based on the organizational structure of your enterprise. Each IAM user has their own security credentials, providing access to DDS resources.
- Grant only the permissions required for users to perform a task.
- Entrust a Huawei account or cloud service to perform professional and efficient O&M on your DDS resources.

If your Huawei account does not need individual IAM users, then you may skip over this topic.

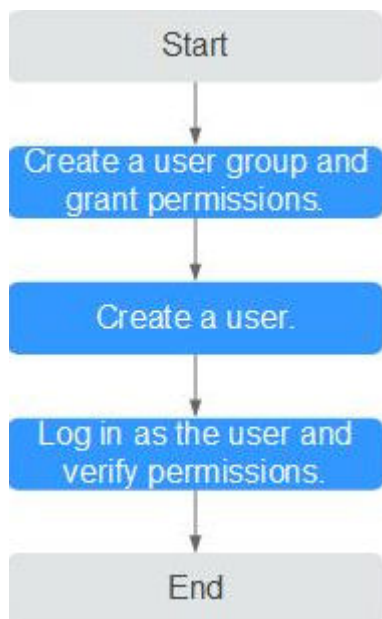
This section describes the procedure for granting permissions (see [Figure 3-1](#)).

Prerequisites

Learn about the permissions (see [Permissions Management](#)) supported by DDS and choose policies or roles according to your requirements. For the system policies of other services, see [Permissions Policies](#).

Process Flow

Figure 3-1 Process for granting DDS permissions



1. **Create a user group and assign permissions** to it.

Create a user group on the IAM console, and assign the **DDS FullAccess** policy to the group.

NOTE

To use some interconnected services, you also need to configure permissions of such services.

For example, when using DAS to connect to a DB instance, you need to configure the DDS FullAccess and DAS FullAccess permissions.

2. **Create an IAM user** and add it to a user group.

Create a user on the IAM console and add the user to the group created in **1**.

3. **Log in** and verify permissions.

Log in to the DDS console by using the newly created user, and verify that the user only has read permissions for DDS.

Choose **Service List > Document Database Service** and click **Buy DB Instance**. If you can buy a DDS DB instance, the required permission policies have taken effect.

3.2 Creating a Custom Policy

Custom policies can be created as a supplement to the system policies of DDS. For the actions supported for custom policies, see **DDS Actions**.

You can create custom policies in either of the following ways:

- Visual editor: Select cloud services, actions, resources, and request conditions. This does not require knowledge of policy syntax.

- JSON: Edit JSON policies from scratch or based on an existing policy.

For details, see [Creating a Custom Policy](#). The following section contains examples of common DDS custom policies.

Example Custom Policies

- Example 1: Allowing users to create DDS DB instances

```
{
  "Version": "1.1",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
        "dds:instance:create"
      ]
    }
  ]
}
```

- Example 2: Denying DDS DB instance deletion

A deny policy must be used in conjunction with other policies to take effect. If the permissions assigned to a user contain both "Allow" and "Deny", the "Deny" permissions take precedence over the "Allow" permissions.

The following method can be used if you need to assign permissions of the **DDS FullAccess** policy to a user but also forbid the user from deleting DDS DB instances. Create a custom policy for denying DDS DB instance deletion, and assign both policies to the group the user belongs to. Then the user can perform all operations on DDS except deleting DDS instances. The following is an example deny policy:

```
{
  "Version": "1.1",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Effect": "Deny"
      "Action": [
        "dds:instance:deleteInstance"
      ],
    }
  ]
}
```

- Example 3: Defining permissions for multiple services in a policy

A custom policy can contain actions of multiple services that are all of the global or project-level type. The following is an example policy containing actions of multiple services:

```
{
  "Version": "1.1",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Action": [
        "dds:instance:create",
        "dds:instance:modify",
        "dds:instance:deleteInstance",
        "vpc:publicIps:list",
        "vpc:publicIps:update"
      ],
      "Effect": "Allow"
    }
  ]
}
```

```
    ]  
  }  
  Example 4: Setting resource policies  
  A custom policy can be used to set resource policies, indicating the operation permissions  
  on the resources under the current action. Currently, the instance name can be configured,  
  and the asterisk (*) can be used as a wildcard. The following is an example resource policy:  
  {  
    "Version": "1.1",  
    "Statement": [  
      {  
        "Effect": "Allow",  
        "Action": [  
          "dds:instance:list"  
        ]  
      },  
      {  
        "Effect": "Allow",  
        "Action": [  
          "dds:instance:modify"  
        ],  
        "Resource": [  
          "DDS:*:instanceName:dds-*"  
        ]  
      }  
    ]  
  }  
}
```

3.3 Syntax of RBAC Policies

Policy Structure

An RBAC policy consists of a Version, a Statement, and Depends.

Figure 3-2 Policy structure



Policy Syntax


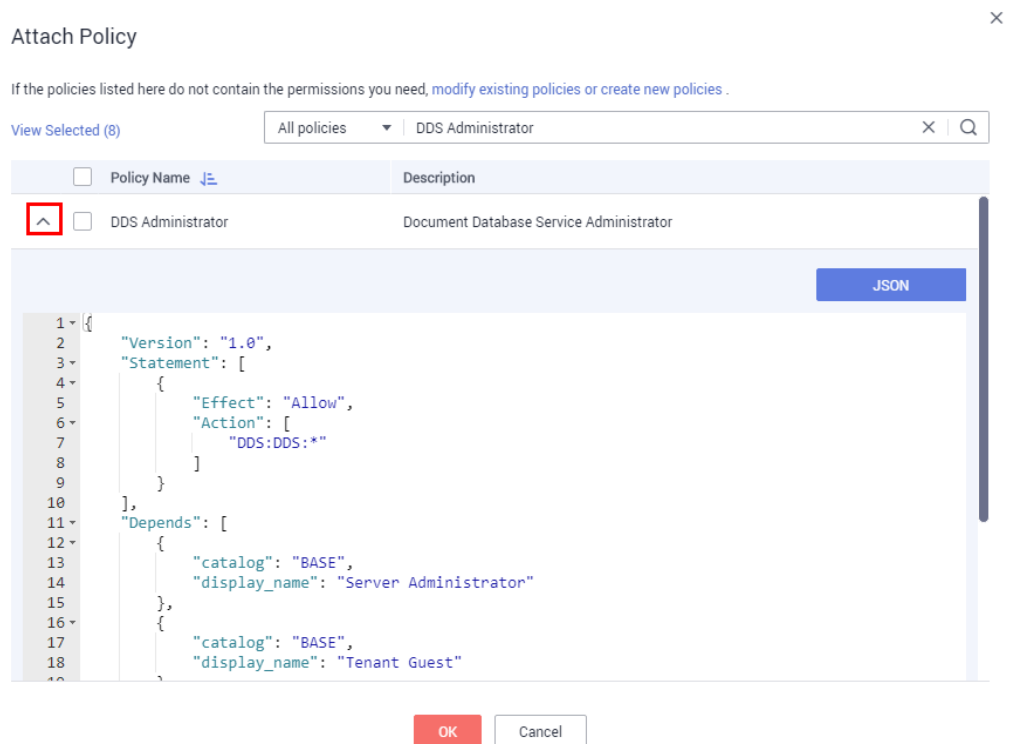
Click  to view the details of a policy. The **DDS Administrator** policy is used as an example to describe the syntax of RBAC policies.

Figure 3-3 DDS Administrator policy



```

{
  "Version": "1.0",
  "Statement": [
    {
      "Effect": "Allow",
      "Action": [
        "DDS:DDS:*"
      ],
      "Resource": [
        "DDS:*:instanceName:dds-*"
      ],
    }
  ],
  "Depends": [
    {
      "catalog": "BASE",
      "display_name": "Server Administrator"
    },
    {
      "catalog": "BASE",
      "display_name": "Tenant Guest"
    }
  ]
}
                
```

Table 3-1 Parameter description

Parameter	Meaning	Value
Version	Policy version	The value is fixed at 1.0 .

Parameter		Meaning	Value
Statement	Action	Operations to be performed on DDS.	Format: <i>Service name.Resource type.Operation</i> DDS:DDS:* : Permissions for performing all operations on all resource types in DDS.
	Effect	Determines whether the operation defined in an action is allowed.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Allow • Deny
	Resource	Defines resource authentication.	This parameter is optional. DDS:*:instanceName:dds-* indicates that the user has the configured action permissions on all instances whose names start with dds- . If this parameter is not specified, the user has the permissions on all instances by default.
Depends	catalog	Name of the service to which dependencies of a policy belong	Service Name Example: BASE
	display_name	Name of a dependent policy	Permission name Example: Server Administrator

4 Instance Lifecycle Management

4.1 Instance Statuses

The status of an instance reflects the health of the instance. You can use the management console or API to view the status of a DB instance.

DB Instance Status

Table 4-1 Status and description

Status	Description
Available	A DB instance is running properly.
Abnormal	A DB instance is faulty.
Creating	A DB instance is being created.
Creation failed	A DB instance fails to be created.
Backing up	An instance backup is being created.
Restarting	A DB instance is being restarted because of a modification that requires restarting it for the modification to take effect.
Switchover in progress	The primary and standby nodes of the replica set instance or the primary and standby shards or configs of a cluster instance are being switched over.
Adding node	shard or dds mongos nodes are being added to a DDS cluster instance.
Deleting node	The node that failed to be added is being deleted.
Scaling up	The storage space of instance nodes is being expanded.
Changing instance class	The CPU or memory of a DB instance is being changed.

Status	Description
Changing to yearly/monthly	The billing mode is being changed from pay-per-use to yearly/monthly.
Checking restoration	The backup of the current DB instance is being restored to a new DB instance.
Restoring	The backup is being restored to the existing DB instance.
Restore failed	Restoring to the existing DB instance failed.
Switching SSL	The SSL channel is being enabled or disabled.
Querying original slow query logs	Show Original Log is being enabled or disabled.
Changing private IP address	The private IP address of a node is being changed.
Changing port	The DB instance port is being changed.
Changing a security group	The security group is being changed.
Frozen	DB instances are frozen when there is no balance in the account.
Minor version upgrade	The minor version upgrade is in progress.
Checking changes	Status of a yearly/monthly instance when the billing mode is being changed.

Parameter Template Status

Table 4-2 Status and description

Status	Description
In-Sync	A database parameter change has taken effect.
Available	Parameters change. Pending restart

4.2 Exporting Instance Information


On the DDS console, you can export information about all DDS instances or information about a specified instance.


 NOTE

Only whitelisted users can use this function. You need to submit a service ticket to apply for this function. In the upper right corner of the management console, choose [Service Tickets](#) > [Create Service Ticket](#) to submit a service ticket.

Exporting Information of All Instances

Step 1 [Log in to the management console.](#)

Step 2 Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

Step 3 Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases** > **Document Database Service**.


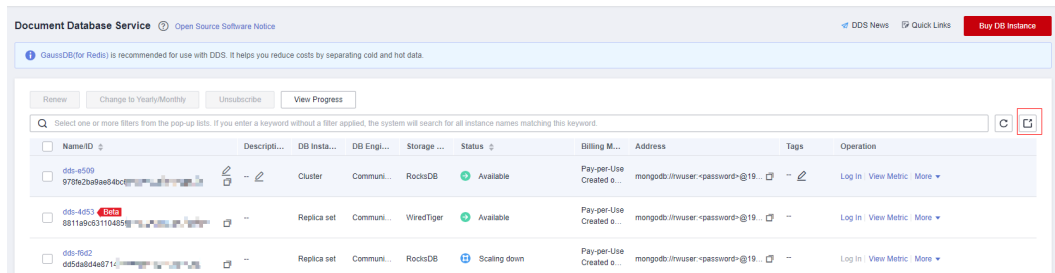
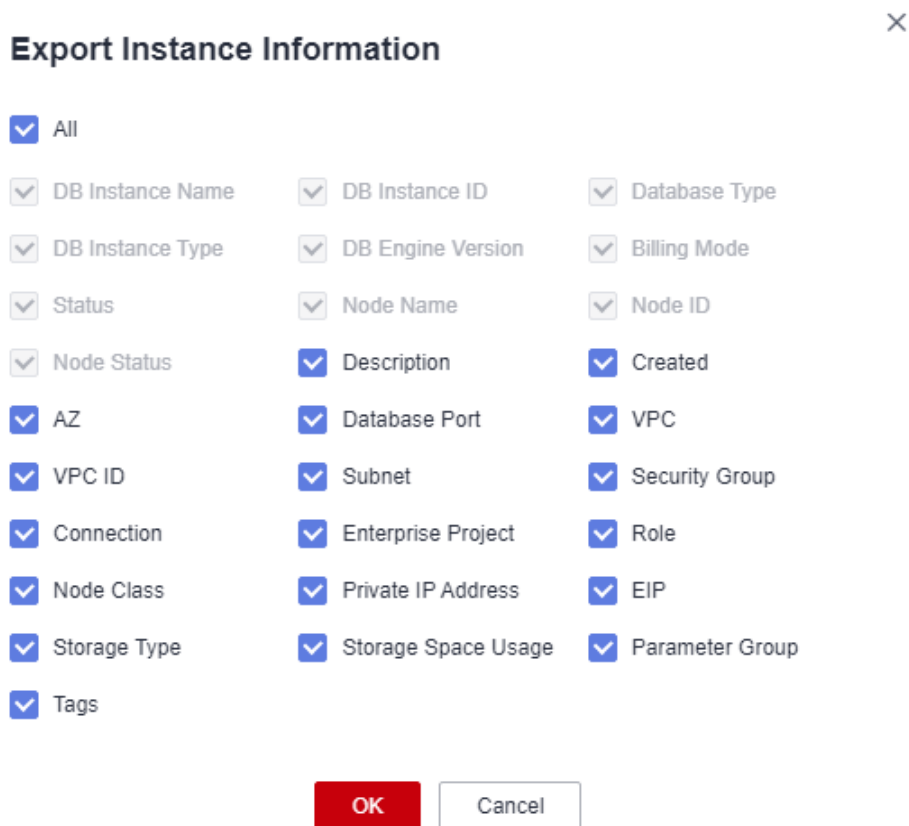
Step 4 On the **Instances** page, click  in the upper right corner of the instance list.

Figure 4-1 Exporting the instance information



Step 5 In the pop-up box, select the desired items and click **OK**.

Figure 4-2 Export Instance Information




Step 6 View the .xls file exported to your local PC.

----End

Exporting Information of a Specified Instance

Step 1 [Log in to the management console.](#)

Step 2 Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

Step 3 Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service.**


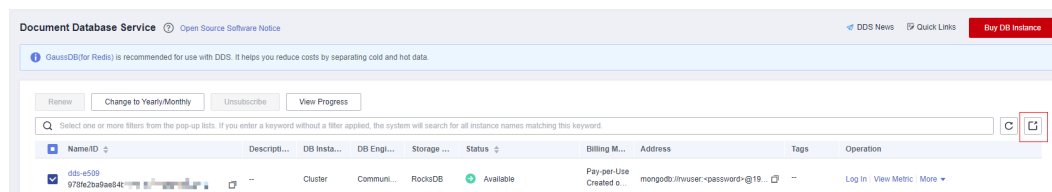
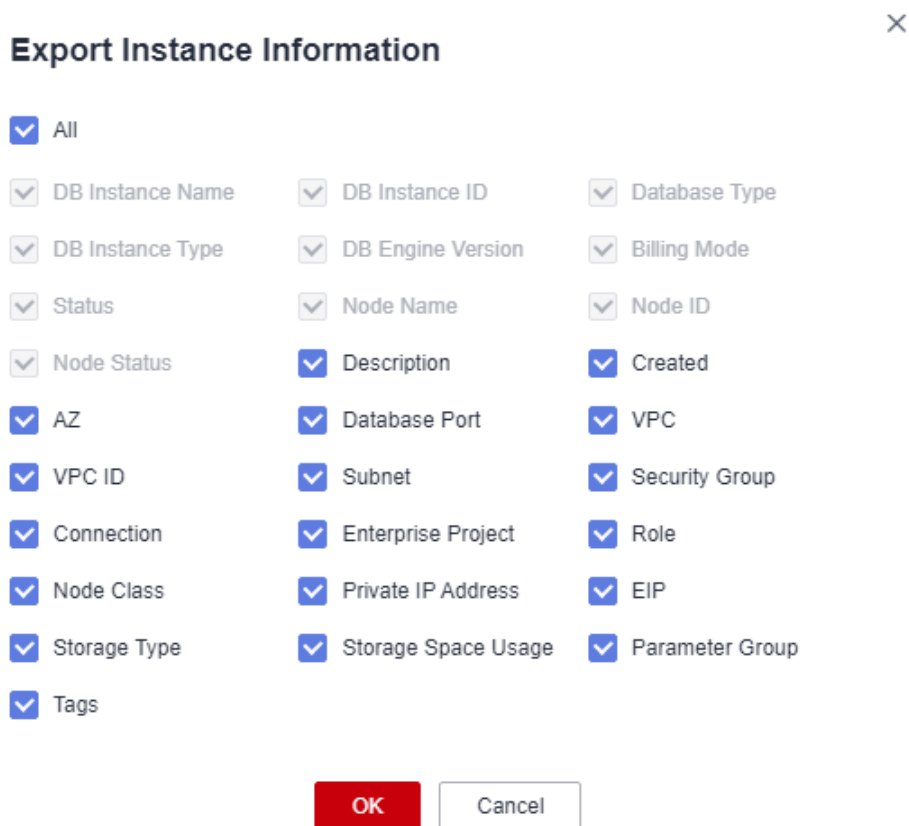
Step 4 On the **Instances** page, select the instance and click  in the upper right corner of the instance list.

Figure 4-3 Exporting required instance information



Step 5 In the pop-up box, select the desired items and click **OK**.

Figure 4-4 Export Instance Information



Step 6 View the .xls file exported to your local PC.

----End

4.3 Restarting an Instance or a Node

You may need to occasionally restart an instance to perform routine maintenance. For example, after modifying certain parameters, the instance may need to be restarted to apply the changes.

Precautions

- You can restart an instance only when its status is **Available**.
- Restarting an instance will interrupt services. Exercise caution when performing this operation.
- This instance is not available when it is being restarted. Restarting an instance will clear the cached memory in it. You are advised to restart it during off-peak hours.
- If you restart a cluster or replica set instance, all nodes in the instance are also restarted.

- You can restart a cluster instance or any dds mongos, shard, config node, or read replica in the cluster instance. During the restart, the node cannot be accessed.
- You can restart a replica set instance. During the restart, the instance cannot be accessed.
- You can restart any read replica in a replica set instance. During the restart, the node cannot be accessed.


 **NOTE**


Only whitelisted users can restart a read replica in a replica set instance. You need to submit a service ticket to apply for this function. In the upper right corner of the management console, choose [Service Tickets > Create Service Ticket](#) to submit a service ticket.

- You can forcibly restart an abnormal node in a DB instance. The node cannot be accessed during the restart.
- After a replica set instance is restarted, the node roles may change.
- It takes less than 30 seconds to start a mongod or dds mongos process. If there are a large number of collections (more than 10,000), it may take several minutes to start the Mongod process. Before the startup is complete, the corresponding node cannot be connected. You are advised to limit the number of collections to less than 10,000 to avoid excessive service loss due to long-time startup.
- If you enable operation protection to improve the security of your account and cloud products, two-factor authentication is required for sensitive operations. For details about how to enable operation protection, see [Operation Protection](#) in *Identity and Access Management User Guide*.

Restarting an Instance

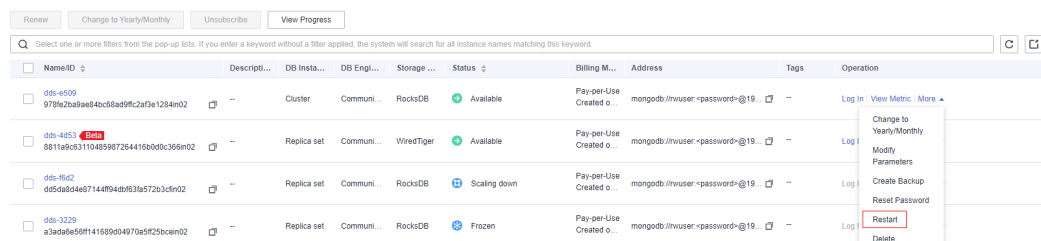
Step 1 [Log in to the management console](#).

Step 2 Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

Step 3 Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

Step 4 On the **Instances** page, locate the instance and in the **Operation** column, choose **More > Restart**.

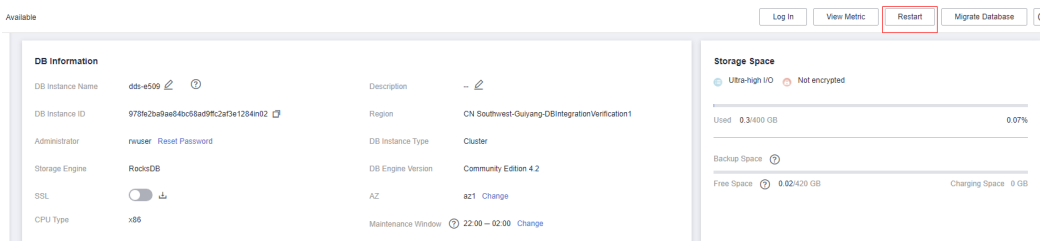
Figure 4-5 Restarting an instance



NameID	Descripti...	DB Insta...	DB Engr...	Storage ...	Status	Billing M...	Address	Tags	Operation
dds-c509 9789c2ba9a84bc88a99c2a3e1284m02		Cluster	Communi...	RocksDB	Available	Pay-per-Use Created o...	mongodb://huser- password@19...		Log In View Metric More
dds-4d53 8811a9c93110485987264416000c366in02		Replica set	Communi...	WiredTiger	Available	Pay-per-Use Created o...	mongodb://huser- password@19...		Log In Change to Yearly/Monthly Modify Parameters
dds-r6d2 d5d9a84467144f954d0f93a572a3cdn02		Replica set	Communi...	RocksDB	Scaling down	Pay-per-Use Created o...	mongodb://huser- password@19...		Log In Create Backup Reset Password
dds-3220 a3adafe59f141689d04970a5f25bcem02		Replica set	Communi...	RocksDB	Frozen	Pay-per-Use Created o...	mongodb://huser- password@19...		Log In Restart Delete

Alternatively, click the instance name and on the displayed **Basic Information** page, click **Restart** in the upper right corner of the page.

Figure 4-6 Restarting an instance



Step 5 If you have enabled operation protection, click **Start Verification** in the **Restart DB Instance** dialog box. On the displayed page, click **Send Code**, enter the verification code, and click **Verify**. The page is closed automatically.

Step 6 In the displayed dialog box, click **Yes**.


Step 7 View the instance status.


On the **Instances** page, the instance status is **Restarting**.

----End

Restarting a Cluster Node

Step 1 [Log in to the management console](#).

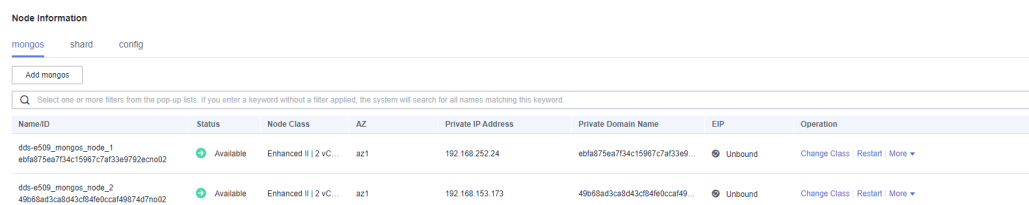
Step 2 Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

Step 3 Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

Step 4 On the **Instances** page, click the cluster instance name.

Step 5 In the **Node Information** area on the **Basic Information** page, click the **dds mongos**, **shard**, or **config** tab, locate a node, and in the **Operation** column, click **Restart**.

Figure 4-7 Restarting a dds mongos node



Step 6 In the displayed dialog box, click **Yes**.

Step 7 View the node status.

When one node status is **Restarting**, other nodes of the instance cannot be restarted.

----End

Restarting a Read Replica of a Replica Set Instance



- Step 1** [Log in to the management console.](#)
- Step 2** Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.
- Step 3** Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service.**
- Step 4** On the **Instances** page, click the replica set instance.
- Step 5** In the **Node Information** area on the **Basic Information** page, click the **Read replicas** tab, locate the read replica to be restarted, and click **More** in the **Operation** column.

Figure 4-8 Read replicas



NameID	Role	Status	Node Class	AZ	Private IP Address	Private Domain Name	Storage Space Usage...	Operation
dds-4529_... b3aaa7a6cc2d479e99...	Readonly	Available	Enhanced II ...	az1	192.168...	b3aaa7a6cc2d479e99...	3.9...	Scale Storage Space Change Instance Class More

- Step 6** Select **Restart**.

Figure 4-9 Restarting a read replica



NameID	Role	Status	Node Class	AZ	Private IP Address	Private Domain Name	Storage Space Usage...	Operation
dds-4529_... b3aaa7a6cc2d479e99...	Readonly	Available	Enhanced II ...	az1	192.168...	b3aaa7a6cc2d479e99...	3.9...	Scale Storage Space Change Instance Class More

- Step 7** In the displayed dialog box, click **Yes** to restart the read replica.
- Step 8** View the status of the read replica.

When one node status is **Restarting**, other nodes of the instance cannot be restarted.

----End

Forcibly Restarting an Abnormal Node



- Step 1** [Log in to the management console.](#)
- Step 2** Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.
- Step 3** Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service.**
- Step 4** On the **Instances** page, locate the target DB instance and click its name.
- Step 5** In the **Node Information** area on the **Basic Information** page, click **Forcibly Restart** in the **Operation** column of the target abnormal node.

Figure 4-10 Selecting an abnormal node

Node Information

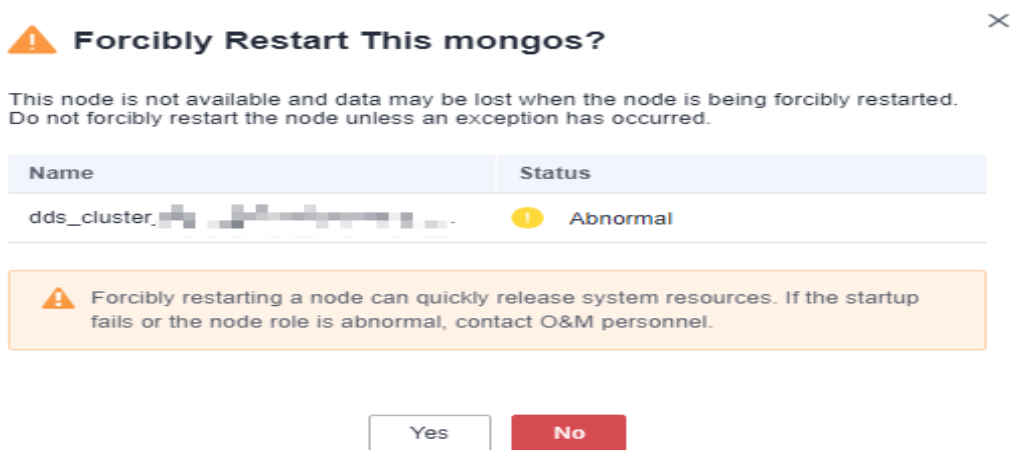
mongos shard config

Add mongos

NameID	Status	Node Class	AZ	Private IP Address	Private Domain Name	EIP	Operation
dds_cluster_34_1_20230704191033_mongo- dc8f83befc04ce3a3039ee7340137cno02	Abnormal	Enhanced 2 vCP...	az1	192.168.1.1	dc8f83befc04ce3a3039ee734...	Unbound	Change Class Forcibly Restart More ▾
dds_cluster_34_1_20230704191033_mongo- 90591ba4f454c06935d82641bd0d0f50no02	Abnormal	Enhanced 2 vCP...	az1	192.168.1.2	90591ba4f454c06935d82641b...	Unbound	Change Class Forcibly Restart More ▾

Step 6 In the displayed dialog box, click **Yes** to restart the abnormal node.

Figure 4-11 Restarting the abnormal node



Step 7 View the status of the node.

When one node status is **Restarting**, other nodes of the instance cannot be restarted.

----End

4.4 Deleting a Pay-per-Use Instance

To delete an instance billed on a pay-per-use basis, you need to locate the instance and click **Delete** on the **Instances** page. After you delete an instance, all of the nodes for that instance are deleted along with it.

Precautions


- To delete an instance billed on a yearly/monthly basis, you need to unsubscribe from the order. For details, see [Unsubscribing from a Yearly/Monthly Instance](#).
- After you delete the instance, all its data and all automated backups are automatically deleted as well and cannot be restored. Exercise caution when performing this operation.
- By default, all manual backups are retained in DDS. You can use a backup to restore a deleted instance.
- If you enable operation protection to improve the security of your account and cloud products, two-factor authentication is required for sensitive

operations. For details about how to enable operation protection, see [Operation Protection](#) in *Identity and Access Management User Guide*.

Procedure

Step 1 [Log in to the management console](#).

Step 2 Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

Step 3 Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

Step 4 On the **Instances** page, locate the instance and choose **More > Delete** in the **Operation** column.

Step 5 If you have enabled operation protection, click **Start Verification** in the **Delete DB Instance** dialog box. On the displayed page, click **Send Code**, enter the verification code, and click **Verify**. The page is closed automatically.

Step 6 In the displayed dialog box, click **Yes**.

----End

4.5 Recycling an Instance

4.5.1 Modifying the Recycling Policy

Unsubscribed yearly/monthly instances and deleted pay-per-use instances can be moved to the recycle bin for management.

Precautions

- The recycling policy is enabled by default and cannot be disabled. Instances in the recycle bin are retained for 7 days by default, and this will not incur any charges.
- Up to 100 instances can be moved to the recycle bin. Once the recycle bin is full, you can still delete instances, but they cannot be placed in the recycle bin, so the deletions will be permanent.
- You can modify the retention period, and the changes only apply to the instances deleted after the changes, so exercise caution when performing this operation.
- Recycling and backup cannot be performed when a node is in the **UNKNOWN** state.

Procedure

Step 1 [Log in to the management console](#).

Step 2 Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.


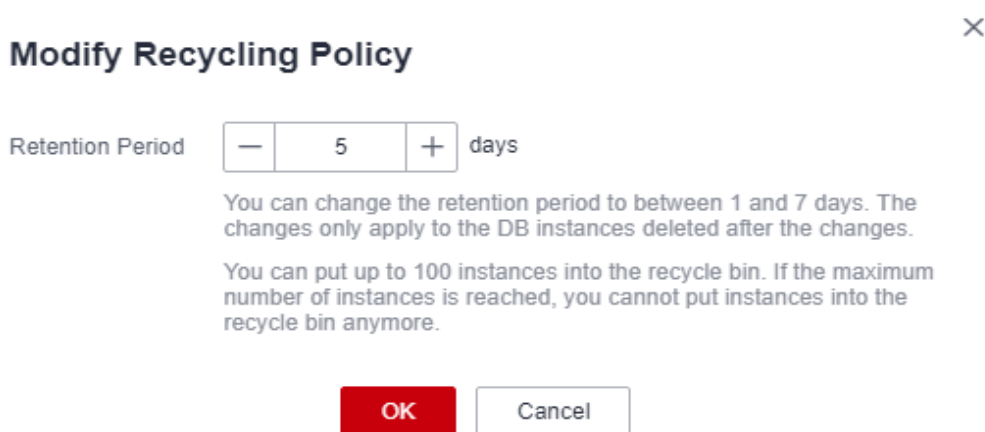
- Step 3** Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.
- Step 4** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Recycle Bin**.
- Step 5** On the **Recycle Bin** page, click **Modify Recycling Policy**. In the displayed dialog box, set the retention period for the deleted DB instances (range: 1 to 7 days). Then, click **OK**.

Figure 4-12 Modify Recycling Policy



----End

4.5.2 Rebuilding an Instance

You can rebuild an instance from the recycle bin to restore data.

Precautions

You can rebuild instances from the recycle bin within the retention period.

Procedure



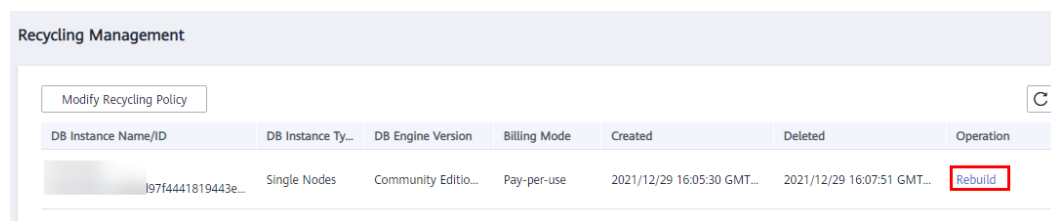
- Step 1** [Log in to the management console](#).
- Step 2** Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.
- Step 3** Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.
- Step 4** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Recycle Bin**.
- Step 5** On the **Recycle Bin** page, locate the instance to be rebuilt and in the **Operation** column, click **Rebuild**.

Figure 4-13 Rebuilding a DB Instance



Step 6 On the displayed page, set required parameters and submit the rebuilding task. For details, see [Restoring Data to a New Instance](#).

----End

5 Instance Modifications


5.1 Changing an Instance Name


This section describes how to change an instance name to identify different instances.



Procedure

Step 1 [Log in to the management console.](#)

Step 2 Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

Step 3 Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

Step 4 On the **Instances** page, click  next to the instance name you wish to change, enter a new name and click **OK** to apply the changes.

Alternatively, in the **DB Information** area on the **Basic Information** page, click  in the **DB Instance Name** field, enter a new name and click  to apply the changes.

NOTE

- The instance name can be the same as an existing instance name.
- The instance name must contain 4 to 64 characters and must start with a letter. It is case sensitive and can contain letters, digits, hyphens (-), and underscores (_). It cannot contain other special characters.

Step 5 View the results on the **Instances** page.

----End

5.2 Changing an Instance Description

You can add and change descriptions for instances.


 NOTE


Only whitelisted users can use this function. You need to submit a service ticket to apply for this function. In the upper right corner of the management console, choose [Service Tickets](#) > [Create Service Ticket](#) to submit a service ticket.



Procedure

Step 1 [Log in to the management console](#).

Step 2 Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

Step 3 Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases** > **Document Database Service**.

Step 4 On the **Instances** page, locate the instance you wish to edit the description for and click  in the **Description** column to edit the instance description. Then, click **OK**.

Alternatively, click the target instance to go to the **Basic Information** page. In the **DB Information** area, click  in the **Description** field to edit the instance description. To submit the change, click .

 NOTE

The instance description can contain up to 64 characters, excluding carriage return characters and special characters >!<"&'=

Step 5 View the results on the **Instances** page.

----End


5.3 Modifying an Instance Tag


This section describes how to modify tags of DDS DB instances so that you can filter DB instances by tag.

Procedure

Step 1 [Log in to the management console](#).

Step 2 Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

Step 3 Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases** > **Document Database Service**.

Step 4 On the **Instances** page, locate the instance you wish to edit the tag for and click  in the **Tags** column to edit the instance tag. Then, click **OK**.

Step 5 View the results on the **Instances** page.

----End

5.4 Changing the Name of the Replica Set in the Connection Address

You can change the name of the replica set in the connection address for a DDS DB instance to better meet your service requirements.


Precautions

- This function is available only for replica set instances.
- When you change the replica set name in the connection address of a DDS DB instance, the instance will be unavailable. Exercise caution when performing this operation.
- This operation is not allowed if the DB instance is in any of the following statuses: creating, changing instance class, changing port, restarting, or abnormal.

Procedure

Step 1 [Log in to the management console.](#)

Step 2 Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

Step 3 Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

Step 4 On the **Instances** page, locate the target replica set instance and click its name.


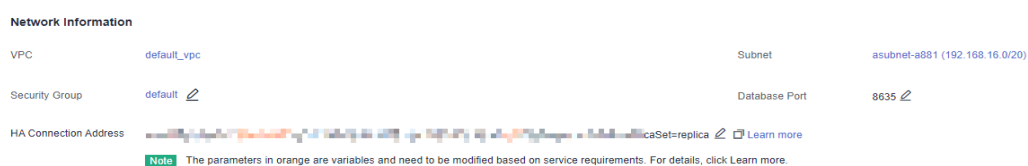
Step 5 In the **Network Information** area, click  next to **HA Connection Address**.

Figure 5-1 HA Connection Address



Step 6 Enter a new name and click  to save the change.

NOTE

The name of the replica set in the connection address must be 3 to 128 characters long and start with a letter. It is case-sensitive and can contain only letters, digits, and underscores (_).

----End

5.5 Upgrading a Minor Engine Version

DDS supports minor version upgrade to improve performance, add new functions, and fix bugs. For details, see [Kernel Version Description](#).

If a new patch is released, you can click **Upgrade Minor Version** on the **Instances** page to upgrade the minor engine version.

Figure 5-2 Minor version upgrade



Name/ID	Description	DB Instance	DB Engine Version	Storage Engine	Status	Billing Mode	Address	Operation
...	...	Replica Sets	Community Edition 4.0 Upgrade Minor Version	WiredTiger	Available	Pay-per-Use	mongodb://rwuser:password@192.1...	Log In View Metric More

Precautions

- A DDS version cannot be downgraded, for example, from 4.0 to 3.4.
- Pay attention to patches that address issues and vulnerabilities from the open source community. When a new patch is released, install the patch in a timely manner.
- During the upgrade, your services may be intermittently interrupted once for up to 30s. Ensure that your instance can be reconnected automatically or perform this operation during off-peak hours.
- DDL operations, such as create event, drop event, and alter event, are not allowed during the upgrade.


Constraints

- Only cluster and replica set instances support minor engine version upgrade.
- The instance version must be 3.4, 4.0, or 4.2.
- If the instance status is abnormal or the instance is being operated, the upgrade cannot be performed.
- The upgrade cannot be performed if the instance nodes are abnormal.

Procedure

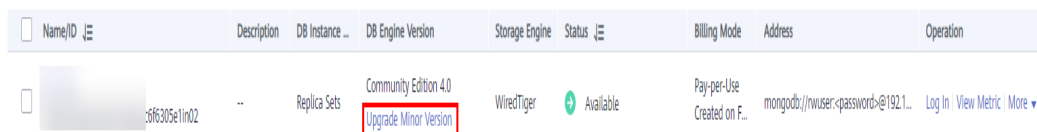
Step 1 [Log in to the management console](#).

Step 2 Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

Step 3 Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

Step 4 On the **Instances** page, locate the instance you want to upgrade and click **Upgrade Minor Version** in the **DB Engine Version** column.

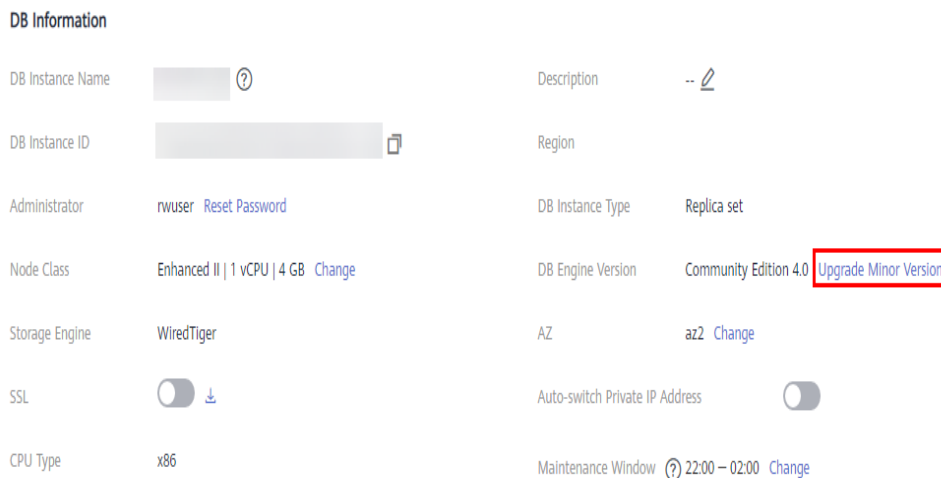
Figure 5-3 Minor version upgrade



Name/ID	Description	DB Instance	DB Engine Version	Storage Engine	Status	Billing Mode	Address	Operation
...	...	Replica Sets	Community Edition 4.0 Upgrade Minor Version	WiredTiger	Available	Pay-per-Use	mongodb://rwuser:password@192.1...	Log In View Metric More

Alternatively, click the instance. In the **DB Information** area on the **Basic Information** page, click **Upgrade Minor Version** in the **DB Engine Version** field.

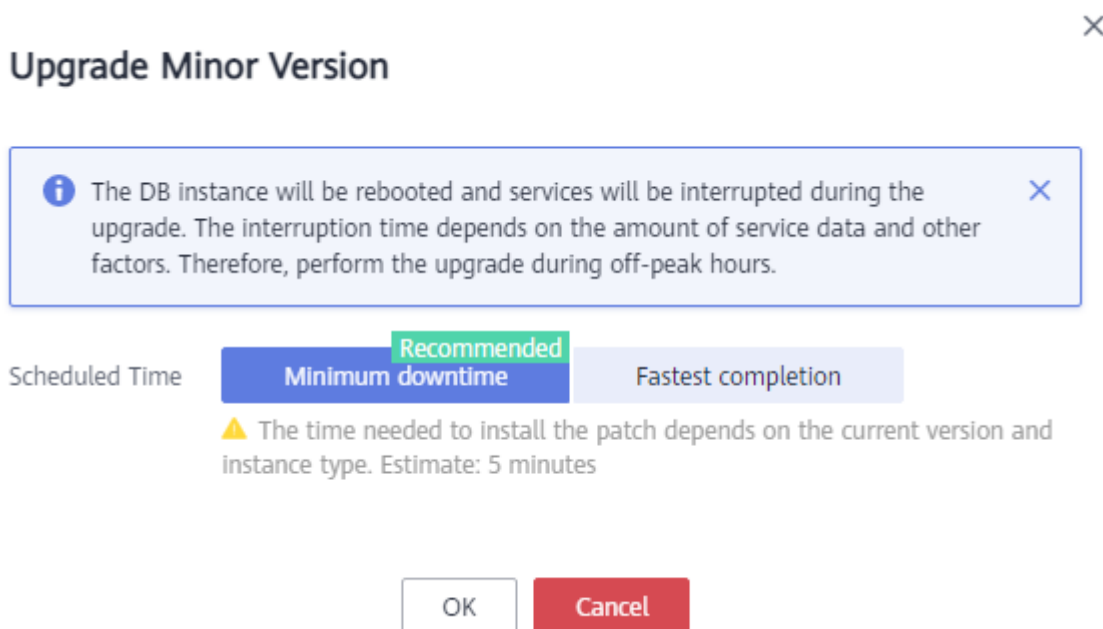
Figure 5-4 Minor version upgrade



Step 5 In the displayed dialog box, specify **Scheduled Time** based on service requirements and click **OK**. You can view the upgrade progress on the **Task Center** page.

- **Minimum downtime:** The upgrade has little impact on services.
- **Fastest completion:** The upgrade takes a relatively short time.

Figure 5-5 Selecting a scheduled time



NOTE

The time required for the upgrade varies according to the site requirement.

----End

5.6 Upgrading a Major Engine Version

Precautions

DDS does not support major engine version upgrade on the console. You can use DRS to migrate data as required.

For example, you can use DRS to migrate data from DDS 3.4 to DDS 4.0 without interrupting services.


Constraints

Before migrating data using DRS, you need to create the destination DB instance in advance.

Procedure

Step 1 [Log in to the management console](#).

Step 2 Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

Step 3 Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

Step 4 On the **Instances** page, click an instance you want to migrate. On the displayed **Basic Information** page, click **Migrate Database** in the upper right corner of the page.

For more information, see [Migrating Data to the Cloud](#) in *Data Replication Service User Guide*.

Table 5-1 Database versions

Source DB Version	Destination Database Version	Migration Type
Self-built MongoDB/ Other cloud MongoDB/DDS • 3.4 • 4.0 • 4.2 • 4.4	DDS • 3.4 • 4.0 • 4.2 • 4.4	Version upgrade

 NOTE

- Data cannot be migrated from a newer version database to an older version database.
- During the specification change, two primary/standby switchovers and two intermittent disconnections will occur. After that, check the DRS task.
- After a major version upgrade, you can change the IP address of the newer version database to the IP address of the older version database. To perform this operation, release the IP address of the older version database first. For details, see [Changing a Private IP Address](#).

----End

5.7 Scaling Up Storage Space

5.7.1 Scaling Up a Cluster Instance

You can scale up the storage space of an instance, and the backup space increases accordingly.

- If the purchased storage space exceeds 600 GB and the available storage space is 18 GB, the database will be set to the read-only state when the disk is full.
- If the purchased storage space is less than or equal to 600 GB and the storage usage reaches 97%, the database is set to the read-only state.

In addition, you can set alarm rules for the storage space usage. For details, see [Configuring Alarm Rules](#).

For details about the causes and solutions of insufficient storage space, see [High Storage Usage](#)

Precautions

- Scaling is available when your account balance is sufficient.
- For cluster instances, only shard nodes can be scaled up. dds mongos nodes, config nodes, and read replicas cannot be scaled up.
- If you scale up a DB instance with disks encrypted, the expanded storage space will be encrypted using the original encryption key.
- An instance cannot be scaled up if it is in any of the following statuses:
 - Creating
 - Changing instance class
 - Adding node
 - Deleting node
 - Upgrading minor version
- Services are not interrupted during scaling. The storage type cannot be changed.


Pricing


- A pay-per-use instance is still billed on an hourly basis after the instance is scaled up.

- If you scale up a yearly/monthly instance, you will pay price difference or get a refund.
- For details, see [Product Pricing Details](#).

Procedure

Step 1 [Log in to the management console](#).

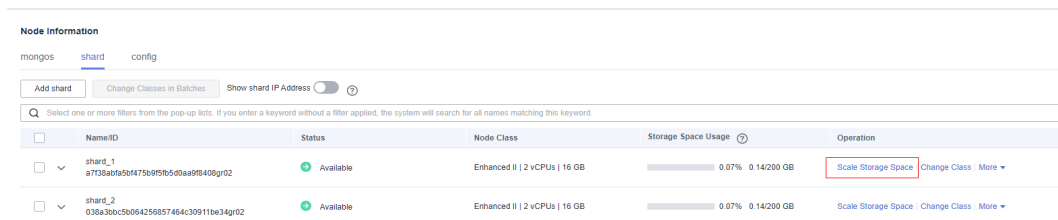
Step 2 Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

Step 3 Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

Step 4 On the **Instances** page, click the cluster instance name.

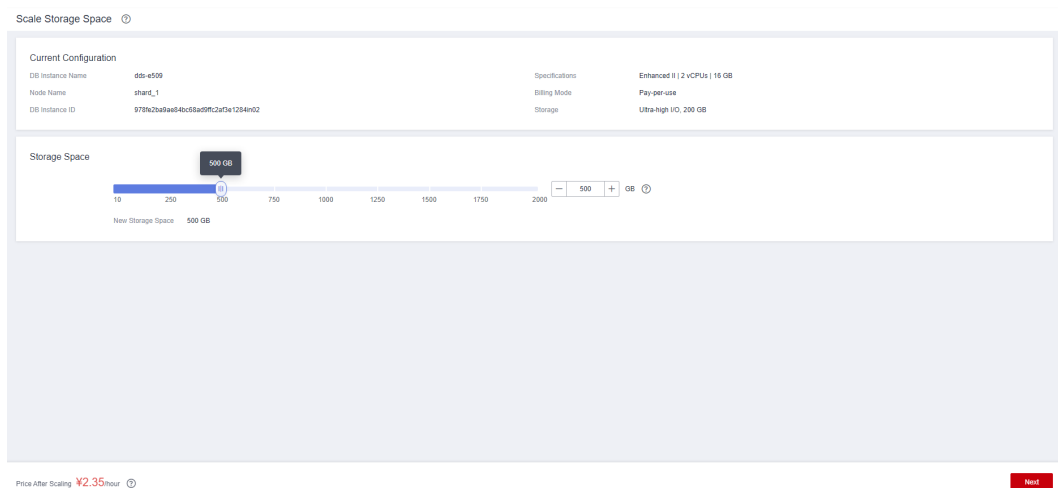
Step 5 In the **Node Information** area on the **Basic Information** page, click the **shard** tab, locate the shard node you want to scale, and click **Scale Storage Space** in the **Operation** column.

Figure 5-6 Scaling up storage space



Step 6 On the displayed page, specify the desired amount of space to be changed and click **Next**.

Figure 5-7 Scale Storage Space




Select at least 10 GB each time you scale up the storage, and the storage size must be multiples of 10 GB. If a DB instance has fewer than 16 vCPUs, the maximum storage that can be scaled up to is 2,000 GB. For an instance of 16 vCPUs or more, the maximum storage that can be scaled up to is 4,000 GB.

Step 7 On the displayed page, confirm the storage space.

- For yearly/monthly DB instances
 - If you need to modify your settings, click **Previous** to go back to the page for you to specify details.
 - If you do not need to modify your settings, click **Submit** to go to the payment page and complete the payment.
- For pay-per-use DB instances
 - If you need to modify your settings, click **Previous** to go back to the page for you to specify details.
 - If you do not need to modify the specifications, click **Submit** to scale up the storage space.

Step 8 Check the results.

- This process takes about 3 to 5 minutes. The status of the DB instance in the instance list is **Scaling up**.
- In the upper right corner of the instance list, click  to refresh the list. The instance status changes to **Available**.
- In the **Node Information** area on the **Basic Information** page, click the **shard** tab and check whether the scale up was successful.

----End

Reference

[What Should I Do If Storage Usage Is Unusually High?](#)

5.7.2 Scaling Up a Replica Set Instance

You can scale up the storage space of an instance, and the backup space increases accordingly.

- If the purchased storage space exceeds 600 GB and the available storage space is 18 GB, the database will be set to the read-only state when the disk is full.
- If the purchased storage space is less than or equal to 600 GB and the storage usage reaches 97%, the database is set to the read-only state.

In addition, you can set alarm rules for the storage space usage. For details, see [Configuring Alarm Rules](#). For details about the causes and solutions of insufficient storage space, see [High Storage Usage](#).

Precautions

- Scaling is available when your account balance is sufficient.
- If you scale up a DB instance with disks encrypted, the expanded storage space will be encrypted using the original encryption key.
- An instance cannot be scaled up if it is in any of the following statuses:
 - Creating
 - Changing instance class


- Adding node
- Deleting node
- Upgrading minor version
- Switchover in progress
- During scaling, services will not be interrupted, and the storage type cannot be changed.


Pricing

- A pay-per-use instance is still billed on an hourly basis after the instance is scaled up.
- If you scale up a yearly/monthly instance, you will pay price difference or get a refund.
- For details, see [Product Pricing Details](#).

Procedure

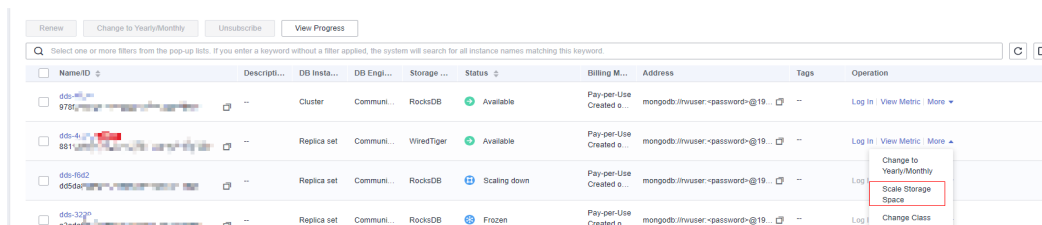
Step 1 [Log in to the management console](#).

Step 2 Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

Step 3 Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

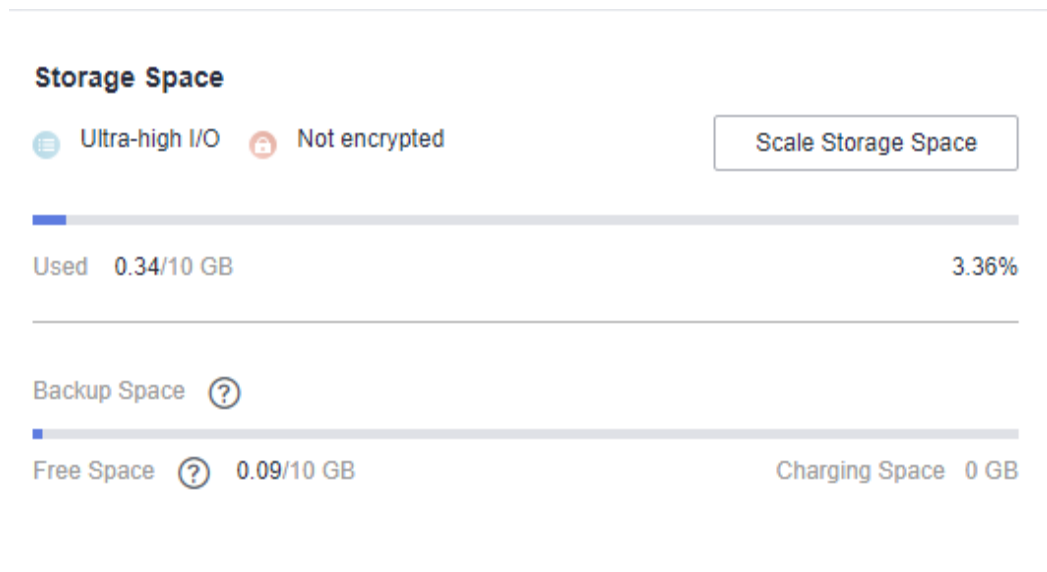
Step 4 On the **Instances** page, locate the replica set instance and choose **More > Scale Storage Space** in the **Operation** column.

Figure 5-8 Scale Storage Space



Alternatively, on the **Instances** page, click the name of the replica set instance. In the **Storage Space** area on the **Basic Information** page, click **Scale**.

Figure 5-9 Scale Storage Space



Step 5 On the displayed page, specify the desired amount of space to be changed and click **Next**.

Figure 5-10 Scale Storage Space




Select at least 10 GB each time you scale up the storage, and the storage size must be multiples of 10 GB. The maximum amount of storage space is 3,000 GB.

Step 6 On the displayed page, confirm the storage space.

- For yearly/monthly DB instances
 - If you need to modify your settings, click **Previous** to go back to the page for you to specify details.
 - If you do not need to modify your settings, click **Submit** to go to the payment page and complete the payment.
- For pay-per-use DB instances
 - If you need to modify your settings, click **Previous** to go back to the page for you to specify details.
 - If you do not need to modify the specifications, click **Submit** to scale up the storage space.

Step 7 Check the results.

- This process takes about 3 to 5 minutes. The status of the DB instance in the instance list is **Scaling up**.
- In the upper right corner of the instance list, click  to refresh the list. The instance status changes to **Available**.
- In the **Storage Space** area on the **Basic Information** page, check whether the scaling up is successful.

----End

Reference

[What Should I Do If Storage Usage Is Unusually High?](#)

5.7.3 Scaling Up a Read Replica

This section describes how to scale up the storage space of a read replica of a replica set instance.

Precautions

- Scaling is available when your account balance is sufficient.
- If you scale up a DB instance with disks encrypted, the expanded storage space will be encrypted using the original encryption key.
- An instance cannot be scaled up if it is in any of the following statuses:
 - Creating
 - Changing instance class
 - Adding node
 - Deleting node
 - Upgrading minor version
 - Switchover in progress
- During scaling, services will not be interrupted, and the storage type cannot be changed.


Pricing

- A pay-per-use instance is still billed on an hourly basis after the instance is scaled up.
- If you scale up a yearly/monthly instance, you will pay price difference or get a refund.
- For details, see [Product Pricing Details](#).

Procedure

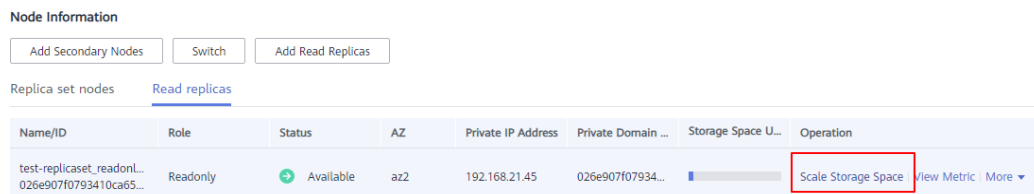
Step 1 [Log in to the management console](#).

Step 2 Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

Step 3 Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

Step 4 On the **Instances** page, click the replica set instance name.

Step 5 In the **Node Information** area on the **Basic Information** page, locate the read replica you want to scale up and click **Scale Storage Space** in the **Operation** column.



Step 6 On the displayed page, specify the desired amount of space to be added and click **Next**.

Figure 5-11 Scaling up a read replica



Select at least 10 GB each time you scale up the storage, and the storage size must be multiples of 10 GB. The maximum amount of storage space is 3,000 GB.

Step 7 On the displayed page, confirm the storage space.

- For yearly/monthly instances
 - If you need to modify your settings, click **Previous** to go back to the page for you to specify details.
 - If you do not need to modify your settings, click **Submit** to go to the payment page and complete the payment.
- For pay-per-use instances
 - If you need to modify your settings, click **Previous** to go back to the page for you to specify details.
 - If you do not need to modify the specifications, click **Submit** to scale up the storage space.

Step 8 Check the results.

- This process takes about 3 to 5 minutes. The status of the DB instance in the instance list is **Scaling up**.
- In the upper right corner of the instance list, click to refresh the list. The instance status changes to **Available**.

----End

Reference

What Should I Do If Storage Usage Is Unusually High?

5.7.4 Scaling Up a Single Node Instance

This section describes how to scale up the storage space of an instance. If you scale up the storage space of an instance, the backup space increases accordingly.

- If the purchased storage space exceeds 600 GB and the available storage space is 18 GB, the database will be set to the read-only state when the disk is full.
- If the purchased storage space is less than or equal to 600 GB and the storage usage reaches 97%, the database is set to the read-only state.

In addition, you can set alarm rules for the storage space usage. For details, see [Configuring Alarm Rules](#).

For details about the causes and solutions of insufficient storage space, see [High Storage Usage](#).

Precautions


- Scaling is available when your account balance is sufficient.
- If you scale up a DB instance with disks encrypted, the expanded storage space will be encrypted using the original encryption key.
- An instance cannot be scaled up if it is in any of the following statuses:
 - Creating
 - Changing instance class
 - Deleting node
 - Upgrading minor version
- Services are not interrupted during scaling. The storage type cannot be changed.


Pricing

- A pay-per-use instance is still billed on an hourly basis after the instance is scaled up.
- If you scale up a yearly/monthly instance, you will pay price difference or get a refund.
- For details, see [Product Pricing Details](#).

Procedure

Step 1 [Log in to the management console](#).

Step 2 Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

Step 3 Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

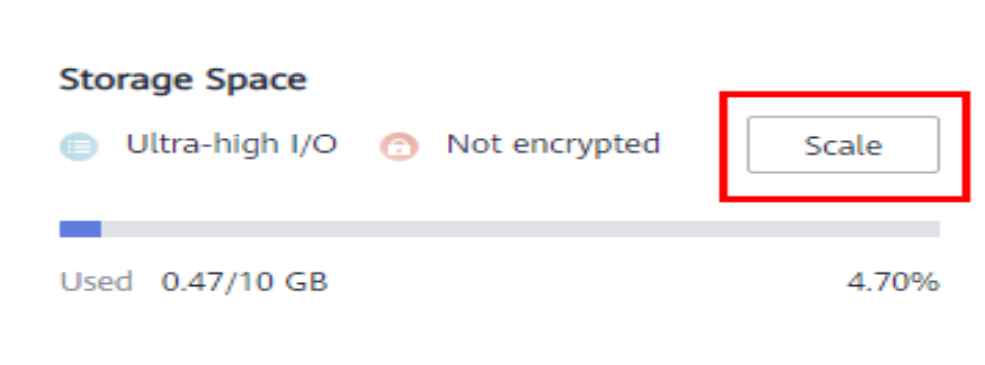
Step 4 On the **Instances** page, locate the single node instance and choose **More > Scale Storage Space** in the **Operation** column.

Figure 5-12 Scale Storage Space

<input type="checkbox"/>	Name/ID	D...	DB Instance Type	D...	St...	Status	Bl...	Address	Operation
<input type="checkbox"/>	dds_rep_40 0a1bdc78d7814cdc8e7a6...		Replica Sets	C...	W...	Available	Pay- Cr...	mongodb://rwuser:spa...	Log In View Metric More
<input type="checkbox"/>	dds_single_40 600e0aba9e814af7ac1a4...		Single Nodes	C...	W...	Available	Pay- Cr...	mongodb://rwuser:spa...	Log In View Metric More
<input type="checkbox"/>	dds-ce25 d57cfbf346854b88bee14...		Clusters	C...	W...	Available	Pay- Cr...	mongodb://rwuser:spa...	Log In View Metric More
<input type="checkbox"/>	dds-8ec6 7b4227a9c053420ab03ae...		Clusters	C...	W...	Available	Pay- Cr...	mongodb://rwuser:spa...	Log In View Metric More

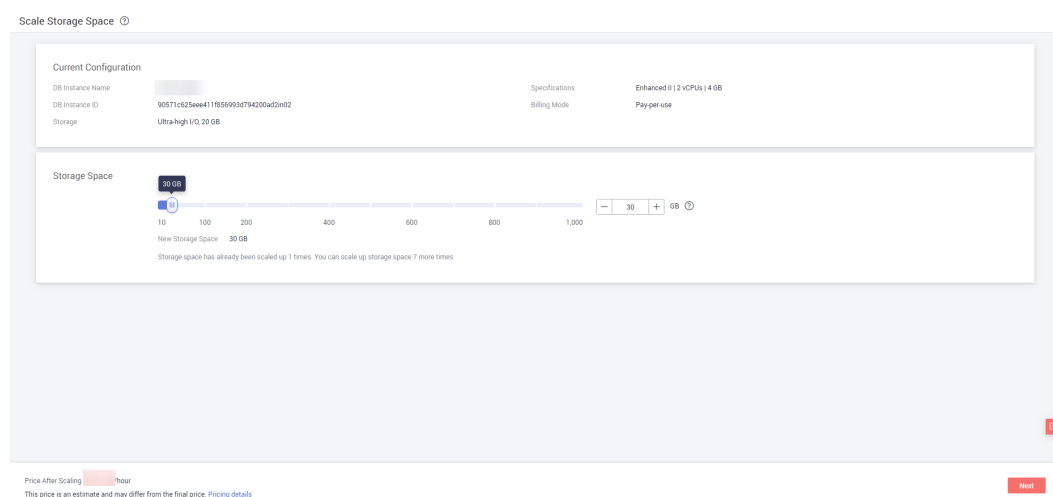
Alternatively, on the **Instances** page, click the name of the single node instance. In the **Storage Space** area on the **Basic Information** page, click **Scale**.

Figure 5-13 Scale



Step 5 On the displayed page, specify the desired amount of space to be added and click **Next**.

Figure 5-14 Scale Storage Space




Select at least 10 GB each time you scale up the storage, and the storage size must be multiples of 10 GB. The maximum amount of storage space is 1,000 GB.

Step 6 On the displayed page, confirm the storage space.

- For yearly/monthly DB instances

- If you need to modify your settings, click **Previous** to go back to the page for you to specify details.
- If you do not need to modify your settings, click **Submit** to go to the payment page and complete the payment.
- For pay-per-use DB instances
 - If you need to modify your settings, click **Previous** to go back to the page for you to specify details.
 - If you do not need to modify the specifications, click **Submit** to scale up the storage space.

Step 7 Check the results.

- This process takes about 3 to 5 minutes. The status of the DB instance in the instance list is **Scaling up**.
- In the upper right corner of the DB instance list, click  to refresh the list. The instance status changes to **Available**.
- In the **Storage Space** area on the **Basic Information** page, check whether the scaling up is successful.

----End

Reference

[What Should I Do If Storage Usage Is Unusually High?](#)

5.8 Changing an Instance Class

5.8.1 Changing a Cluster Instance Class

This section describes how to change the class of a cluster instance.

Change Rules

Considering the stability and performance of DDS DB instances, you can change the DB instance class according to the rules listed in [Table 5-2](#). Exercise caution when performing this operation.

Table 5-2 Change rules

Original Specification	Target Specification	Supported
General-purpose	General-purpose	√
	Enhanced	×
	Enhanced II	√
Enhanced	General-purpose	√
	Enhanced	×

Original Specification	Target Specification	Supported
	Enhanced II	√
Enhanced II	General-purpose	×
	Enhanced	×
	Enhanced II	√

 **NOTE**

√ indicates that an item is supported, and × indicates that an item is not supported.

Precautions

- An instance cannot be deleted while its instance class is being changed.
- When the instance class is being changed, a primary/secondary switchover may occur once or twice and the database connection will be interrupted each time for up to 30s. You are advised to change the specifications during off-peak hours to reduce impacts and ensure that the service system of your client can reconnect to the database if the connection is interrupted.
- After the class of a cluster instance is changed, the system will change the value of **net.maxIncomingConnections** accordingly.
- A maximum of 16 shard nodes can be selected in each batch of class change.
- When the CPU or memory of the shard, config, or dds mongos node in a cluster instance is changed, the read replica class is not changed.
- The classes of read replicas in a cluster instance cannot be changed.
- The classes of yearly/monthly instance shard nodes can only be upgraded or downgraded one at a time.
- Changing the class does not cause data loss.
- If you forcibly change the class of an abnormal node in a DB instance, services may be interrupted.

 **NOTE**

To forcibly change the class of an abnormal node, submit a service ticket by choosing [Service Tickets > Create Service Ticket](#) in the upper right corner of the management console.

Pre-check Items for Instance Class Change

- The instance status and the status of the node whose specifications are to be changed are normal.
- The primary/standby replication delay does not exceed 20s. (This pre-check item applies only to shard and config nodes.)

Pricing


- Instances billed on a pay-per-use basis are still billed based on the time used after the instance class is changed.

- If you change the class of a yearly/monthly instance, you will either pay for the difference or receive a refund.
 - If the price of the new instance class is higher than that of the original instance class, you need to pay for the price difference based on the used resource period.
 - If the price of the new instance class is lower than that of the original instance class, you will be refunded the difference based on the used resource period. The refund will be sent to your account. You can click **Billing Center** in the upper right corner of the console to view your account balance.
- For details, see [Product Pricing Details](#).

Changing dds mongos Class

Step 1 [Log in to the management console](#).

Step 2 Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

Step 3 Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.





Step 4 On the **Instances** page, click the cluster instance name.

Step 5 In the **Node Information** area on the **Basic Information** page, click the **dds mongos** tab, locate the dds mongos node, and click **Change Instance Class** in the **Operation** column.

Figure 5-15 Changing dds mongos class

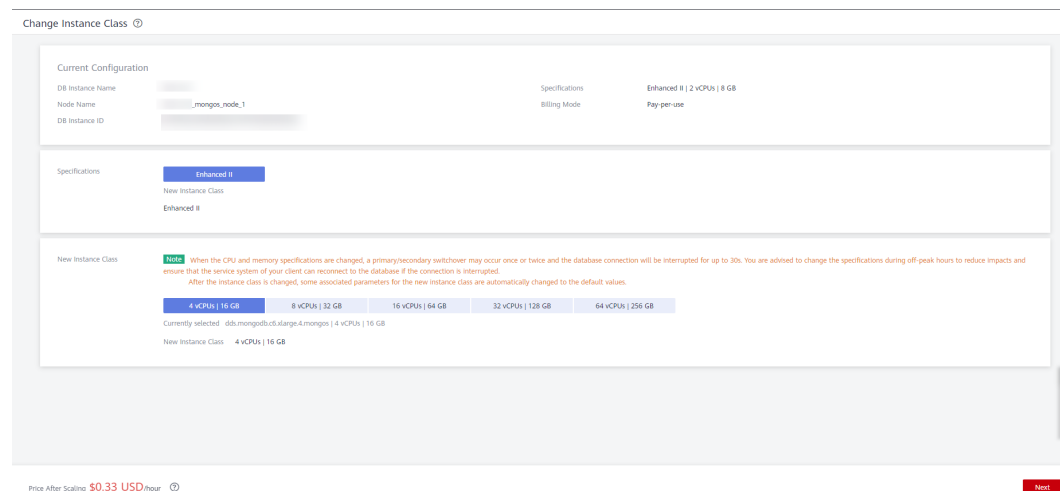
Node Information

[mongos](#) | [shard](#) | [config](#)

Name/ID	Status	Node Class	AZ	Private IP Address	EIP	Operation
dds-ce25_mongos_node_1 000e813fb5574c2f9697d6e...	 Av...	Enhanced I...	az4	192.168.18.91	 Unbou...	Change Instance Class Restart More ▾
dds-ce25_mongos_node_2 bad06d1cf2594eeb80cfb9e...	 Av...	Enhanced I...	az4	192.168.17.67	 Unbou...	Change Instance Class Restart More ▾

Step 6 On the displayed page, select the required specifications and new instance class and click **Next**.


Figure 5-16 Changing dds mongos class



Step 7 On the displayed page, confirm the instance class.

- If you need to modify your settings, click **Previous**.
- For pay-per-use instances
 - If you do not need to modify your settings, click **Submit** to change the instance class. After the specifications are changed, you are still charged on an hourly basis.
- For yearly/monthly instances
 - If you intend to scale down the instance class, click **Submit**. The refund is automatically returned to your account.
 - If you intend to scale up the instance class, click **Pay Now**. The scaling starts only after the payment is successful.

Step 8 View the results.


- When the instance class is being changed, the status displayed in the **Status** column is **Changing instance class**. This process takes about 10 minutes.
- In the upper right corner of the instance list, click  to refresh the list. The instance status changes to **Available**.
- In the **Node Information** area on the **Basic Information** page, click the **dds mongos** tab and view the new instance class.

----End

Changing shard Class

Step 1 [Log in to the management console](#).

Step 2 Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

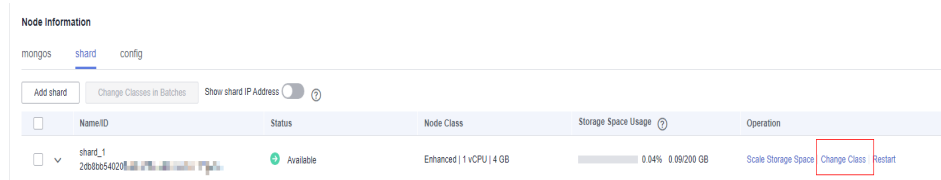
Step 3 Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

Step 4 On the **Instances** page, click the cluster instance name.

Step 5 In the **Node Information** area on the **Basic Information** page, click the **shard** tab. You can **change the class of a single shard** or **change the classes of multiple shards at a time**.

- Changing the class of a shard
 - a. In the **Operation** column of the shard node, click **Change Class**.

Figure 5-17 Changing the class of a shard

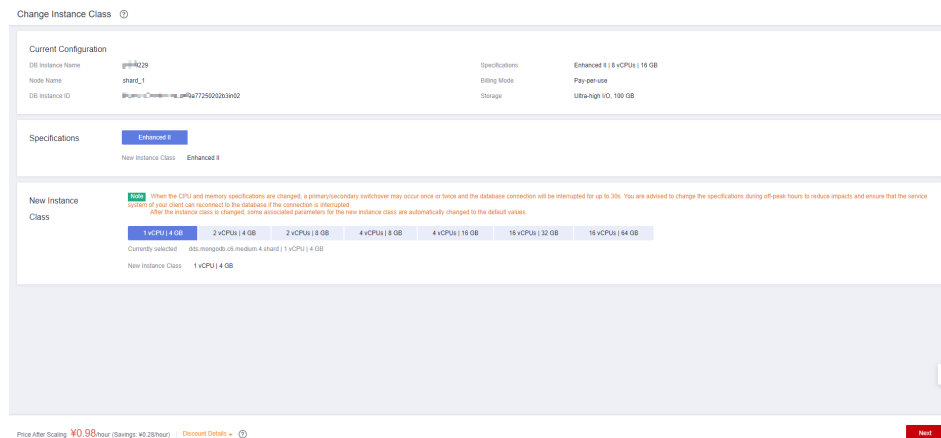


- b. On the displayed page, select the required specifications and new class and click **Next**.

NOTE

The time required depends on the number of instance nodes whose specifications are to be changed. It takes about 5 to 10 minutes for each node. When the instance class is being changed, a primary/secondary switchover may occur once or twice and the database connection will be interrupted each time for up to 30s. Before the specification change, learn about **Pre-check Items for Instance Class Change**. You are advised to change the class during off-peak hours to reduce impacts and ensure that the service system of your client can reconnect to the database if the connection is interrupted.

Figure 5-18 Changing the class of a shard



- Changing the classes of multiple shards in batches
 - a. Select Class the target shards and click **Change Classes in Batches**.

Figure 5-19 Changing the classes of multiple shards in batches

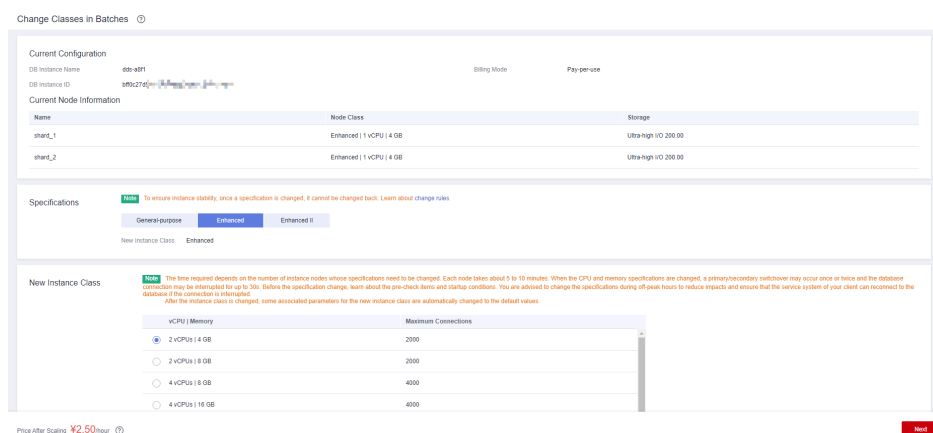


- b. On the displayed page, select the required specifications and new class and click **Next**.

 **NOTE**

The time required depends on the number of instance nodes whose class is to be changed. It takes about 5 to 10 minutes for each node. When the instance class is being changed, a primary/secondary switchover may occur once or twice and the database connection will be interrupted each time for up to 30s. Before the specification change, learn about [Pre-check Items for Instance Class Change](#). You are advised to change the class during off-peak hours to reduce impacts and ensure that the service system of your client can reconnect to the database if the connection is interrupted.

Figure 5-20 Changing the classes of multiple shards in batches



Step 6 On the displayed page, confirm the instance class.


- If you need to modify your settings, click **Previous**.
- For pay-per-use instance
 - If you do not need to modify your settings, click **Submit** to change the instance class. After the specifications are changed, you are still charged on an hourly basis.
- For yearly/monthly instance:
 - If you intend to scale down the instance class, click **Submit**. The refund is automatically returned to your account.
 - If you intend to scale up the instance class, click **Pay Now**. The scaling starts only after the payment is successful.

Step 7 View the results.

- When the instance class is being changed, the status displayed in the **Status** column is **Changing instance class**. This process takes about 25 to 30 minutes.

 **NOTE**

High database load increases the specification change duration. You are advised to change the specifications during off-peak hours to reduce impacts.

- In the upper right corner of the instance list, click  to refresh the list. The instance status changes to **Available**.


- Go to the **Basic Information** page of the cluster instance you scaled up, click the **shard** tab in the **Node Information** area, and view the new instance class.

----End

Changing config Class

Step 1 [Log in to the management console.](#)

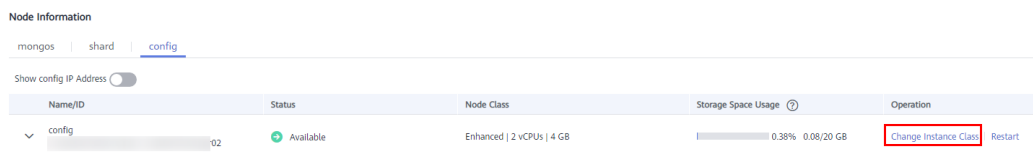
Step 2 Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

Step 3 Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

Step 4 On the **Instances** page, click the cluster instance name.

Step 5 In the **Node Information** area on the **Basic Information** page, click the **config** tab, locate the config node, and click **Change Instance Class** in the **Operation** column.

Figure 5-21 Changing config class



The screenshot shows the 'Node Information' section of a management console. It has tabs for 'mongos', 'shard', and 'config'. Below the tabs is a 'Show config IP Address' toggle. A table lists node information with columns: Name/ID, Status, Node Class, Storage Space Usage, and Operation. The 'config' node is selected, showing a status of 'Available', node class 'Enhanced | 2 vCPUs | 4 GB', and storage usage '0.38% 0.08/20 GB'. A red box highlights the 'Change Instance Class' button in the 'Operation' column.

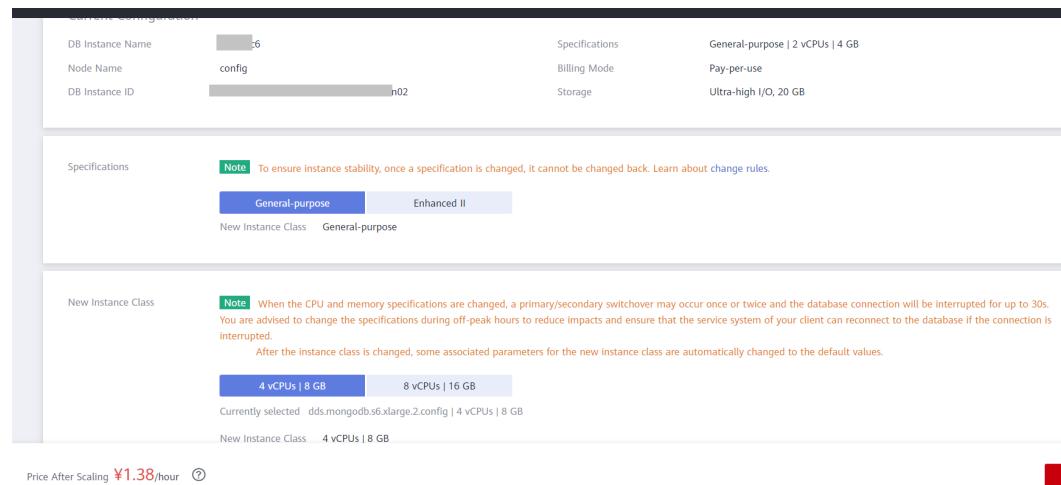
Name/ID	Status	Node Class	Storage Space Usage	Operation
config-02	Available	Enhanced 2 vCPUs 4 GB	0.38% 0.08/20 GB	Change Instance Class Restart

Step 6 On the displayed page, select the required specifications and new instance class and click **Next**.

NOTE

The time required depends on the number of instance nodes whose specifications are to be changed. It takes about 5 to 10 minutes for each node. When the instance class is being changed, a primary/secondary switchover may occur once or twice and the database connection will be interrupted each time for up to 30s. Before the specification change, learn about [Pre-check Items for Instance Class Change](#). You are advised to change the specifications during off-peak hours to reduce impacts and ensure that the service system of your client can reconnect to the database if the connection is interrupted.

Figure 5-22 Changing config class



Step 7 On the displayed page, confirm the instance class.

- If you need to modify your settings, click **Previous**.
- For pay-per-use instances
If you do not need to modify your settings, click **Submit** to change the instance class. After the specifications are changed, you are still charged on an hourly basis.
- For yearly/monthly instances
 - If you intend to scale down the instance class, click **Submit**. The refund is automatically returned to your account.
 - If you intend to scale up the instance class, click **Pay Now**. The scaling starts only after the payment is successful.

Step 8 View the results.

- When the instance class is being changed, the status displayed in the **Status** column is **Changing instance class**. This process takes about 25 to 30 minutes.

NOTE

High database load increases the specification change duration. You are advised to change the specifications during off-peak hours to reduce impacts.

- In the upper right corner of the instance list, click to refresh the list. The instance status changes to **Available**.
- Go to the **Basic Information** page of the cluster instance you scaled up, click the **config** tab in the **Node Information** area, and view the new instance class.

----End

Reference

[How Do I Solve the High CPU Usage Issue?](#)

5.8.2 Changing a Replica Set Instance Class

This section describes how to change the class of a replica set instance.

Change Rules

Considering the stability and performance of DDS DB instances, you can change the DB instance class according to the rules listed in [Table 5-3](#). Exercise caution when performing this operation.

Table 5-3 Change rules

Original Specification	Target Specification	Supported
General-purpose	General-purpose	√
	Enhanced	×
	Enhanced II	√
Enhanced	General-purpose	√
	Enhanced	×
	Enhanced II	√
Enhanced II	General-purpose	×
	Enhanced	×
	Enhanced II	√

NOTE

√ indicates that an item is supported, and × indicates that an item is not supported.

Precautions

- A DB instance cannot be deleted while its instance class is being changed.
- When the CPU or memory of a replica set instance is changed, the read replica class is not changed.
- When the instance class is being changed, a primary/secondary switchover may occur once or twice and the database connection will be interrupted each time for up to 30s. You are advised to change the class during off-peak hours to reduce impacts and ensure that the service system of your client can reconnect to the database if the connection is interrupted.
- After the class of a replica set instance is changed, the system will change the value of **net.maxIncomingConnections** accordingly.
- Changing the class does not cause data loss.
- If you forcibly change the class of an abnormal node in a DB instance, services may be interrupted.

 **NOTE**

To forcibly change the class of an abnormal node, submit a service ticket by choosing [Service Tickets > Create Service Ticket](#) in the upper right corner of the management console.

Pre-check Items for Instance Class Change

- The instance status and the status of the node whose class is to be changed are normal.
- The primary/standby replication delay does not exceed 20s.


Billing

- Instances in pay-per-use mode are still charged based on the time used after the instance class is changed.
- If you change the class of a yearly/monthly instance, you will either pay for the difference or receive a refund.
 - If the price of the new instance class is higher than that of the original instance class, you need to pay for the price difference based on the used resource period.
 - If the price of the new instance class is lower than that of the original instance class, you will be refunded the difference based on the used resource period. The refund will be sent to your account. You can click **Billing Center** in the upper right corner of the console to view your account balance.
- For details, see [Product Pricing Details](#).

Changing the Class of a Replica Set Instance







Step 1 [Log in to the management console](#).

Step 2 Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

Step 3 Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

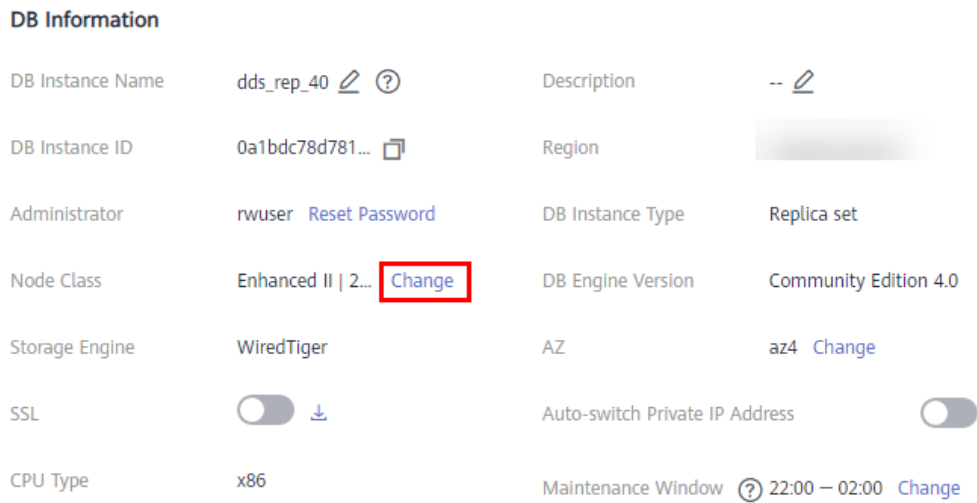
Step 4 On the **Instances** page, locate the replica set instance and choose **More > Change Instance Class** in the **Operation** column.

Figure 5-23 Changing the class of a replica set instance

<input type="checkbox"/>	Name/ID 	D...	DB Instance T...	D...	St...	Status 	Bl...	Address	Operation
<input type="checkbox"/>	dds_rep_40 0a1bdc78d7814cdc8e7a6...		Replica Sets	C...	W...	 Available	Pay Cr...	mongodb://rwuser:<pa...	Log In View Metric More 
<input type="checkbox"/>	dds_single_40 600e0aba9e814af7ac1a4...		Single Nodes	C...	W...	 Available	Pay Cr...	mongodb://rwuser:<pa...	Log In
<input type="checkbox"/>	dds-ce25 d57cfbf346854b88bee14...		Clusters	C...	W...	 Available	Pay Cr...	mongodb://rwuser:<pa...	Log In

Alternatively, on the **Instances** page, click the name of the replica set instance. In the **DB Information** area on the **Basic Information** page, click **Change** to the right of the **Node Class** field.

Figure 5-24 Changing the class of a replica set instance

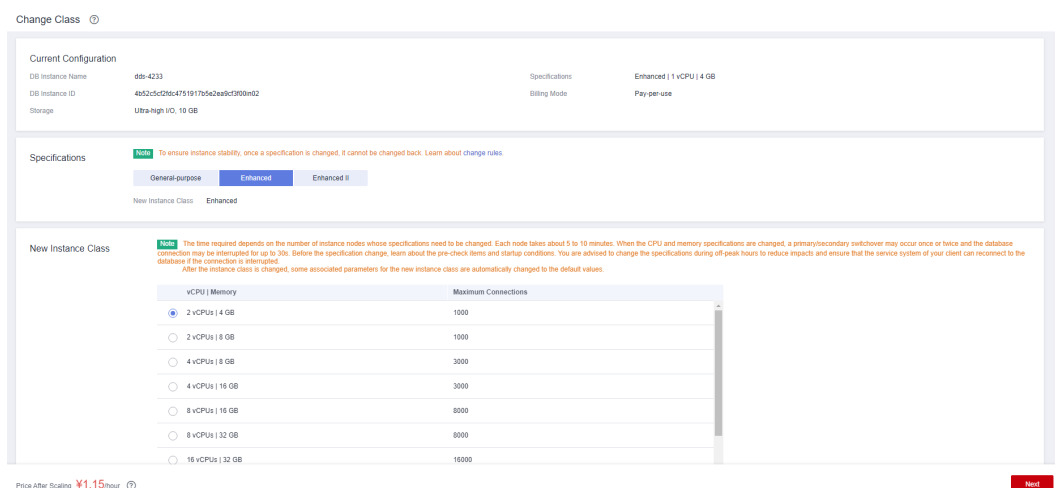


Step 5 On the displayed page, select the required specifications and new instance class and click **Next**.

NOTE

The time required depends on the number of instance nodes whose class is to be changed. It takes about 5 to 10 minutes for each node. When the instance class is being changed, a primary/secondary switchover may occur once or twice and the database connection will be interrupted each time for up to 30s. Before the class change, learn about [Pre-check Items for Instance Class Change](#). You are advised to change the class during off-peak hours to reduce impacts and ensure that the service system of your client can reconnect to the database if the connection is interrupted.

Figure 5-25 Changing the class of a replica set instance



Step 6 On the displayed page, confirm the instance class.

- If you need to modify your settings, click **Previous**.
- For pay-per-use instances

If you do not need to modify your settings, click **Submit** to change the instance class. After the class is changed, you are still charged on an hourly basis.


- For yearly/monthly instances
 - If you intend to scale down the instance class, click **Submit**. The refund is automatically returned to your account.
 - If you intend to scale up the DB instance class, click **Pay Now**. The scaling starts only after the payment is successful.

Step 7 View the results.

- When the instance class is being changed, the status displayed in the **Status** column is **Changing instance class**. This process takes about 25 to 30 minutes.

 **NOTE**

High database load increases the class change duration. You are advised to change the class during off-peak hours to reduce impacts.

- In the upper right corner of the instance list, click  to refresh the list. The instance status changes to **Available**.
- Go to the **Basic Information** page of the replica set instance you scaled up and check whether the scaling up is successful in the **DB Information** area.

----End


Changing the Class of a Read Replica

 **NOTE**

Only whitelisted users can change the class of a read replica. You need to submit a service ticket to apply for this function. In the upper right corner of the management console, choose **Service Tickets > Create Service Ticket** to submit a service ticket.

Step 1 [Log in to the management console](#).

Step 2 Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

Step 3 Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

Step 4 On the **Instances** page, locate the target replica set instance and click its name.

Step 5 In the **Node Information** area on the **Basic Information** page, click the **Read replicas** tab. Locate the read replica whose class you want to change, and click **Change Instance Class** in the **Operation** column.

Figure 5-26 Changing the class of a read replica



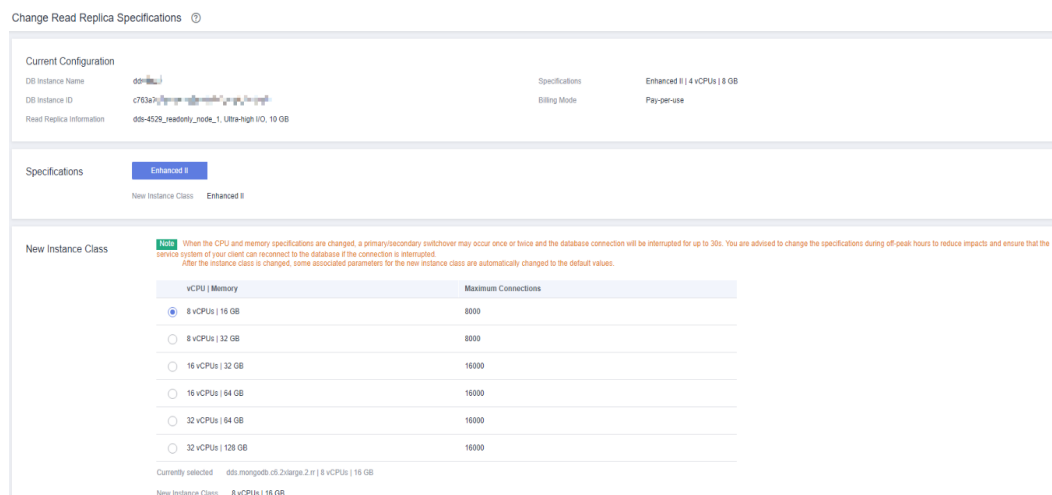
NameID	Role	Status	Node Class	AZ	Private IP Address	Private Domain Name	Storage Space Usage...	Operation
d8s-4529_... b3aaa7a6cc2d479699...	Readonly	Available	Enhanced II [...]	az1	192.168... ...	b3aaa7a6cc2d479699...	3.9...	Scale Storage Space Change Instance Class More

Step 6 On the displayed page, select the required specifications and new class and click **Next**.

 NOTE

When the class of a read replica is being changed, there is a possibility that database access requests using the read replica fail. Before the class change, learn about [Pre-check Items for Instance Class Change](#). You are advised to change the class during off-peak hours to reduce impacts and ensure that the service system of your client can reconnect to the database if the connection is interrupted.


Figure 5-27 Changing the class of a read replica



Step 7 On the displayed page, confirm the class.

- If you need to modify your settings, click **Previous**.
- For pay-per-use instances
 - If you do not need to modify your settings, click **Submit** to change the class. After the class is changed, you are still charged on an hourly basis.
- For yearly/monthly instances
 - If you intend to scale down the class, click **Submit**. The refund is automatically returned to your account.
 - If you intend to scale up the class, click **Pay Now**. The scaling starts only after the payment is successful.

Step 8 View the results.

- When the class is being changed, the status displayed in the **Status** column is **Changing instance class**. This process takes about 25 to 30 minutes.
- In the upper right corner of the instance list, click  to refresh the list. The instance status changes to **Available**.
- In the **Node Information** area on the **Basic Information** page, click the **Read replicas** tab. Locate the target read replica to view the new class.

----End

Reference

[How Do I Solve the High CPU Usage Issue?](#)

5.8.3 Changing a Single Node Instance Class

This section describes how to change the class of your single node instance.

Change Rules

Considering the stability and performance of DDS DB instances, you can change the DB instance class according to the rules listed in [Table 5-4](#). Exercise caution when performing this operation.

Table 5-4 Change rules

Original Specification	Target Specification	Supported
General-purpose	General-purpose	√
	Enhanced	×
	Enhanced II	√
Enhanced	General-purpose	√
	Enhanced	×
	Enhanced II	√
Enhanced II	General-purpose	×
	Enhanced	×
	Enhanced II	√

 **NOTE**

√ indicates that an item is supported, and × indicates that an item is not supported.

Precautions

- An instance cannot be deleted while its instance class is being changed.
- When the instance class is being changed, the database connection will be interrupted for 5 to 10 minutes. You are advised to change the class during off-peak hours to reduce impacts and ensure that the service system of your client can reconnect to the database if the connection is interrupted. After the restart is complete, the cached memory will be automatically cleared. The instance needs to be warmed up to prevent congestion during peak hours.
- After the class of a single node instance is changed, the system will change the value of **net.maxIncomingConnections** accordingly.
- Changing the class does not cause data loss.
- If you forcibly change the class of an abnormal node in a DB instance, services may be interrupted.

 **NOTE**

To forcibly change the class of an abnormal node, submit a service ticket by choosing [Service Tickets > Create Service Ticket](#) in the upper right corner of the management console.

Pre-check Items for Instance Class Change

- The DB instance is in the **Available** status.


Billing

- Instances billed on a pay-per-use basis are still billed based on the time used after the instance class is changed.
- If you change the class of a yearly/monthly instance, you will either pay for the difference or receive a refund.
 - If the price of the new instance class is higher than that of the original instance class, you need to pay for the price difference based on the used resource period.
 - If the price of the new instance class is lower than that of the original instance class, you will be refunded the difference based on the used resource period. The refund will be sent to your account. You can click **Billing Center** in the upper right corner of the console to view your account balance.
- For details, see [Product Pricing Details](#).

Procedure












Step 1 [Log in to the management console](#).

Step 2 Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

Step 3 Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

Step 4 On the **Instances** page, locate the single node instance and choose **More > Change Instance Class** in the **Operation** column.

Figure 5-28 Change Instance Class

<input type="checkbox"/>	Name/ID 	Desc...	DB Instance ...	DB E...	Stora...	Status 	Billin...	Address	Operation
<input type="checkbox"/>	dds_rep_40 0a1bdc78d7814cdc8e7a64128...	--	Replica Sets	Com...	Wire...	 Available	Pay-pe Creat...	mongodb://rwuser:<passw...	Log In View Metric More 
<input type="checkbox"/>	dds_single_40 600e0aba9e814af7ac1a46a08...		Single Nodes	Com...	Wire...	 Available	Pay-pe Creat...	mongodb://rwuser:<passw...	Log In View Metric More 
<input type="checkbox"/>	dds-ce25 d57cfbf346854b88bee14dffe6...	--	Clusters	Com...	Wire...	 Available	Pay-pe Creat...	mongodb://rwuser:<passw...	Log In View Metric More 
<input type="checkbox"/>	dds-8ec6 7b4227a9c053420ab03ae934...	--	Clusters	Com...	Wire...	 Available	Pay-pe Creat...	mongodb://rwuser:<passw...	Log In View Metric More 

Change to Yearly/Monthly
Scale Storage Space
Change Instance Class

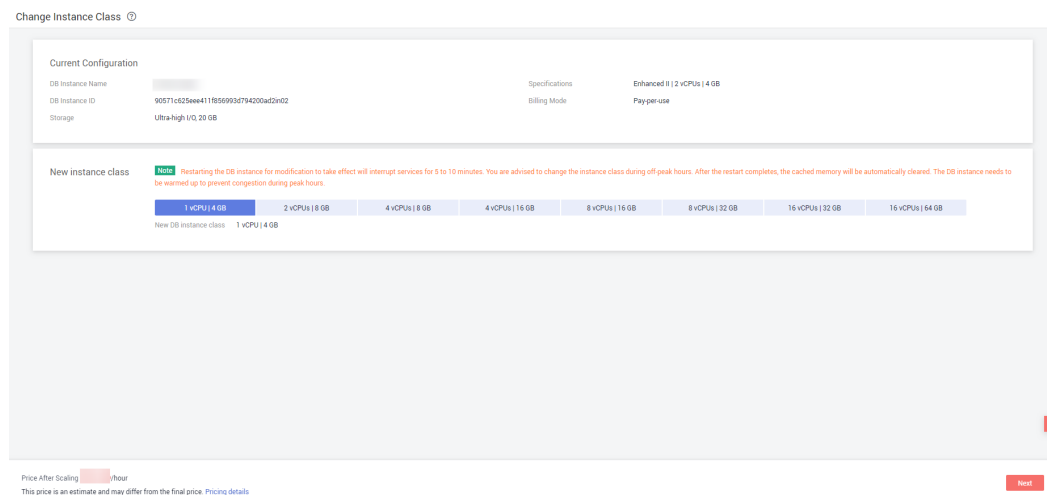
Alternatively, on the **Instances** page, click the name of the single node instance. In the **DB Information** area on the **Basic Information** page, click **Change** to the right of the **Node Class** field.

Figure 5-29 Change Instance Class

DB Information			
DB Instance Name	dds_single_40 🔗 ?	Description	-- 🔗
DB Instance ID	600e0aba9e814af7ac1a... 📄	Region	
Administrator	rwuser Reset Password	DB Instance Type	Single node
Node Class	Enhanced II 2 vCPUs ... Change	DB Engine Version	Community Edition 4.0
Storage Engine	WiredTiger	AZ	az4
SSL	<input type="checkbox"/> ↓	CPU Type	x86
		Maintenance Window	? 22:00 – 02:00 Change

Step 5 On the displayed page, modify required parameters and click **Next**.

Figure 5-30 Change Instance Class



Step 6 On the displayed page, confirm the instance class.


- If you need to modify your settings, click **Previous**.
- For pay-per-use instances
 - If you do not need to modify your settings, click **Submit** to change the instance class. After the specifications are changed, you are still charged on an hourly basis.
- For yearly/monthly instances
 - If you intend to scale down the instance class, click **Submit**. The refund is automatically returned to your account.
 - If you intend to scale up the instance class, click **Pay Now**. The scaling starts only after the payment is successful.

Step 7 View the results.

- When the instance class is being changed, the status displayed in the **Status** column is **Changing instance class**. This process takes about 10 minutes.

 **NOTE**

High database load increases the specification change duration. You are advised to change the specifications during off-peak hours to reduce impacts.

- In the upper right corner of the instance list, click  to refresh the list. The instance status changes to **Available**.
- Go to the **Basic Information** page of the single node you scaled up and check whether the scaling process is successful in the **Configuration** area.

----End

Reference

[How Do I Solve the High CPU Usage Issue?](#)

5.9 Changing Cluster Instance Nodes

5.9.1 Adding Cluster Instance Nodes

As service data increases, the number of current database nodes cannot meet the service requirements. In this case, you can add more nodes to the instance.

Precautions

- To add nodes, instance status must be **Available**, **Deleting backup**, or **Checking restoration**.
- Nodes cannot be added to a DB instance that is being backed up.
- A DB instance cannot be deleted while nodes are being added.
- An instance node can be added within 5 minutes. The time required depends on the number of nodes to be added.
- Adding nodes does not affect cluster services.
- When adding a shard node for a cluster DB instance, ensure that the node class is greater than or equal to the highest class of a shard in the instance.


Pricing Details

- A pay-per-use instance is still billed on an hourly basis after new nodes are added.
- If you add nodes to a yearly/monthly instance, you will pay price difference or get a refund.
- For details, see [Product Pricing Details](#).

Adding dds mongos Nodes

Step 1 [Log in to the management console](#).

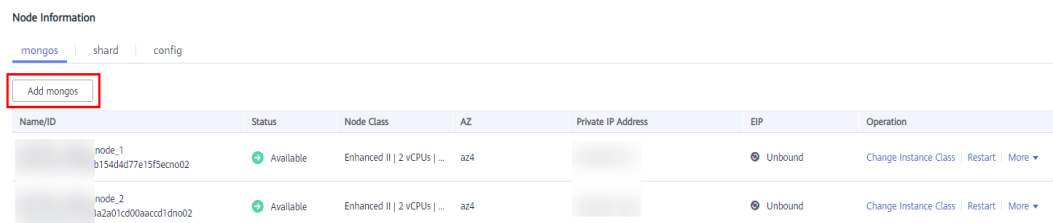
Step 2 Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

Step 3 Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

Step 4 On the **Instances** page, click the cluster instance name.

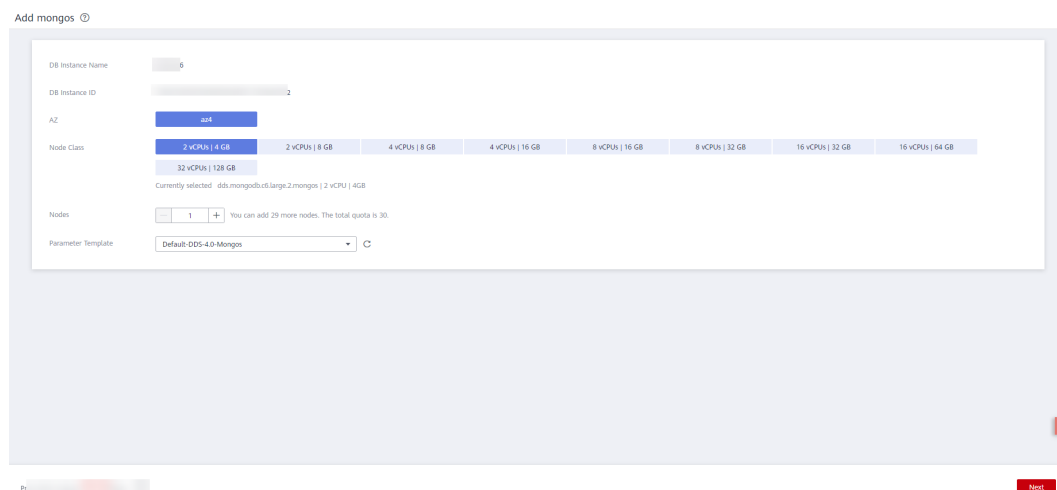
Step 5 On the **dds mongos** tab in the **Node Information** area, click **Add dds mongos**.

Figure 5-31 Node information



Step 6 On the displayed page, specify **Node Class**, **Nodes**, and **Parameter Template** and click **Next**.

Figure 5-32 Adding dds mongos nodes




A Community Edition cluster instance supports up to 32 dds mongos nodes.

Step 7 On the displayed page, confirm the node configuration information.

- Yearly/Monthly
 - If you need to modify your settings, click **Previous** to go back to the page for you to specify details.
 - If you do not need to modify your settings, click **Submit** to go to the payment page and complete the payment.
- Pay-per-use
 - If you need to modify your settings, click **Previous** to go back to the page for you to specify details.
 - If you do not need to modify your settings, click **Submit** to add the nodes.


Step 8 View the results.


- This process takes about 10 to 15 minutes. During that time, the status of the DB instance in the instance list is **Adding node**.
- In the upper right corner of the DB instance list, click  to refresh the list. The instance status changes to **Available**.
- On the **dds mongos** tab in the **Node Information** area, view the information about the node you added.
- If the dds mongos nodes fail to be added, you can revert them in batches or delete them one by one. For details, see section [Reverting Cluster Instance Nodes](#).

----End

Adding shard Nodes

Step 1 [Log in to the management console](#).

Step 2 Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

Step 3 Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.


Step 4 On the **Instance Management** page, click the target cluster instance.



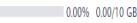

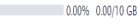
Step 5 On the **shard** tab in the **Node Information** area, click **Add shard**.

Figure 5-33 Node information

Node Information

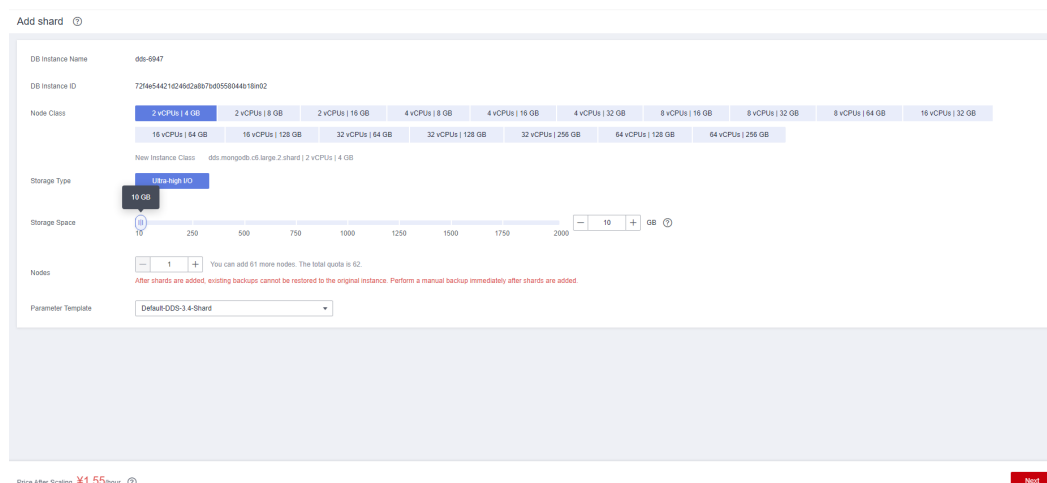
mongos | **shard** | config

Add shard Show shard IP Address 

Name/ID	Status	Node Class	Storage Space Usage 	Operation
82dfb044bcbcd2gr02	 Available	Enhanced II 2 vCPUs 4 GB	 0.00% 0.00/10 GB	Scale Storage Space Change Instance Class Restart
7563ce57f977gr02	 Available	Enhanced II 2 vCPUs 4 GB	 0.00% 0.00/10 GB	Scale Storage Space Change Instance Class Restart

Step 6 Specify **Node Class**, **Storage Space**, **Nodes**, and **Parameter Template** and click **Next**.

Figure 5-34 Adding shard nodes




- The storage space you applied for will include the system overhead required for inode, reserved block, and database operation. The storage space must be a multiple of 10.
- A Community Edition cluster instance supports up to 32 shard nodes.

Step 7 On the displayed page, confirm the node configuration information.

- Yearly/Monthly
 - If you need to modify your settings, click **Previous** to go back to the page for you to specify details.
 - If you do not need to modify your settings, click **Submit** to go to the payment page and complete the payment.
- Pay-per-use
 - If you need to modify your settings, click **Previous** to go back to the page for you to specify details.
 - If you do not need to modify your settings, click **Submit** to add the nodes.

Step 8 View the results.

- This process takes about 10 to 15 minutes. The status of the DB instance in the instance list is **Adding node**.
- In the upper right corner of the DB instance list, click  to refresh the list. The instance status changes to **Available**.
- On the **shard** tab in the **Node Information** area, view the information about the node you added.
- If shard addition fails, you can roll back the operation in batches or delete shards one by one. For details, see [Reverting Cluster Instance Nodes](#).

----End

5.9.2 Adding Read Replicas to a Cluster Instance

Read replicas are used to enhance read capabilities and reduce the read pressure on primary nodes. After a DDS cluster instance is created, you can create read replicas based on service requirements.

Constraints

- You can add nodes only when your account balance is greater than or equal to \$0 USD. To use this function, contact customer service to apply for the required permission.
- The cluster instance version must be 3.4.
- Nodes cannot be added to an instance that is being backed up.
- An instance cannot be deleted when one or more nodes are being added.
- The synchronization delay cannot be set. The default value is 0.


Precautions

- A maximum of five read replicas can be added to a shard node.
- You can add read replicas to only one shard at a time.

Procedure

Step 1 [Log in to the management console.](#)

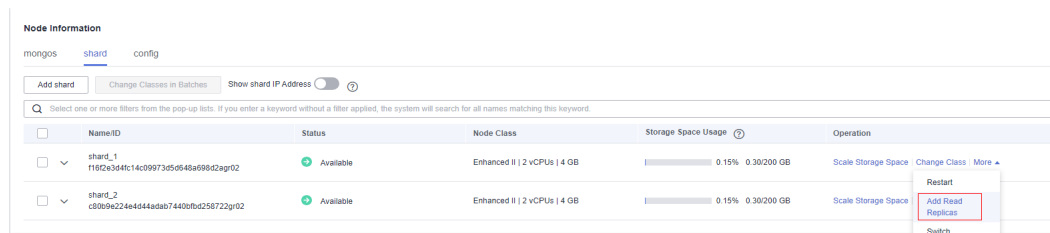
Step 2 Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

Step 3 Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

Step 4 On the **Instances** page, click the cluster instance name.

Step 5 In the **Node Information** area on the **Basic Information** page, click the **shard** tab, locate a target shard node, and choose **More > Add Read Replicas** in the **Operation** column.

Figure 5-35 Node information



NameID	Status	Node Class	Storage Space Usage	Operation
shard_1 f192a344c14c99973d5d548a698d2agr02	Available	Enhanced II 2 vCPUs 4 GB	0.15% 0.30/200 GB	Scale Storage Space Change Class More
shard_2 c80b9e224e444adab7440bf0258722gr02	Available	Enhanced II 2 vCPUs 4 GB	0.15% 0.30/200 GB	Scale Storage Space Add Read Replicas Switch

Step 6 On the displayed page, specify **Node Class**, **Nodes**, and **Parameter Template** and click **Next**.

Figure 5-36 Adding read replicas

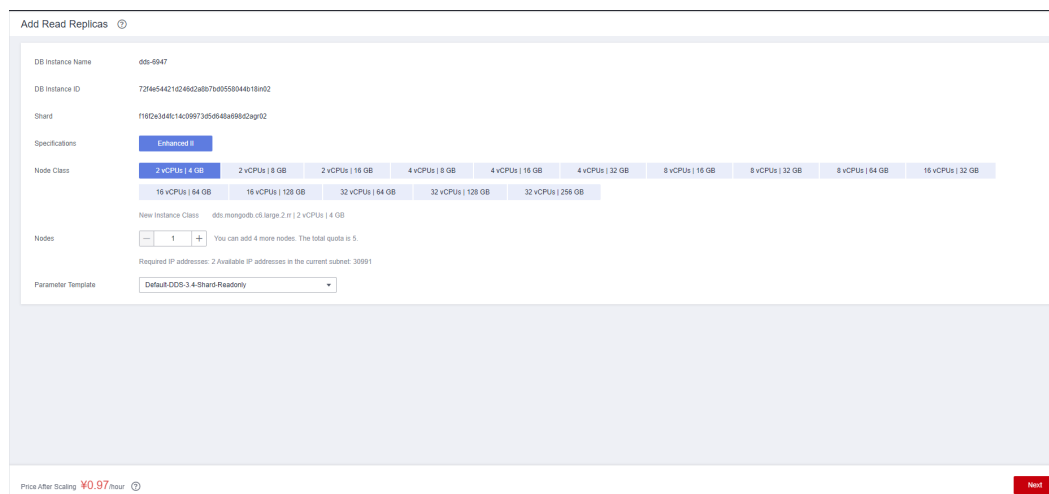


Table 5-5 Parameter description

Parameter	Description
Read Replica Parameter Template	<p>The parameters that apply to the read replicas of a cluster instance. After a node are created, you can change the parameter template of the node to bring out the best performance.</p> <p>NOTE Only whitelisted users can use this function. You need to submit a service ticket to apply for this function. In the upper right corner of the management console, choose Service Tickets > Create Service Ticket to submit a service ticket.</p>

Step 7 On the displayed page, confirm the node configuration information.

- If you need to modify your settings, click **Previous** to go back to the page for you to specify details.
- If you do not need to modify your settings, click **Submit** to add nodes.

Step 8 View the results.

- When nodes are added, the status of the instance is **Adding read replicas**. The entire process takes about 15 minutes.
- In the **Node Information** area, view the information about the nodes you added.
- Choose **More > View Delay** in the **Operation** column to view the delay of the current node.


-----End


5.9.3 Reverting Cluster Instance Nodes

This section describes how to roll back a failed node addition.

Reverting Nodes in Batches

Step 1 [Log in to the management console.](#)

Step 2 Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

Step 3 Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service.**

Step 4 On the **Instances** page, locate the cluster instance to which nodes fail to be added and choose **More > Revert** in the **Operation** column.

Step 5 In the displayed dialog box, click **Yes.**


During the rollback, the instance status is **Deleting node.** This process takes about 1 to 3 minutes.

----End

Deleting a Single Node

Step 1 [Log in to the management console.](#)

Step 2 Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

Step 3 Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service.**

Step 4 On the **Instances** page, click the cluster instance to which the node fails to be added.

Step 5 In the **Node Information** area on the **Basic Information** tab, click the **dds mongos** or **shard** tab, locate the dds mongos node, shard node, or read replica that fails to be added, and click **Delete.**

Step 6 In the displayed dialog box, click **Yes.**

During deletion, the node status is **Deleting node.** This process takes about 1 to 3 minutes.

----End

5.10 Changing Replica Set Instance Nodes

5.10.1 Adding Replica Set Instance Nodes

DDS allows you to scale out a three-node replica set instance to up to five or even seven nodes. All newly added nodes are secondary nodes and support primary/secondary switchovers, improving data reliability.

NOTE

Only whitelisted users can use this function. You need to submit a service ticket to apply for this function. In the upper right corner of the management console, choose [Service Tickets > Create Service Ticket](#) to submit a service ticket.

Precautions


- To add nodes, instance status must be **Available**, **Deleting backup**, or **Checking restoration**.
- A DB instance cannot be deleted while nodes are being added.
- If there are any newly added standby nodes, they will be unable to participate in this switchover. When you add a new standby node, the HA connection address needs to be reconfigured, and the new node is frozen for 12 hours.
- When an instance node is being added, the DB instance may be intermittently disconnected once or twice for up to 30s each time.
- Nodes cannot be manually deleted.


Pricing Details

- A pay-per-use instance is still billed on an hourly basis after new nodes are added.
- If you add nodes to a yearly/monthly instance, you will pay price difference or get a refund.
- For details, see [Product Pricing Details](#).

Procedure

Step 1 [Log in to the management console](#).

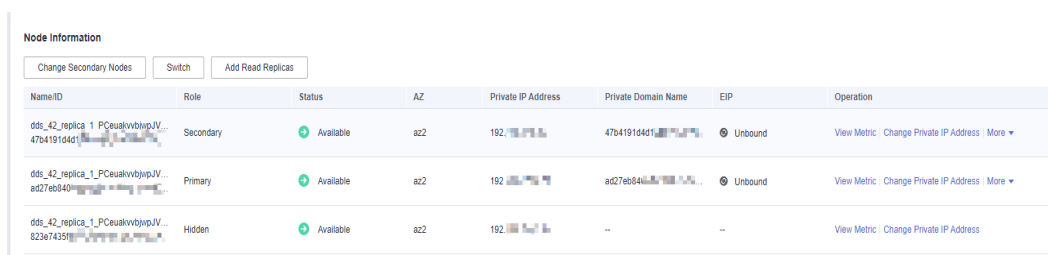
Step 2 Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

Step 3 Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

Step 4 On the **Instances** page, click the replica set instance name.

Step 5 In the **Node Information** area on the **Basic Information** page, click **Change Secondary Nodes**.

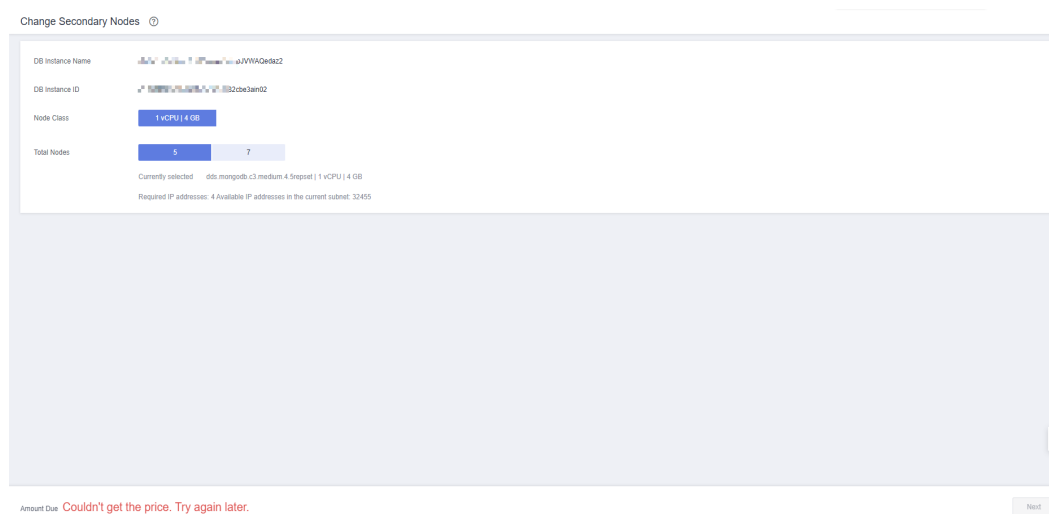
Figure 5-37 Basic information



NameID	Role	Status	AZ	Private IP Address	Private Domain Name	EIP	Operation
dds_42_replica_1_PCeuskvwbjnpJV... 47b4191d4d1	Secondary	Available	az2	192.168.1.1	47b4191d441	Unbound	View Metric Change Private IP Address More
dds_42_replica_1_PCeuskvwbjnpJV... ad27eb840	Primary	Available	az2	192.168.1.2	ad27eb840	Unbound	View Metric Change Private IP Address More
dds_42_replica_1_PCeuskvwbjnpJV... 823e7435f	Hidden	Available	az2	192.168.1.3	--	--	View Metric Change Private IP Address

Step 6 Specify **Total Nodes** and click **Next**.

Figure 5-38 Selecting the number of nodes



You can add five or seven nodes.

Step 7 On the displayed page, confirm the node configuration information.

- For yearly/monthly DB instances
 - If you need to modify your settings, click **Previous** to go back to the page for you to specify details.
 - If you do not need to modify your settings, click **Submit** to go to the payment page and complete the payment.
- For pay-per-use DB instances
 - If you need to modify your settings, click **Previous** to go back to the page for you to specify details.
 - If you do not need to modify your settings, click **Submit** to add the nodes.

Step 8 View the result of adding nodes.

- When a node is being added, the status of the instance is **Adding node**. The entire process takes about 15 minutes.
- In the **Node Information** area, view the information about the nodes you added.

Figure 5-39 Node information

Node Information								
Change Secondary Nodes		Switch	Add Read Replicas					
NameID	Role	Status	AZ	Private IP Address	Private Domain Name	EIP	Operation	
dds_42_replica_1_PCeuskvbyjwJV... 47b4191d4d1	Secondary	Available	az2	192.168.1.1	47b4191d4d1	Unbound	View Metric Change Private IP Address More ▾	
dds_42_replica_1_PCeuskvbyjwJV... ad27eb840	Primary	Available	az2	192.168.1.2	ad27eb840	Unbound	View Metric Change Private IP Address More ▾	
dds_42_replica_1_PCeuskvbyjwJV... 823e7435f	Hidden	Available	az2	192.168.1.3	-	-	View Metric Change Private IP Address	

----End

5.10.2 Adding Read Replicas to a Replica Set Instance

Read replicas enhance read capabilities and reduce load on your instances. After a DDS replica set instance is created, you can create read replicas based on service requirements. To connect to a read replica, see [Connecting to a Read Replica Using Mongo Shell](#).

Constraints

- To use this function, contact customer service to apply for the required permission.
- The version of a replica set instance must be 3.4, 4.0, or 4.2.
- Nodes cannot be added to an instance that is being backed up.
- An instance cannot be deleted when one or more nodes are being added.


Precautions

- A maximum of five read replicas can be added to a replica set instance.

Procedure

Step 1 [Log in to the management console](#).

Step 2 Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

Step 3 Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

Step 4 On the **Instances** page, click the replica set instance.

Step 5 In the **Node Information** area on the **Basic Information** page, click **Add Read Replicas**.

Figure 5-40 Creating read replicas



Step 6 On the **Add Read Replicas** page, specify **Specifications**, **Node Class**, **Nodes**, **Parameter Template**, and **Delay**, and click **Next**.

Figure 5-41 Creating read replicas

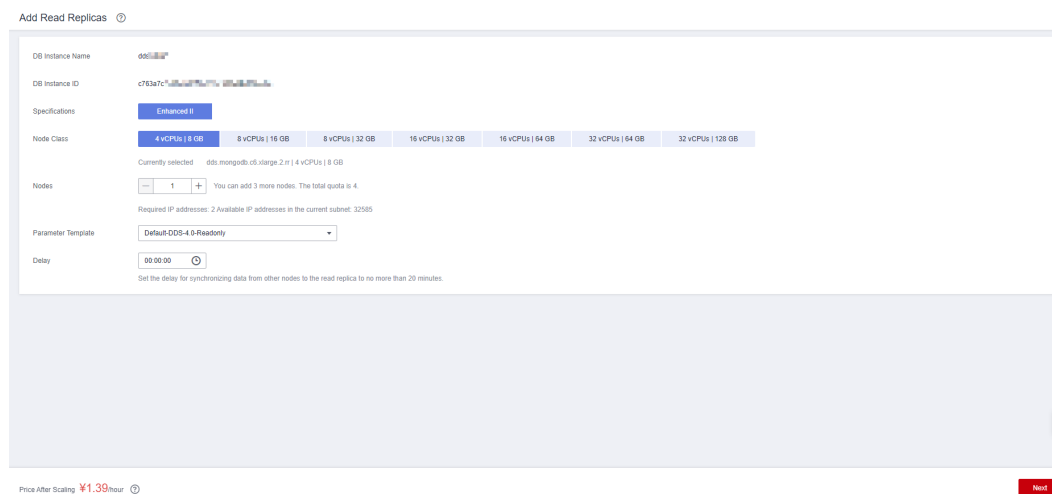


Table 5-6 Parameter description

Parameter	Description
Read Replica Parameter Template	<p>The parameters that apply to the read replicas of a replica set instance. After a node are created, you can change the parameter template of the node to bring out the best performance.</p> <p>NOTE Only whitelisted users can use this function. You need to submit a service ticket to apply for this function. In the upper right corner of the management console, choose Service Tickets > Create Service Ticket to submit a service ticket.</p>

Step 7 On the displayed page, confirm the node configuration information.

- If you need to modify your settings, click **Previous** to go back to the page for you to specify details.
- If you do not need to modify your settings, click **Submit** to add nodes.

Step 8 View the results.

- When nodes are added, the status of the instance is **Adding read replicas**. The entire process takes about 15 minutes.
- In the **Node Information** area, view the information about the nodes you added.
- Choose **More** > **View Delay** in the **Operation** column to view the delay of the current node.

----End

5.10.3 Manually Switching the Primary and Secondary Nodes of a Replica Set

A replica set consists of the primary node, secondary node, and hidden node. Primary and secondary nodes allow access from external services by providing IP

addresses. Hidden nodes are only used for backing up data. When a primary node becomes faulty, the system automatically selects a new primary node to ensure high availability. DDS supports primary/secondary switchovers for scenarios such as disaster recovery.


Precautions

- To perform a switchover, the instance status needs to be **Available**, **Changing to yearly/monthly**, and **Changing a security group**.
- The database connection may be interrupted during the switchover. Ensure that your client supports reconnection.
- If there are any newly added standby nodes, they will be unable to participate in this switchover. When you add a new standby node, the HA connection address needs to be reconfigured, and the new node is frozen for 12 hours.
- A primary/secondary switchover can be performed only when the DB instance is available.
- The longer the delay for primary/secondary synchronization, the more time is needed for a primary/secondary switchover. If the primary to secondary synchronization delay exceeds 300s, primary/secondary switchover is not supported. For details about the synchronization delay, see [What Is the Time Delay for Primary/Secondary Synchronization in a Replica Set?](#)

Performing a Primary/Secondary Switchover

Step 1 [Log in to the management console](#).

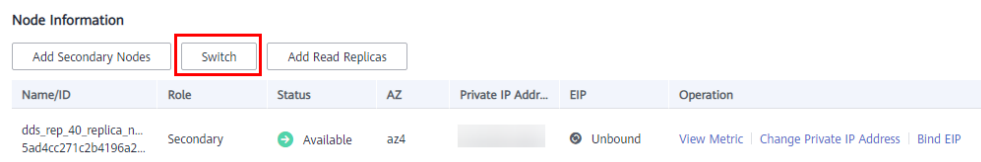
Step 2 Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

Step 3 Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

Step 4 On the **Instances** page, click the replica set instance.

Step 5 In the **Node Information** area on the **Basic Information** page, click **Switch**.

Figure 5-42 Primary/Secondary switchover



Step 6 In the displayed dialog box, click **Yes**.

Step 7 Check the result.

- During the switchover process, the DB instance status changes to **Switchover in progress**. After the switchover is complete, the status is restored to **Available**.
- In the **Node Information** area, you can view the switchover result.


- After the switchover, the previous primary node becomes the secondary node. You need to reconnect to the primary node. For details, see [Connecting to a DB Instance](#).

----End

Forcibly Promoting a Secondary Node to the Primary

Step 1 Log in to the management console.


Step 2 Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

Step 3 Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

Step 4 On the **Instances** page, locate the target replica set instance and click its name.

Step 5 In the **Node Information** area on the **Basic Information** page, locate a target node whose role is **Secondary** and click **Promote to Primary** in the **Operation** column.

Figure 5-43 Promote to Primary




Name/ID	Role	Status	AZ	Private IP Address	Private Domain Name	EIP	Operation
dds-f783_replica_node_1 8270a78074c848054027ab5000b4...	Secondary	Available	az1	192.168.167.116	8376a78b74cb4805462e...	Unbound	Restart View Metric More
dds-f783_replica_node_2 060217396a8f41c0839971a0e886...	Primary	Available	az1	192.168.160.242	060217396a8f41c083997...	Unbound	View Change Private IP Address Change Private Domain Name Bind EIP Private IP Address
dds-f783_replica_node_3 5243a320c0a046b980a431852e4...	Hidden	Available	az1	192.168.185.150	--	--	Restart
dds-f783_replica_node_4 0600c541714491795490f0c543841f0...	Secondary	Available	az1	192.168.242.240	0600c541714491795490f...	Unbound	Restart Promote to Primary

Step 6 In the displayed dialog box, click **Yes**.

Figure 5-44 Forcibly promoting a secondary node to the primary

Forcibly Promote This Secondary Node to Primary?

Services may be interrupted for one minute during the switchover. Ensure that your client supports reconnection. The primary/secondary switchover may fail due to force majeure. Do not forcibly promote a secondary node to the primary unless the primary node is abnormal.

Node Name	Status
dds-f783_replica_node_1	 Available

Yes No

Step 7 Check the result.

- In the **Node Information** area on the **Basic Information** page, you can view the result.

----End

5.10.4 Deleting Replica Set Instance Nodes

You can delete nodes that are no longer used to release resources.

NOTE

Only whitelisted users can use this function. You need to submit a service ticket to apply for this function. In the upper right corner of the management console, choose [Service Tickets](#) > [Create Service Ticket](#) to submit a service ticket.

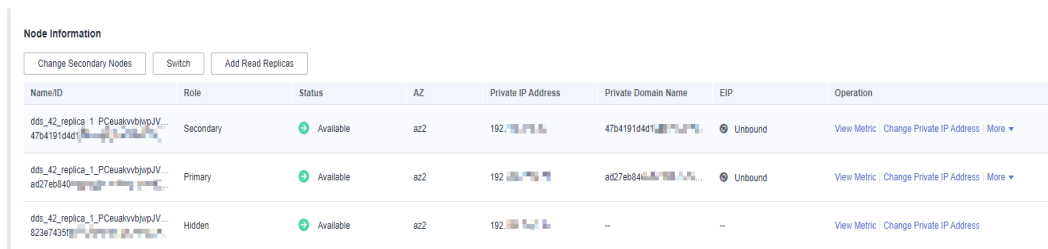
Precautions

- Deleted nodes cannot be recovered. Exercise caution when performing this operation.
- If you enable operation protection, two-factor authentication is required for sensitive operations to secure your account and cloud products. For details about how to enable operation protection, see *Identity and Access Management User Guide*.
- Nodes cannot be deleted from instances that have abnormal nodes.

Procedure

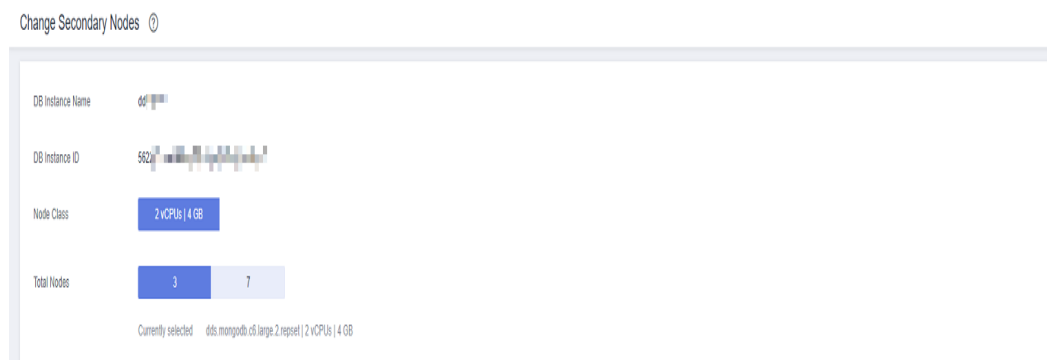
- Step 1** Log in to the console.
- Step 2** In the service list, choose **Databases** > **Document Database Service**.
- Step 3** On the **Instances** page, locate a target DB instance and click its name.
- Step 4** In the **Node Information** area on the **Basic Information** page, click **Change Secondary Nodes**.

Figure 5-45 Node information



NameID	Role	Status	AZ	Private IP Address	Private Domain Name	EIP	Operation
dds_42_replica_1_PCeasakvvbyvJV... 47b4191d4d1	Secondary	Available	az2	192.168.1.1	47b419164d1	Unbound	View Metric Change Private IP Address More
dds_42_replica_1_PCeasakvvbyvJV... ad27eb840	Primary	Available	az2	192.168.1.2	ad27eb840	Unbound	View Metric Change Private IP Address More
dds_42_replica_1_PCeasakvvbyvJV... 823e7435f	Hidden	Available	az2	192.168.1.3	--	--	View Metric Change Private IP Address

- Step 5** Specify **Total Nodes** and click **Next**.

Figure 5-46 Selecting the number of nodes**NOTE**

When you delete nodes, the number of selected nodes should be less than the number of current nodes. For example, if the number of current instance nodes is 5, select **3** when deleting nodes.

Step 6 Click **Submit**.

Step 7 If you have enabled operation protection, click **Start Verification** in the **Delete Node** dialog box. On the displayed page, click **Send Code**, enter the verification code, and click **Verify**. The page is closed automatically.

----End

5.10.5 Deleting Read Replicas from a Replica Set Instance

You can delete read replicas that are no longer used to release resources.

NOTE

Only whitelisted users can use this function. You need to submit a service ticket to apply for this function. In the upper right corner of the management console, choose [Service Tickets](#) > [Create Service Ticket](#) to submit a service ticket.

Precautions

- Deleted read replicas cannot be restored. Exercise caution when performing this operation.
- If you have enabled operation protection, two-factor authentication is required for sensitive operations to secure your account and cloud products. For details about how to enable operation protection, see the *Identity and Access Management User Guide*.
- Read replicas cannot be deleted from instances that have abnormal nodes.

Procedure

Step 1 Log in to the management console.

Step 2 In the service list, choose **Databases** > **Document Database Service**.

Step 3 On the **Instances** page, locate a target DB instance and click its name.

Step 4 In the **Node Information** area on the **Basic Information** page, click the **Read replicas** tab.

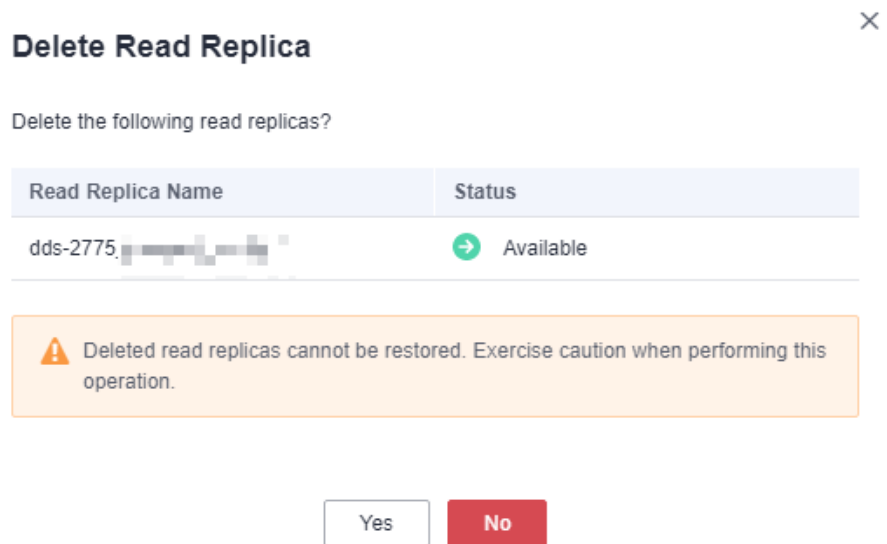
- For yearly/monthly instances:
 - Locate a target read replica and choose **More > Delete** in the **Operation** column.

Figure 5-47 Selecting a read replica in the yearly/monthly instance



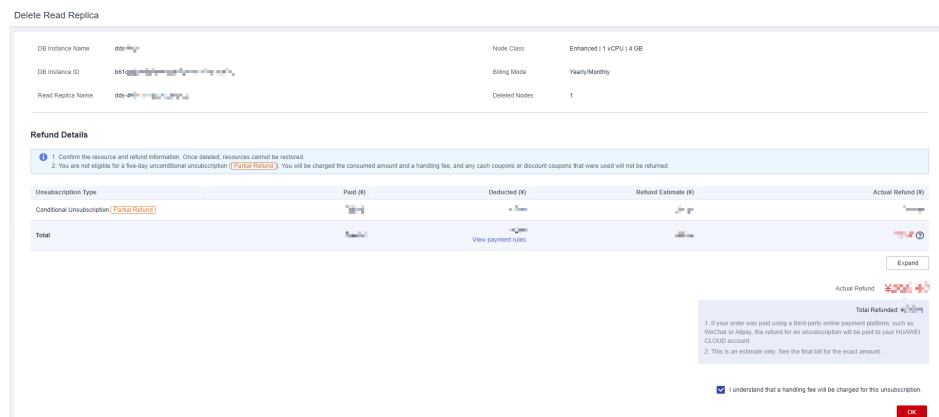
- Click **Yes**.

Figure 5-48 Deleting the read replica from the yearly/monthly instance



- Select the check box before **I understand that a handling will be charged for this unsubscription** and click **OK**.

Figure 5-49 Confirming the deletion

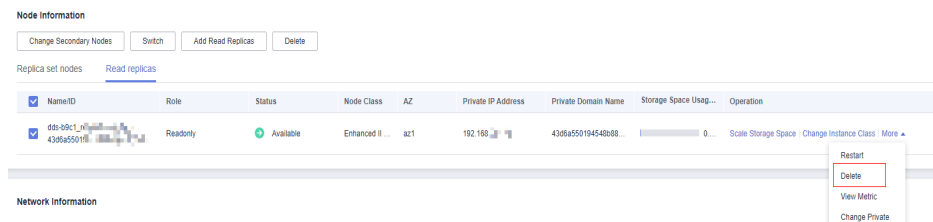


 **NOTE**

You can also delete read replicas in batches by selecting all read replicas to be deleted and clicking **Batch Delete**.

- For pay-per-use instances:
 - Locate a target read replica and choose **More > Delete** in the **Operation** column.

Figure 5-50 Selecting a read replica in the pay-per-use instance




- Click **Yes**.

Figure 5-51 Deleting the read replica from the pay-per-use instance

Delete Read Replica ✕

Delete the following read replicas?

Read Replica Name	Status
dds-b9c1_re-438a5501	 Available

 Deleted read replicas cannot be restored. Exercise caution when performing this operation.

 **NOTE**

You can also delete read replicas in batches by selecting all read replicas to be deleted and clicking **Batch Delete**.

Step 5 If you have enabled operation protection, click **Start Verification** in the **Delete Read Replica** dialog box. On the displayed page, click **Send Code**, enter the verification code, and click **Verify**. The page is closed automatically.

----End

5.11 Configuring the Maintenance Window

During a maintenance window, Huawei Cloud O&M personnel perform maintenance operations on the instance. To prevent service interruptions, set the maintenance window to off-peak hours.

The default maintenance window is 02:00–06:00 but you can change it if needed.


Precautions

- Before maintenance is performed, DDS will send SMS and email notifications to the contact person you specified in the Huawei account.
- During the maintenance window, the DB instance may be intermittently disconnected once or twice. Ensure that your applications can reconnect to the database if the connection is interrupted.
- During DB instance maintenance, operations for service changes (such as upgrade and restart) are unavailable except account management, database management, and security group adding. When a DB instance is in maintenance, data access and query operations on the database are not affected.
- Changing the maintenance window does not affect the execution of tasks that have been scheduled.
- You can configure a maintenance window only for restarting a DB instance, changing an instance class, or upgrading the minor version of a DB instance.
- You can cancel a scheduled task to be executed on the **Task Center** page.
- The maintenance window cannot overlap the time window configured for backups. Otherwise, scheduled tasks may fail.
- Tasks delivered near the end of the maintenance window may fail to be scanned. In this case, the execution is canceled.

Changing a Maintenance Window

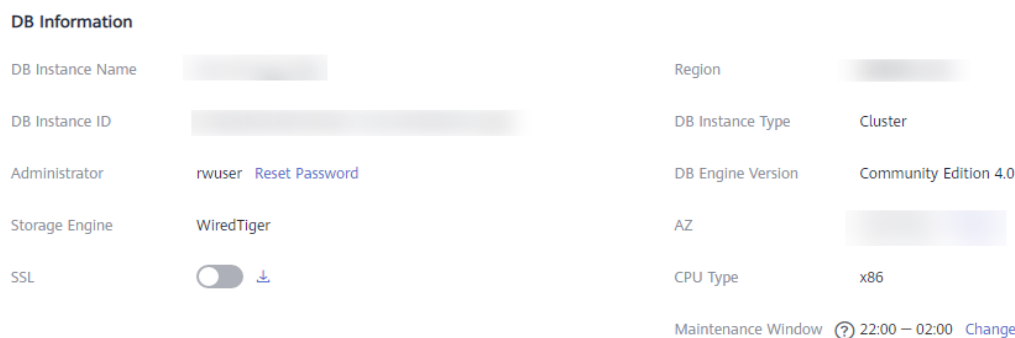
Step 1 [Log in to the management console.](#)

Step 2 Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

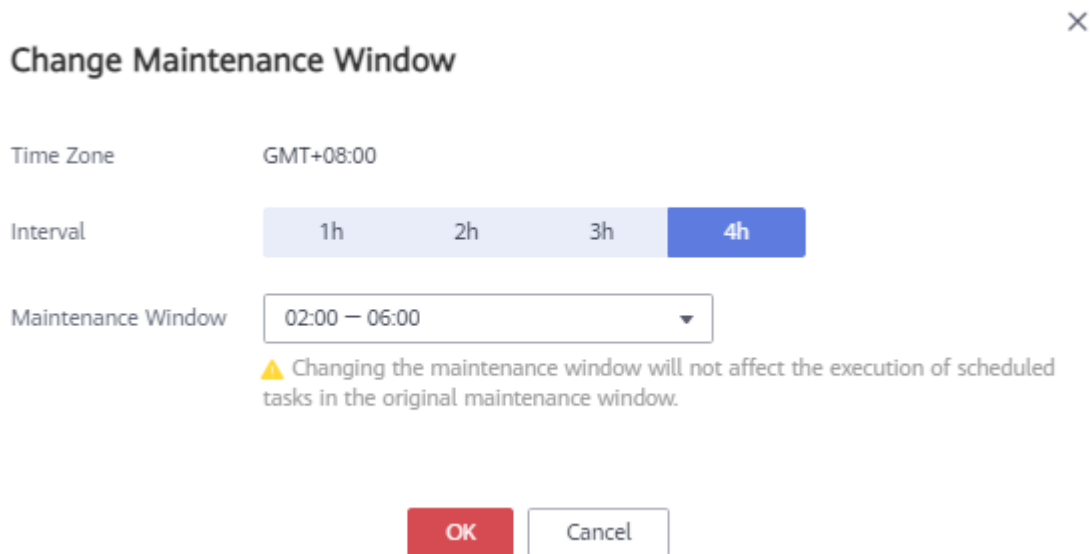
Step 3 Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

Step 4 On the **Instances** page, click the instance name. In the **DB Information** area on the **Basic Information** page, click **Change** in the **Maintenance Window** field.

Figure 5-52 Changing the maintenance window




Step 5 In the displayed dialog box, select an interval and a maintenance window, and click **OK**.


Figure 5-53 Changing the maintenance window

----End

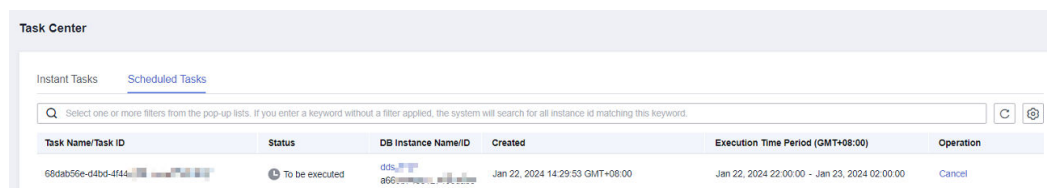
Canceling a Scheduled Task

Step 1 Log in to the management console.

Step 2 Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

Step 3 Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

Step 4 On the **Task Center** page, locate the specified task and click **Cancel** in the **Operation** column.

Figure 5-54 Canceling a task

Step 5 View the result.

On the **Task Center** page, you can view the result. After the task is cancelled, its status changes to **Cancelled**.

----End

5.12 Changing an AZ

You can migrate an instance to any AZ in the same region.

Precautions

- Clusters and replica sets can be migrated between AZs.
- Instances deployed across AZs and associated with an IPv6 subnet do not support this operation.
- Inactive standby nodes and read replicas in a replica set instance do not support this operation.
- If a cluster instance has read replicas associated, the instance cannot be migrated to another AZ.
- Services will be interrupted for up to 60 seconds while the AZ is being changed. The time required to change an AZ depends on the amount of data to be migrated. The entire migration process may take up to an hour. You are advised to use an HA connection to access the instance or configure your client to automatically reconnect to the instance.
- The destination AZ and the AZ of the current DB instance are in the same region.
- For details about regions and AZs, see [Regions and AZs](#).
- To ensure stable operation of a DB instance, change an AZ during off-peak hours.

Supported Migration Types and Scenarios


Table 5-7 Supported migration types and scenarios

Migration Type	Scenario
Migrating data from one AZ to another AZ	DDS instances can be migrated to the AZ to which the ECS belongs. DDS instances and ECS in the same AZ can be connected through a private network with lower network latency.
Migrating data from a single AZ to multiple AZs	The instance disaster recovery capability needs to be improved.

Procedure

Step 1 [Log in to the management console](#).

Step 2 Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.


Step 3 Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

Step 4 On the **Instances** page, click the instance name.

Step 5 In the **DB Information** area on the **Basic Information** page, click **Change** to the right of the **AZ** field.

Step 6 On the displayed page, select a desired AZ and click **OK**.

Step 7 On the **Instances** page, check the changed AZ.

- During the changes, the instance status is **Changing AZ**.
- In the upper right corner of the instance list, click  to refresh the list. After the migration is complete, the instance status will become **Available**.
- In the **DB Information** on the **Basic Information** page, view the new AZ where the DB instance is deployed.

----End

5.13 Updating the OS of a DB Instance

To improve database performance and security, the OS of a DDS instance needs to be updated timely.

Every time you upgrade the kernel version of your instance, DDS determines whether to update the OS and selects the right cold patch to upgrade the OS if necessary.

Updating the OS does not change the DB instance version or other information.

In addition, DDS installs hot patches as required to fix major OS vulnerabilities within the maintenance window you specified.

6 Data Backups

6.1 Backup Principles and Solutions

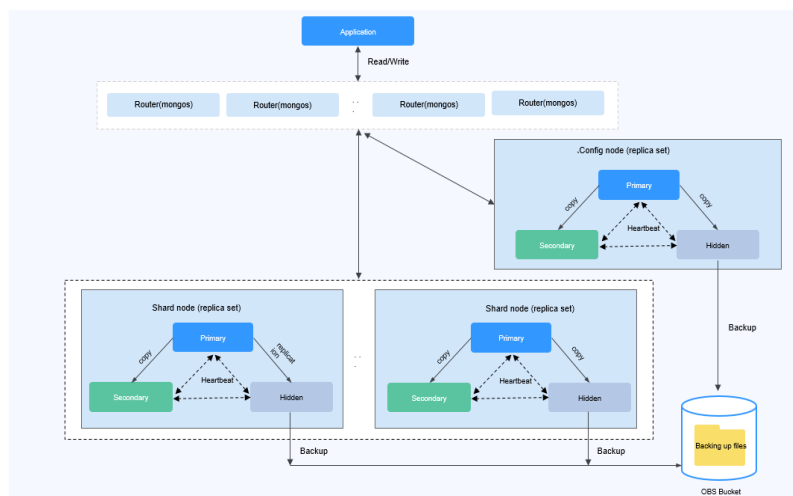
DDS instances support automated and manual backups. You can periodically back up databases. If a database is faulty or data is damaged, you can restore the database using backup files to ensure data reliability.

Backup Principles

- Cluster instance

A cluster instance consists of a config node, and multiple dds mongos and shard nodes. The config node is used to store the configuration information of a cluster instance, and the shard node is used to store data of a cluster instance. Backing up a cluster instance means that data on the config and shard nodes is backed up separately. As shown in [Figure 6-1](#), the config and shard nodes in a cluster instance are backed up to their own hidden nodes. The backup process occupies certain CPU and memory resources of the hidden nodes. During the backup, the CPU usage, memory usage, and primary/standby delay of the hidden node increase slightly, which is normal. The backup files on the hidden nodes will then be compressed and stored in OBS, and the storage space of the instance will not be occupied.

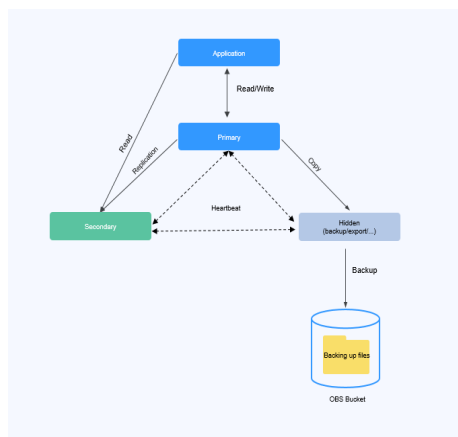
Figure 6-1 Cluster backup principle



- Replica set instance

As shown in [Figure 6-2](#), replica set instance data is backed up on hidden nodes. The backup process occupies certain CPU and memory resources of the hidden node. During the backup, the CPU usage, memory usage, and primary/standby delay of the hidden node increase slightly, which is normal. The backup files on the hidden nodes will then be compressed and stored in OBS, and the storage space of the instance will not be occupied.

Figure 6-2 Replica set backup principle



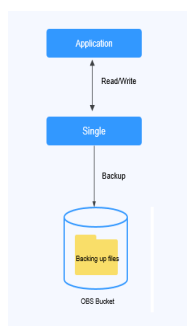
- Single node instance:

Single-node instance backup is performed on only one node. The backup file is stored in OBS as a package, which does not occupy the storage of the instance.

NOTICE

A single node instance is backed up using mongodump. During the backup, CPU and memory resources of the node are occupied. If the resources are insufficient, the backup fails. You are advised to migrate the single-node instance data to a replica set instance for backup.

Figure 6-3 Single-node instance backup principle



Backup and Restoration Solution

- **Table 6-1** describes how to back up and download backup files.

NOTE

By default, all DDS versions 3.2, 3.4, 4.0, 4.2, and 4.4 are supported unless otherwise specified.

Table 6-1 Backup solutions

Task Type	Method	Instance Type and Version	Scenario
Backing up data	Automated backup	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Cluster • Replica set • Single node 	You can perform automated backup for DDS instances on the management console.
	Incremental backup	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Cluster (versions 4.0 and 4.2) • Replica set (versions 4.0 and 4.2) 	You can perform incremental backup for DDS instances on the management console.
	Cross-Region Backup	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Cluster • Replica set • Single node 	You can perform cross-region backup on the DDS console.
	Manual backup	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Cluster • Replica set • Single node 	You can perform manual backup for DDS instances on the management console.
	mongodump	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Cluster • Replica set • Single node 	You can use the backup and restoration tool provided by the MongoDB client to back up your self-built MongoDB database or MongoDB database on the cloud.

Task Type	Method	Instance Type and Version	Scenario
	mongoexport	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Cluster Replica set Single node 	You can use the backup and restoration tool provided by the MongoDB client to back up your self-built MongoDB database or MongoDB database on the cloud.
Downloading a backup file	OBS Browser+	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Cluster Replica set Single node 	If the size of a backup file is greater than 400 MB, use OBS Browser+ to download the file.
	Browser	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Replica set Single node 	You can directly download backup files using a browser.
	URL	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Cluster Replica set Single node 	You can download backup files in a new browser window, or using Xunlei or Wget.

- For details about the DDS restoration scheme, see [Solutions](#).

6.2 Configuring an Automated Backup Policy

Scenario

DDS backs up data automatically based on the automated backup policy you set. You are advised to regularly back up data in your database. If the database becomes faulty or data is damaged, you can restore it with the backup.

The automated backup policy for DDS is enabled by default. After an instance is created, you can [modify](#) or [disable](#) the automated backup policy as required.

Once the automated backup policy is enabled, a full backup is triggered immediately. After that, full backups will be created based on the backup window and backup cycle you specify. When an instance is being backed up, data is copied and then compressed and uploaded to OBS. The length of time the backup data is kept for depends on the backup retention period you configure. The backup duration depends on the amount of data, and the average backup speed is 60 MB/s. After the automated backup policy is enabled, an incremental backup is automatically performed every 5 minutes for replica set instances to ensure data reliability. If the incremental backup function is required for cluster instances, you need to manually enable it.

Automated Backup Description

- Backup type
 - Full backup: All data is backed up even if no data is updated since the last backup.

- Incremental backup: Incremental backup is used to back up the data newly added or modified since the last full or incremental backup. DDS automatically backs up the updated data every 5-60 minutes since the last automated or incremental backup was made.
- Backup mode
 - **Physical:** Data is copied from physical disks.
 - **Snapshot:** The data status at a particular point in time is retained. Compared with physical backup, snapshot backup is faster. After snapshot backup is enabled, CBR will be charged separately.
 - **Logical:** A tool is used to read data and logically export the data.
- [Table 6-2](#) lists the automated backup methods supported by DDS.

Table 6-2 Backup methods

Instance Type	Backup Mode	Backup Type
Cluster	Physical backup	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Full backup • Incremental backup
Replica set	Physical backup	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Full backup • Incremental backup
Single node NOTE Single node instances apply to only a few scenarios. You are advised to use a single node instance only for learning.	Logical backup/ Snapshot backup NOTE For details about how to set Backup Method to Snapshot , see Setting Backup Method for a Single Node Instance .	Full backup

Pricing

- After you purchase an instance, DDS will provide additional backup storage of the same size as you purchased. For example, if you purchase 100 GB of instance storage space, you will obtain 100 GB of backup storage space. If the size of backup data does not exceed 100 GB, the backup data is stored on OBS free of charge. If the size of the backup data exceeds 100 GB, you will be charged based on the [OBS billing rules](#).
- You can check your expenditure records for DDS backup fees by going to **Billing Center > Bills**.


Precautions


- The backup process does not affect services.
- DDS checks existing automated backup files. If the retention period of a file exceeds the backup retention period you set, DDS will delete the file.

- After the backup policy is modified, an automated backup will be triggered based on the new backup policy. The retention period of the previously generated automated backups remains unchanged.
- Single node instances do not support incremental backup.
- By default, the name of an automated backup ends with the UTC time. To change the display time in the automated backup name to the local time, contact Huawei O&M personnel.

Enabling or Modifying an Automated Backup Policy

Step 1 [Log in to the management console.](#)

Step 2 Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

Step 3 Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

Step 4 On the **Instances** page, click the instance name.

Step 5 In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Backups & Restorations**.


Step 6 On the **Backups & Restorations** page, click **Set Backup Policy**. If you want to enable the automated backup policy, click . Once enabled, the backup policy can be modified as shown in [Figure 6-4](#).

Figure 6-4 Set Backup Policy

✕

Set Backup Policy

i Once the automated backup policy is enabled, a full backup is triggered immediately. After that, full backups will be created based on the backup window and backup cycle you specify. When a DB instance is being backed up, data is copied and then compressed and uploaded to OBS at an average speed of 60 MB/s. You can set the backup retention days as required.

Automated Backup

Incremental Backup

Retention Period - +
Enter an integer from 1 to 732.

Time Zone GMT+08:00

Time Window

Backup Cycle
 All
 Monday Tuesday Wednesday Thursday
 Friday Saturday Sunday
 A minimum of one day must be selected.

Backup Method

Table 6-3 Parameter description

Parameter	Description
Retention Period (days)	Number of days that your automated backups can be retained. The retention period is from 1 to 732 days and the default value is 7. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> Extending the retention period improves data reliability. You can configure the retention period if needed. If you shorten the retention period, the new backup policy takes effect for existing backups. Any automated backups (including full and incremental backups) that have expired will be automatically deleted. Manual backups will not be automatically deleted but you can delete them manually.
Time Zone	The default backup time zone is the UTC time.
Time Window	A one-hour period the backup will be scheduled within 24 hours, such as 01:00-02:00. The backup time is in UTC format.

Parameter	Description
Backup Cycle	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If you set the retention period to 1 to 6 days, data is automatically backed up each day of the week and the backup cycle cannot be changed. • If you set the retention period to 7 to 732 days, you must select at least one day of the week for the backup cycle.
Backup Method	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Physical: Data is copied from physical disks. • Snapshot: The data status at a particular point in time is retained. Compared with physical backup, snapshot backup is faster. • Logical: A tool is used to read data and logically export the data.

Policy for automatically deleting full backups:


To ensure data integrity, even after the retention period expires, the most recent backup will be retained.

If **Backup Cycle** was set to **Monday** and **Tuesday** and the **Retention Period** was set to **2**:

- The full backup generated on Monday will be automatically deleted on Thursday. The reasons are as follows:
The backup generated on Monday expires on Wednesday, but it is the last backup, so it will be retained until a new backup expires. The next backup will be generated on Tuesday and will expire on Thursday. So the full backup generated on Monday will not be automatically deleted until Thursday.
- The full backup generated on Tuesday will be automatically deleted on the following Wednesday. The reasons are as follows:
The backup generated on Tuesday will expire on Thursday, but as it is the last backup, so it will be retained until a new backup expires. The next backup will be generated on the following Monday and will expire on the following Wednesday. So the full backup generated on Tuesday will not be automatically deleted until the following Wednesday.

Step 7 Click **OK** to save the changes.

Step 8 View the results.

- During the creation of an automated backup, you can query the backup status on the **Backups** page or the **Backups & Restorations** tab. The backup status is **Backing up**.
- In the upper right corner of the backup list, click  to refresh the list. The backup status changes to **Complete**. The backup type is **Automated** and the backup method is **Physical**.

----End


Disabling an Automated Backup Policy


NOTICE

When disabling the automated backup policy:

- Your data cannot be backed up.
- Your replica set instances cannot be restored to a specified point in time.
- If you choose to delete all the existing automated backup when disabling the automated backup policy, related restoration or download operations will fail.

Step 1 [Log in to the management console](#).

Step 2 Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

Step 3 Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

Step 4 On the **Instances** page, click the instance name.

Step 5 In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Backups & Restorations**.


Step 6 On the **Backups & Restorations** page, click **Set Backup Policy**. On the displayed page, click  to disable the automated backup policy. [Figure 6-5](#) shows the dialog box for modifying the backup policy.

Figure 6-5 Set Backup Policy

✕

Set Backup Policy

i Once the automated backup policy is enabled, a full backup is triggered immediately. After that, full backups will be created based on the backup window and backup cycle you specify. When a DB instance is being backed up, data is copied and then compressed and uploaded to OBS at an average speed of 60 MB/s. You can set the backup retention days as required.

Automated Backup If the automated backup policy is disabled, automated backups will not be created. Existing automated backups will be retained.

Delete automated backups

Retention Period Enter an integer from 1 to 732.

Time Zone GMT+08:00

Time Window

Backup Cycle All Monday Tuesday Wednesday Thursday Friday Saturday Sunday

Backup Method

You can determine whether to delete all automated backup files:

- If you do not select **Delete automated backups**, all backup files within the retention period will be retained, but you can still delete them manually. For details, see section [Deleting an Automated Backup](#).
- If you select **Delete automated backups**, all backup files within the retention period will be deleted.

If you shorten the retention period, the new backup policy takes effect for all backup files. Any backup files that have expired, based on a newly configured retention period, will be deleted, but the latest expired backup file will be retained.

Step 7 Click **OK**.

NOTE

- If automated backups are disabled, any automated backups in progress stop immediately.
- After automated backups are disabled, incremental backups are disabled by default.
- If you need to enable the automated backup policy again, see [Enabling or Modifying an Automated Backup Policy](#).

----End

6.3 Configuring an Incremental Backup Policy

Incremental backup is used to back up the data newly added or modified since the last full or incremental backup. DDS automatically backs up the updated data every 5-60 minutes since the last automated or incremental backup was made.

When you create a DDS DB instance, incremental backup is enabled by default for all DB instances except DB instances with fewer than 4 vCPUs. You can enable or disable the backup policy after an instance is created. For details, see [Enabling or Modifying an Incremental Backup Policy](#) and [Disabling the Incremental Backup Policy](#).

Prerequisites

Before enabling the incremental backup policy, ensure that the automated backup policy has been enabled. For details, see [Enabling or Modifying an Automated Backup Policy](#).

NOTE

Only whitelisted users can use this function. You need to submit a service ticket to apply for this function. In the upper right corner of the management console, choose [Service Tickets](#) > [Create Service Ticket](#) to submit a service ticket.

Constraints

- Only cluster instances of versions 4.0, 4.2, and 4.4 and replica set instances of versions 3.4, 4.0, 4.2, and 4.4 support this function.
- To minimize the impact of incremental backup on instances, incremental backup is disabled by default for DB instances with fewer than 4 vCPUs.
- Incremental backup stops in any of the following scenarios and starts again after the next automated backup is complete:
 - rename operation
 - collmod operation
 - Creating a user
 - Deleting a user
 - Creating a role
 - Deleting a role
 - Enabling shard IP addresses of a cluster instance
 - Changing the password of the shard node user
 - Enabling config IP addresses of a cluster instance
 - Changing the password of the config node user
 - Changing the password of the **rwuser** user

Enabling or Modifying an Incremental Backup Policy

Step 1 [Log in to the management console](#).




- Step 2** Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.
- Step 3** Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.
- Step 4** On the **Instances** page, click the instance name.
- Step 5** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Backups & Restorations**.
- Step 6** On the **Backups & Restorations** page, click **Set Backup Policy**. To enable incremental backup, click . After incremental backup is enabled, a full backup is triggered.

Figure 6-6 Set Backup Policy

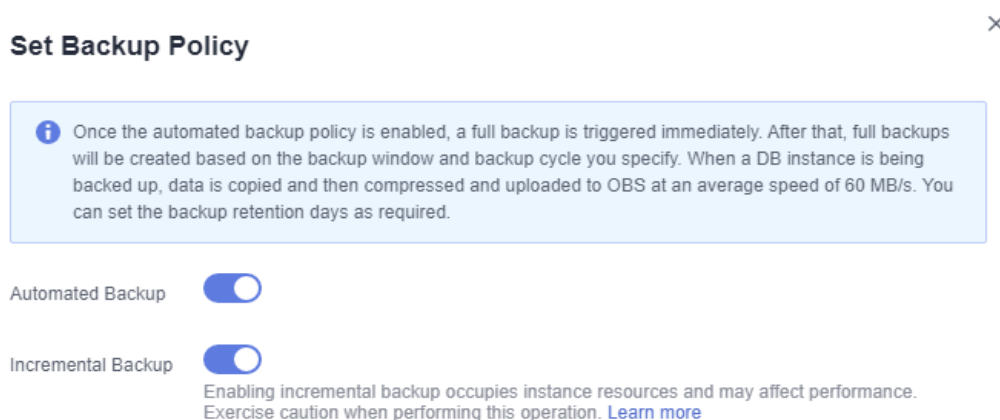



Table 6-4 Parameter description

Parameter	Description
Automated Backup	For details about automated backup parameters, see Table 6-3 .
Incremental Backup	Before enabling the incremental backup policy, ensure that the automated backup policy has been enabled.

- Step 7** Click **OK**.
- Step 8** View the results.
 - During the creation of an automated backup, you can query the backup status on the **Backups** page or the **Backups & Restorations** tab. The backup status is **Backing up**.
 - In the upper right corner of the backup list, click  to refresh the list. The backup status changes to **Complete**.

----End

Disabling the Incremental Backup Policy




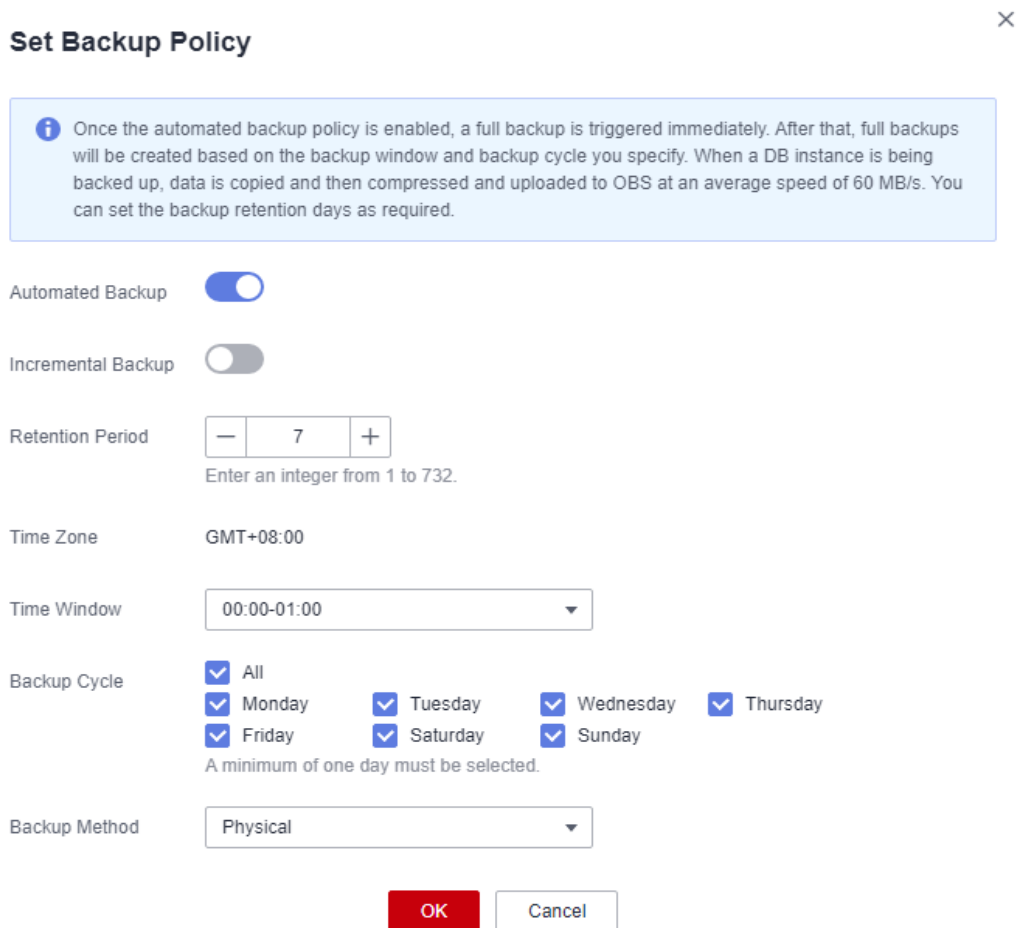
- Step 1** [Log in to the management console.](#)
- Step 2** Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.
- Step 3** Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service.**
- Step 4** On the **Instances** page, click the instance name.
- Step 5** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Backups & Restorations.**
- Step 6** On the **Backups & Restorations** page, click **Set Backup Policy.**
- Step 7** In the displayed dialog box, click  to the right of **Incremental Backup** to disable the incremental backup policy.

Figure 6-7 Disabling incremental backup policy



- Step 8** Click **OK.**

NOTICE

- After you disable this incremental backup, the incremental backup task will be stopped, all incremental backup files will be deleted immediately, and operations related to incremental backup fail.
- After a DB instance is deleted, all incremental backup files of the DB instance are retained. The retention period depends on the incremental backup retention period that you specified.

----End

6.4 Configuring the Cross-Region Backup Policy

DDS can store backup files in the destination region or OBS, so you can use the backup files in the destination region to restore data to a new DDS instance.

After the cross-region backup policy is enabled, the system automatically stores the backup files created for the instance to the destination region you specified. You can manage cross-region backup files on the **Backups** page.

Before You Start

- To apply for the permission to set cross-region backup policies, contact customer service.
- Before enabling the cross-region backup policy, ensure that the automated backup policy has been enabled. Otherwise, the cross-region backup cannot take effect. For details, see [Enabling or Modifying an Automated Backup Policy](#).

Precautions

Cross-region backup is only supported in the regions listed in the following table.

Table 6-5 Supported regions

Source Region	Destination Region
CN North-Beijing4	CN East-Shanghai1 and CN South-Guangzhou
CN East-Shanghai1	CN North-Beijing4 and CN South-Guangzhou

Enabling or Modifying a Cross-Region Backup Policy

Step 1 [Log in to the management console](#).

Step 2 Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.


- Step 3** Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.
- Step 4** On the **Instances** page, click the target instance.
- Step 5** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Backups & Restorations**.
- Step 6** On the **Backups & Restorations** page, click **Set Cross-Region Backup Policy**.

Figure 6-8 Set Cross-Region Backup Policy

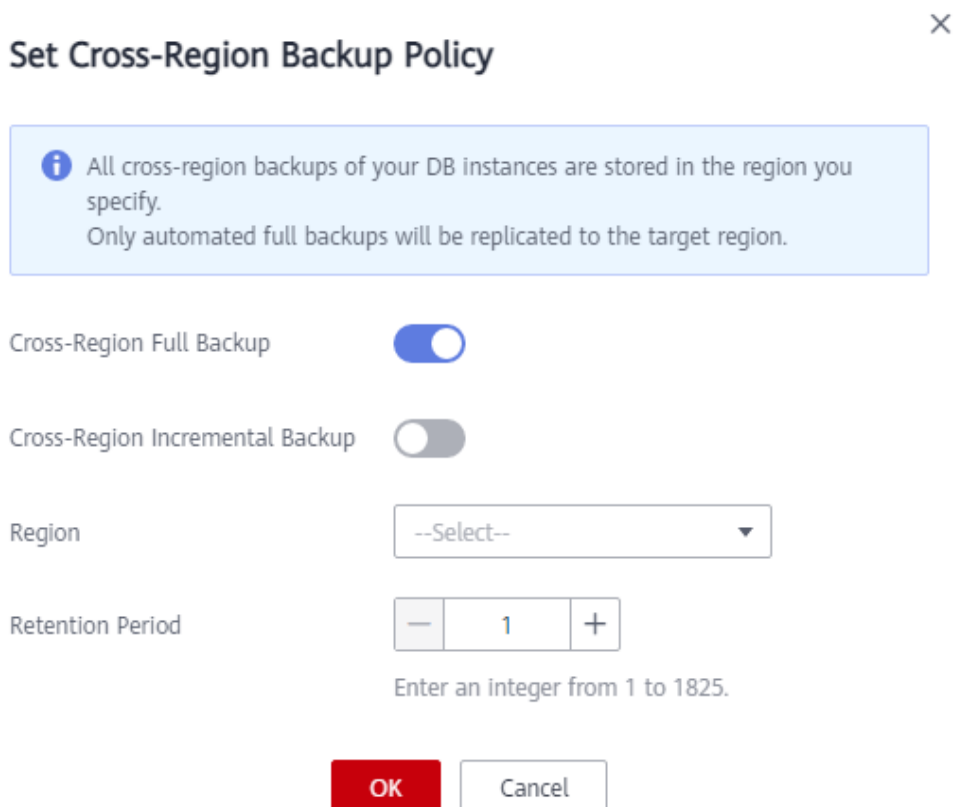




Table 6-6 Parameter description

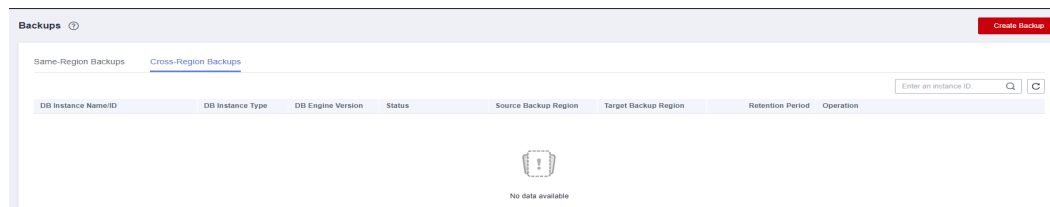
Parameter	Description
Cross-Region Full Backup	Click  to back up the automated full backup file of the instance to a remote location.

Parameter	Description
Cross-Region Incremental Backup	<p>Click  to back up the incremental backup file of the instance to a remote location.</p> <p>NOTE</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Only replica set instances support cross-region incremental backup. • If cross-region full backup is not enabled, cross-region incremental backup cannot be enabled. • After cross-region incremental backup is enabled, you can restore an instance to a specified time point only after the next automated full backup replication is complete. The specified time point must be later than the time when the automated full backup is complete.
Region	Select the region for which you back up data based on service requirements.
Retention Period	Retention Period refers to the number of days (range: 1 to 1,825) that data is kept. You can increase the retention period to improve data reliability.

Step 7 Click **OK**.

Step 8 On the **Cross-Region Backups** tab of the **Backups** page, manage cross-region backup files.

Figure 6-9 Cross-region backups




- To modify the cross-region backup policy, click **Set Cross-Region Backup** in the **Operation** column.
- To view generated cross-region backup files, click **View Cross-Region Backup** in the **Operation** column. You can use the cross-region backup files to restore data to a new instance.

----End

Disabling a Cross-Region Backup Policy

Step 1 [Log in to the management console](#).

Step 2 Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

Step 3 Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

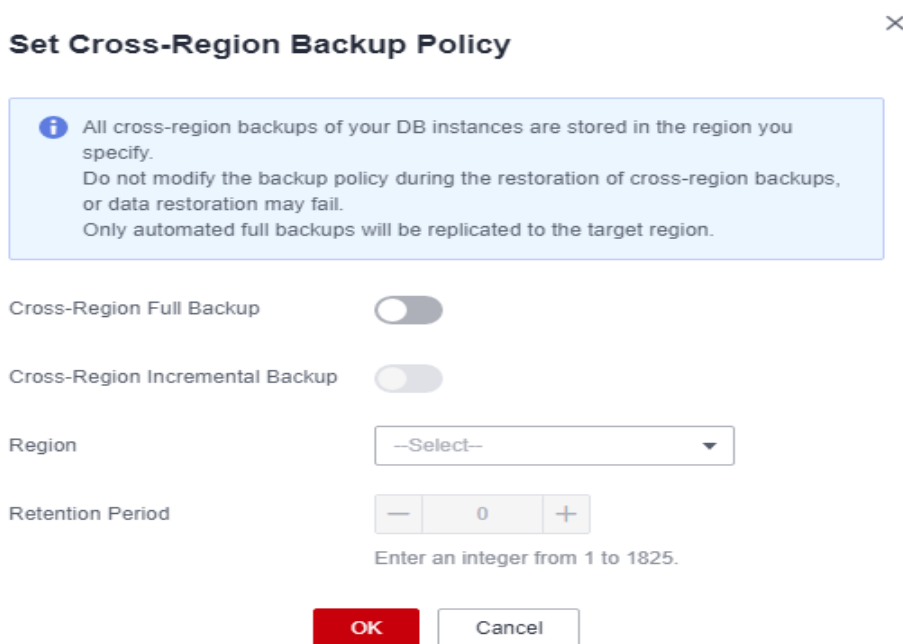
Step 4 On the **Instances** page, click the target instance.

Step 5 In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Backups & Restorations**.

Step 6 On the **Backups & Restorations** page, click **Set Cross-Region Backup Policy**.

Step 7 In the displayed dialog box, click  to disable the cross-region backup policy.

Figure 6-10 Disabling a cross-region backup policy



Step 8 Click **OK**.

NOTICE

- If the cross-region backup policy is disabled, the cross-region backup task will be stopped immediately, and all cross-region backup and cross-region incremental backup files will be immediately deleted. Operations related to cross-region backup or incremental backup may fail.
- After an instance is deleted, all cross-region backups and incremental backups of the instance will be retained. The retention period is determined by the retention period you specified in the cross-region backup policy.

----End

6.5 Setting Backup Method for a Single Node Instance

DDS allows snapshot backup for a single node instance.

NOTE

Huawei Cloud has discontinued the sale of DDS single node instances since July 15, 2023.

Procedure



- Step 1** [Log in to the management console.](#)
- Step 2** Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.
- Step 3** Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service.**
- Step 4** On the **Instances** page, click the single node instance name.
- Step 5** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Backups & Restorations.**
- Step 6** On the **Backups & Restorations** page, click **Set Backup Policy.**

Figure 6-11 Setting Backup Method for a single node instance

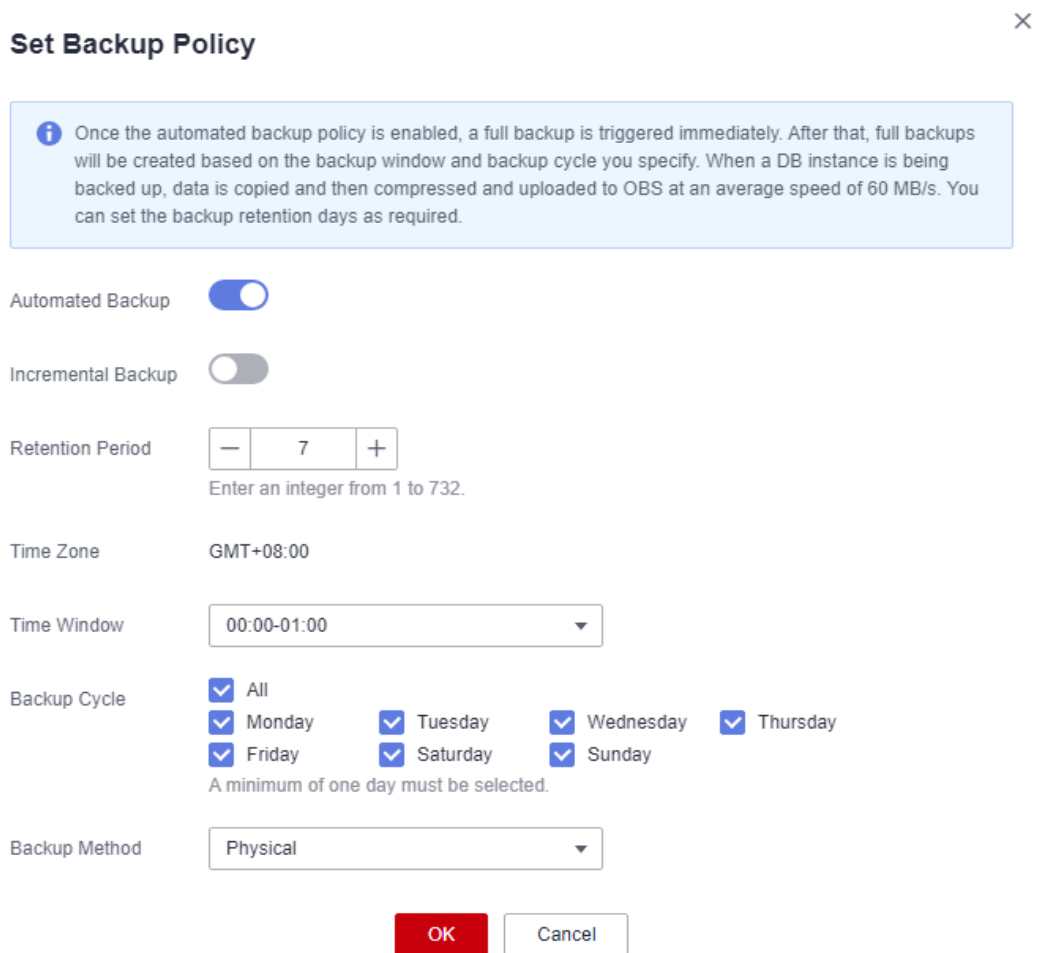


Table 6-7 Parameter description

Parameter	Description
Retention Period (days)	<p>Number of days that your automated backups can be retained. The retention period is from 1 to 732 days and the default value is 7.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Extending the retention period improves data reliability. You can configure the retention period if needed.• If you shorten the retention period, the new backup policy takes effect for existing backups. Any automated backups (including full and incremental backups) that have expired will be automatically deleted. Manual backups will not be automatically deleted but you can delete them manually.
Time Zone	The default backup time zone is the UTC time.
Time Window	The backup interval is one hour. You are advised to set the backup window to an off-peak period.
Backup Cycle	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• If you set the retention period to 1 to 6 days, data is automatically backed up each day of the week and the backup cycle cannot be changed.• If you set the retention period to 7 to 732 days, you must select at least one day of the week for the backup cycle.
Backup Method	<ul style="list-style-type: none">• Physical: Data is copied from physical disks.• Snapshot: The data status at a particular point in time is retained. Compared with physical backup, snapshot backup is faster.• Logical: A tool is used to read data and logically export the data.

Step 7 Set **Backup Method** to **Snapshot** and click **OK**.

----End

6.6 Creating a Manual Backup

This section describes how to create a manual backup. Creating a backup for a DB instance helps ensure data can be restored if needed, ensuring data reliability.

Prerequisites

You can create backups (including manual backups, automated backups, and incremental backups) only when the hidden nodes of cluster instances and replica set instances are normal.

Description

- Backup type
Full backup: All data is backed up even if no data is updated since the last backup.
- Backup mode
Physical backup: Data is copied from physical disks.
- [Table 6-8](#) lists the manual backup methods supported by DDS.

Table 6-8 Backup methods

Instance Type	Backup Mode	Backup Type
Cluster	Physical backup	Full backup
Replica set	Physical backup	Full backup
Single node NOTE Single node instances apply to only a few scenarios. You are advised to use a single node instance only for learning.	Physical backup	Full backup

Pricing Details

- After you purchase an instance, DDS will provide additional backup storage of the same size as you purchased. For example, if you purchase 100 GB of instance storage space, you will obtain 100 GB of backup storage space. If the size of backup data does not exceed 100 GB, the backup data is stored on OBS free of charge. If the size of the backup data exceeds 100 GB, you will be charged based on the [OBS billing rules](#).
- You can check your expenditure records for DDS backup fees by going to **Billing Center > Bills**.


Precautions

- The backup process does not affect services.
- When you delete a DB instance, its automated backups are also deleted but its manual backups are retained.

Procedure

Step 1 [Log in to the management console](#).

Step 2 Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

Step 3 Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

Step 4 Create a manual backup on the DDS console in any of the following ways:

- On the **Instances** page, locate an available instance and choose **More > Create Backup** in the **Operation** column.

Figure 6-12 Method 1: Creating a backup

<input type="checkbox"/>	Name/ID	D...	DB Instance...	D...	St...	Status	BI...	Address	Operation
<input type="checkbox"/>	dds_rep_40 0a1bd78d7814cdc8e7a6...		Replica Sets	C...	W...	Available	Pay Cr...	mongodb://rwuser:<pa...	Log In View Metric More
<input type="checkbox"/>	dds_single_40 600e0aba9e814af7ac1a4...		Single Nodes	C...	W...	Available	Pay Cr...	mongodb://rwuser:<pa...	Log In View Metric
<input type="checkbox"/>	dds-ce25 d57cfbf346854b88bee14...		Clusters	C...	W...	Available	Pay Cr...	mongodb://rwuser:<pa...	Log In View Metric
<input type="checkbox"/>	dds-8ec6 7b4227a9c053420ab03ae...		Clusters	C...	W...	Available	Pay Cr...	mongodb://rwuser:<pa...	Log In View Metric Create Backup

- On the **Instances** page, choose **Backups** in the navigation pane on the left. On the displayed page, click **Create Backup**.

Figure 6-13 Method 2: Creating a backup

Backup Name/ID	DB Instance Name/ID	DB Engine Version	Backup Type	Backup Time	Status	Size	Backup Method	Description	Operation
DDS-dds-2a69-20231... 516a29568b8e49c8af...	dds-2a69 #9907b3a33e64699f59245ab96...	Community Edition 3.4	Automated	Dec 13, 2023 16:34:48	Completed	3.88 MB	Physical	--	Restore Download
DDS-dds-a491-20231... b0564ca7a35843088...	dds-a491 df5e4210d684e6d3af73ae774d...	Community Edition 3.4	Automated	Nov 11, 2023 10:32:16	Completed	3.95 MB	Physical	--	Restore Download

- On the **Instances** page, click an available DB instance. In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Backups & Restorations**. On the **Backups & Restorations** page, click **Create Backup**.

Figure 6-14 Method 3: Creating a backup

Backup Name/ID	Backup Type	Backup Time	Status	Size	Backup Method	Description	Operation
DDS-dds-f506-k30001384-20240108163017685 37058b8d974430fa93d416ed6e1b4c30r02	Automated	Jan 08, 2024 00:30:17	Failed	0 KB	Physical	--	Restore Delete Download

Step 5 In the displayed dialog box, specify **Backup Name** and **Description** and click **OK**.

- The manual backup name can be 4 to 64 characters long. It must start with a letter and can contain only letters, digits, hyphens (-), and underscores (_).
- The description contains a maximum of 256 characters and cannot contain the carriage return character and the following special characters: >|<"&'=

Step 6 View the results.

- During the creation of a manual backup, you can query the backup status on the **Backups** or the **Backups & Restorations** page. The backup status is **Backing up**. The time it takes to complete the backup depends on the size of the job.
- If the manual backup is successfully created, the backup status is **Complete**. The manual backup type is **Manual** and the backup method is **Physical**.

----End

6.7 Deleting a Manual Backup

This section describes how to delete manual backups to release the storage space.


Precautions

- Deleted backups cannot be restored. Exercise caution when performing this operation.
- Backups being used to recover instances cannot be deleted.
- To delete manual backups in batches, submit an application by choosing [Service Tickets > Create Service Ticket](#) in the upper right corner of the console.

Procedure

Step 1 [Log in to the management console](#).

Step 2 Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

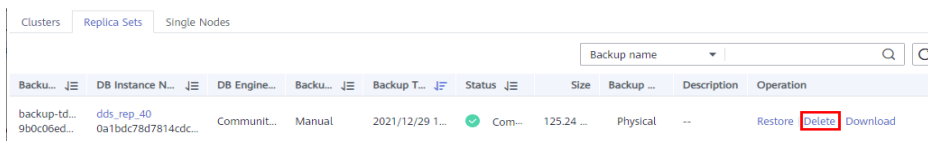
Step 3 Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

Step 4 Delete a manual backup.

On the DDS console, you can delete a manual backup using any of the following methods:

- Method 1:
 - In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Backups**.
 - On the **Backups** page, click the **Clusters**, **Replica Sets**, or **Single Nodes** tab.
 - Locate the manual backup to be deleted and click **Delete** in the **Operation** column.

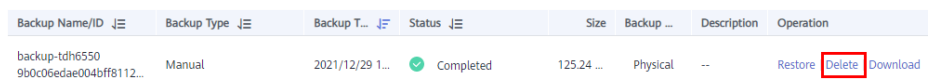
Figure 6-15 Deleting a Manual Backup



Backu...	DB Instance N...	DB Engine...	Backu...	Backup T...	Status	Size	Backup ...	Description	Operation
backup-td... 9b0c06ed...	dds_rep_40 0a1bdc78d7814cd...	Communit...	Manual	2021/12/29 1...	Completed	125.24 ...	Physical	--	Restore Delete Download

- Method 2:
 - On the **Instances** page, click the target DB instance.
 - In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Backups & Restorations**.
 - On the **Backups & Restorations** page, locate the manual backup to be deleted and click **Delete**.

Figure 6-16 Deleting a Manual Backup



Backup Name/ID	Backup Type	Backup T...	Status	Size	Backup ...	Description	Operation
backup-tdh6550 9b0c06edae004bff8112...	Manual	2021/12/29 1...	Completed	125.24 ...	Physical	--	Restore Delete Download

Step 5 In the displayed dialog box, click **Yes**.

----End


6.8 Deleting an Automated Backup

DDS allows you to delete failed automated backups to release storage space. Deleted backups cannot be restored. Exercise caution when performing this operation.

Method 1

Step 1 [Log in to the management console](#).

Step 2 Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

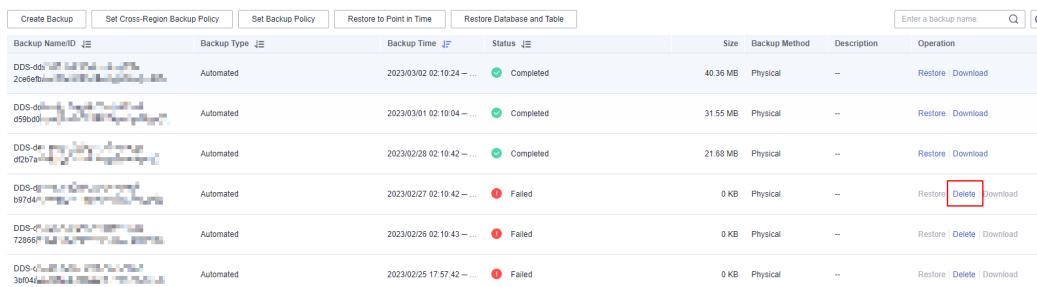
Step 3 Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

Step 4 On the **Instances** page, click the instance name.

Step 5 In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Backups & Restorations**.

Step 6 On the **Backups & Restorations** page, locate the automated backup to be deleted and click **Delete**.

Figure 6-17 Deleting an automated backup



Backup Name/ID	Backup Type	Backup Time	Status	Size	Backup Method	Description	Operation
DDS-dd-2ce6efb...	Automated	2023/03/02 02:10:24	Completed	40.36 MB	Physical	--	Restore Download
DDS-dd-695bd...	Automated	2023/03/01 02:10:04	Completed	31.55 MB	Physical	--	Restore Download
DDS-df-df2b7a...	Automated	2023/02/28 02:10:42	Completed	21.88 MB	Physical	--	Restore Download
DDS-df-9974...	Automated	2023/02/27 02:10:42	Failed	0 KB	Physical	--	Restore Delete Download
DDS-df-72866...	Automated	2023/02/26 02:10:43	Failed	0 KB	Physical	--	Restore Delete Download
DDS-df-3804...	Automated	2023/02/25 17:57:42	Failed	0 KB	Physical	--	Restore Delete Download


Step 7 In the displayed dialog box, click **Yes**.

----End

Method 2

Step 1 [Log in to the management console](#).

Step 2 Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

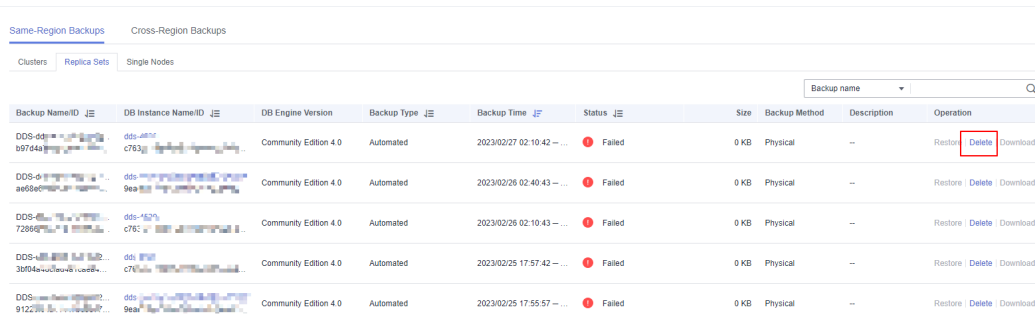
Step 3 Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

Step 4 In the navigation pane on the left of the **Instances** page, choose **Backups**.

Step 5 On the **Backups** page, click the **Clusters**, **Replica Sets**, or **Single Nodes** tab.

Step 6 Locate the automated backup to be deleted and click **Delete** in the **Operation** column.

Figure 6-18 Deleting an automated backup



The screenshot shows the 'Same-Region Backups' section of the management console. It features a table with columns for Backup Name, DB Instance Name, DB Engine Version, Backup Type, Backup Time, Status, Size, Backup Method, Description, and Operation. The 'Delete' button in the 'Operation' column of the first row is highlighted with a red box.

Backup Name	DB Instance Name	DB Engine Version	Backup Type	Backup Time	Status	Size	Backup Method	Description	Operation
DDS-d4b-9744a	dds-c763	Community Edition 4.0	Automated	2023/02/27 02:10:42	Failed	0 KB	Physical	--	Restore Delete Download
DDS-d1a-ae68e	dds-9ea	Community Edition 4.0	Automated	2023/02/26 02:40:43	Failed	0 KB	Physical	--	Restore Delete Download
DDS-d1a-7286e	dds-1c27	Community Edition 4.0	Automated	2023/02/26 02:10:43	Failed	0 KB	Physical	--	Restore Delete Download
DDS-d1a-3b04a	dds-c763	Community Edition 4.0	Automated	2023/02/25 17:57:42	Failed	0 KB	Physical	--	Restore Delete Download
DDS-d1a-9122a	dds-9ea	Community Edition 4.0	Automated	2023/02/25 17:55:57	Failed	0 KB	Physical	--	Restore Delete Download

Step 7 In the displayed dialog box, click **Yes**.

----End

6.9 Stopping a Backup

Scenarios

DDS allows you to stop a backup. If an emergency operation, such as specification change or minor version upgrade, cannot be performed because the DB instance is backing up, you can stop the backup.


Precautions

- Only full backups (streaming backups) can be stopped.
- Cross-region backups cannot be stopped.
- Only backups in the **Backing up** or **Uploading** state can be stopped.
- Stopping a backup may stop incremental backup at the current point in time and may fail. Exercise caution when performing this operation.
- Stopping a backup makes a DB instance return to the **Available** state as soon as possible to prevent blocking the execution of other tasks. The backup task may not be terminated.
- You are not allowed to stop a critical backup. If you do need, contact O&M personnel.
- To use this function, submit a service ticket. In the upper right corner of the management console, choose [Service Tickets > Create Service Ticket](#).

Procedure

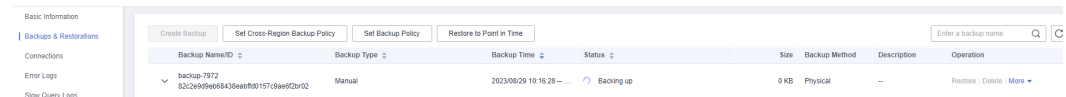
Step 1 [Log in to the management console](#).

Step 2 Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

Step 3 Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

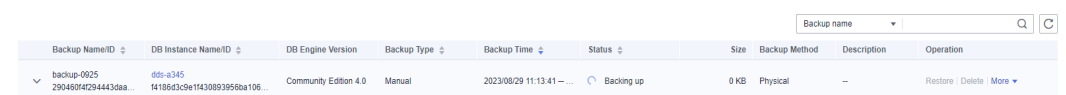
Step 4 On the **Instances** page, locate the target DB instance and click its name. In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Backups & Restorations**.

Figure 6-19 Selecting a backup



Alternatively, on the navigation pane on the left, choose **Backups**.

Figure 6-20 Stopping a backup



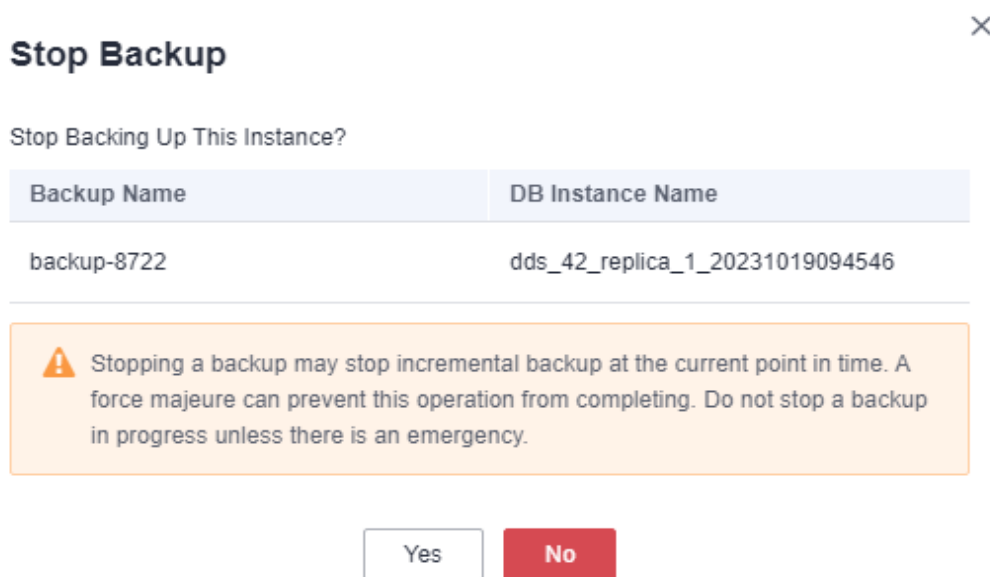
Step 5 Choose **More > Stop** in the **Operation** column.

Figure 6-21 Stopping a backup



Step 6 On the displayed dialog box, click **Yes**.

Figure 6-22 Stopping a backup



----End

6.10 Downloading a Backup File

6.10.1 Using OBS Browser+

You can use OBS Browser+ to download a manual or an automated backup to a local device for backup or restoration.

Precautions

- When you use OBS Browser+ to download backup data, you will not be billed for outbound traffic from OBS.
- If the size of a backup file is greater than 400 MB, use OBS Browser+ to download the backup file.
- Backups downloaded from the DDS console are all full backups.

Procedure



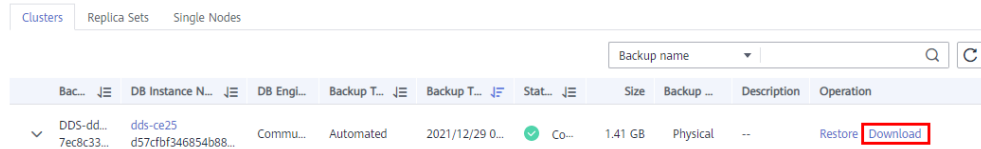
- Step 1** [Log in to the management console.](#)
- Step 2** Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.
- Step 3** Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.
- Step 4** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Backups**.
- Step 5** On the **Backups** page, click the **Clusters**, **Replica Sets**, or **Single Nodes** tab, locate the available backup you want to download and click **Download** in the **Operation** column.

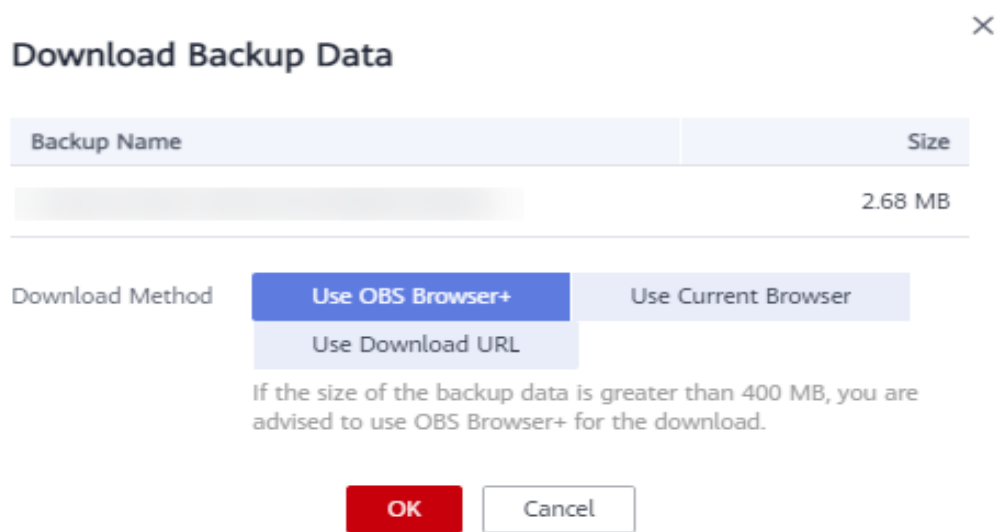
Figure 6-23 Download Backup



Bac...	DB Instance N...	DB Engl...	Backup T...	Backup T...	Stat...	Size	Backup ...	Description	Operation
DDS-dd... 7ec8c33...	dds-ce25 d57c7b346854b88...	Commu...	Automated	2021/12/29 0...	Co-	1.41 GB	Physical	--	Restore Download

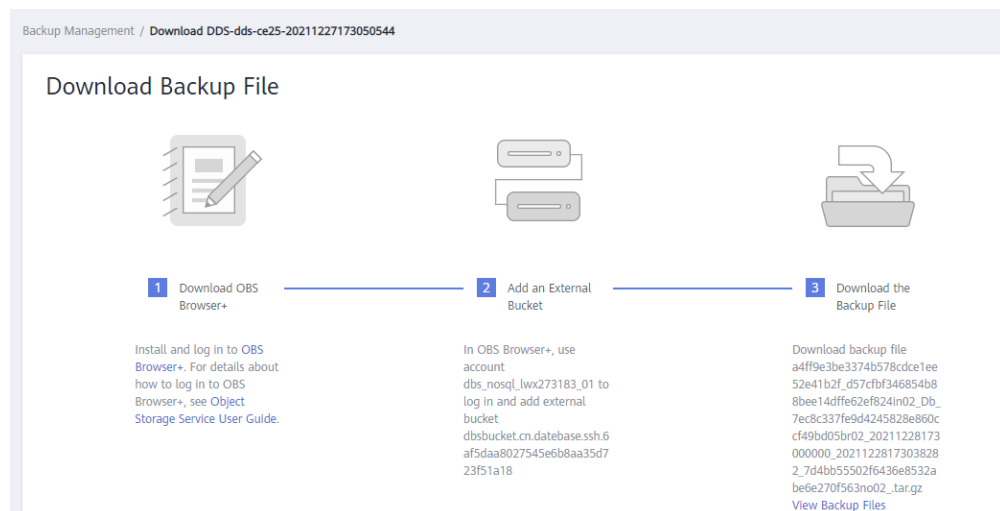
Step 6 In the displayed dialog box, select **Use OBS Browser+** and click **OK**.

Figure 6-24 Selecting a download method



Step 7 On the displayed page, download the DDS backup file as prompted.

Figure 6-25 Download guide page



Step 8 Download OBS Browser+ following the step 1 provided in [Figure 6-25](#).

Step 9 Decompress and install OBS Browser+.

Step 10 Log in to OBS Browser+.

For details about how to log in to OBS Browser+, see [Logging In to OBS Browser+](#) in the *Object Storage Service Tools Guide*.

Step 11 Add an external bucket.

In the **Add External Bucket** dialog box of OBS Browser+, enter the bucket name displayed in step 2 on page [Figure 6-25](#), and click **OK**.

Step 12 Download the backup file.

On the OBS Browser+ page, click the external bucket that you added. In the search box on the right of OBS Browser+, enter the backup file name displayed in step 3 on page [Figure 6-25](#). In the search result, locate the target backup and download it.

Step 13 After the backup file is downloaded, use the LZ4 to decompress the file.

Run the following command to decompress the backup file:

```
lz4 -d $1 | tar -xC $2
```

\$1: indicates the downloaded backup file.

\$2: indicates the directory to which the backup file is decompressed.

Step 14 You can restore data locally as required.

For details, see the following documentation.

- [Restoring a Cluster Backup to an On-premises Database](#)
- [Restoring a Replica Set Backup to an On-Premises Database](#)

----End

6.10.2 Using Current Browser

You can use a browser to download a manual or an automated backup to a local device for backup or restoration


Precautions

- Cluster backup files cannot be downloaded using a browser.
- Backups downloaded from the DDS console are all full backups.

Procedure

Step 1 [Log in to the management console.](#)

Step 2 Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

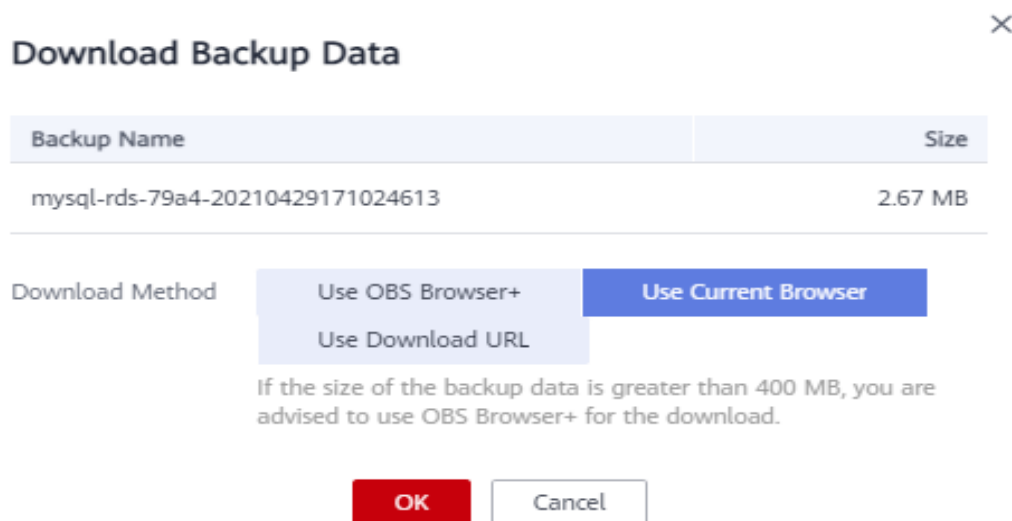
Step 3 Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

Step 4 In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Backups**.

Step 5 On the **Backups** page, click the **Clusters**, **Replica Sets**, or **Single Nodes** tab, locate the available backup you want to download and click **Download** in the **Operation** column.

Step 6 In the displayed dialog box, select **Use Current Browser** for **Download Method** and click **OK**.

Figure 6-26 Selecting a download method



Step 7 After the backup file is downloaded, decompress it using LZ4.

Run the following command to decompress the backup file:

```
lz4 -d $1 | tar -xC $2
```

\$1: indicates the downloaded backup file.

\$2: indicates the directory to which the backup file is decompressed.

Step 8 You can restore data locally as required.

For details, see the following documentation.

- [Restoring a Cluster Backup to an On-premises Database](#)
- [Restoring a Replica Set Backup to an On-Premises Database](#)

----End

6.10.3 Using Download URL

You can download manual or automated backup files using the URL provided by DDS to a local device for backup or restoration.

Precautions

Backups downloaded from the DDS console are all full backups.

Procedure

Step 1 [Log in to the management console.](#)

Step 2 Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.



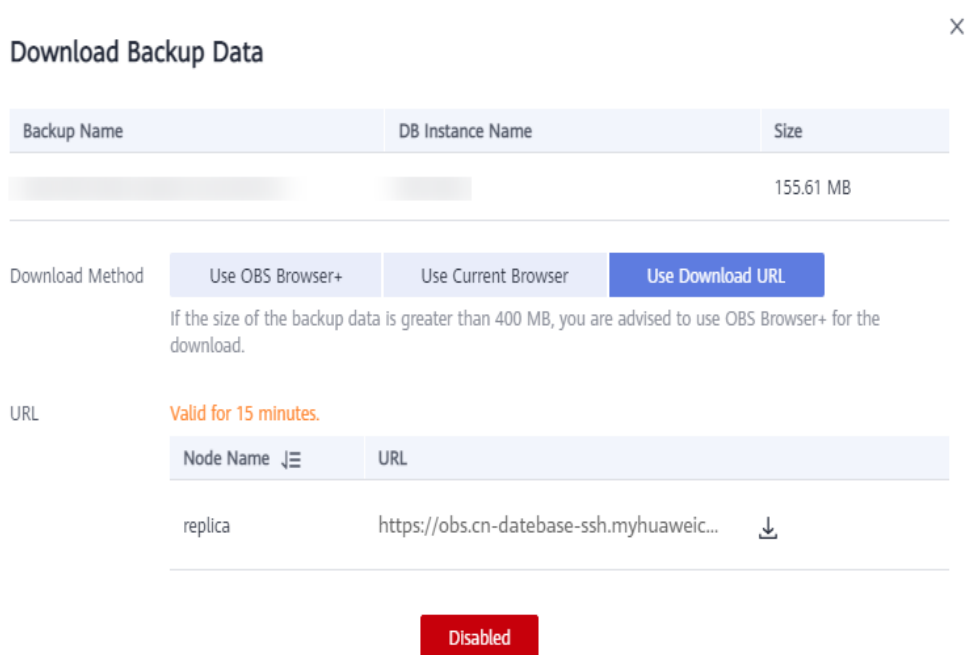
- Step 3** Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.
- Step 4** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Backups**.
- Step 5** On the **Backups** page, click the **Clusters**, **Replica Sets**, or **Single Nodes** tab, locate the available backup you want to download and click **Download** in the **Operation** column.
- Step 6** In the displayed dialog box, select **Use Download URL** for **Download Method**, click  to copy the URL, and click **OK**.

Figure 6-27 Selecting a download method



A valid URL for downloading the backup data is displayed.

- You can use various download tools, such as your browser and Xunlei to download backup files.
- You can also run the following command to download backup files:
wget -O FILE_NAME --no-check-certificate "DOWNLOAD_URL"

Parameter description:

FILE_NAME is the new name of the downloaded backup file. The original backup file name may be too long and exceed the maximum characters allowed by the client file system, so you are advised to rename the backup file.

DOWNLOAD_URL is the location of the backup file to be downloaded. If the location contains special characters, escape is required.

- Step 7** After the backup file is downloaded, decompress it using LZ4.

Run the following command to decompress the backup file:

```
lz4 -d $1 | tar -xC $2
```

\$1: indicates the downloaded backup file.

\$2: indicates the directory to which the backup file is decompressed.

Step 8 You can restore data locally as required.

For details, see the following documentation.

- [Restoring a Cluster Backup to an On-premises Database](#)
- [Restoring a Replica Set Backup to an On-Premises Database](#)

----End

7 Data Restorations

7.1 Solutions

DDS provides multiple data restoration solutions. You can select a proper solution to meet your service requirements.

 **NOTE**

By default, all DDS versions 3.2, 3.4, 4.0, 4.2, and 4.4 are supported unless otherwise specified.

Table 7-1 Solutions

Restoration Type	Instance Type and Version	Scenario
Restoring Data to a New Instance	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Cluster Replica set Single node 	You can restore an existing automated or manual backup file to a new instance.
Restoring Data to the Original Instance	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Cluster Replica set Single node 	You can restore an existing automated or manual backup file to the original instance.
Restoring Data to a Point in Time	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Cluster (versions 4.0 and 4.2) Replica set (versions 4.0 and 4.2) 	You can restore an instance to a point in time.
Restoring Database Tables to a Point in Time	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Replica set (version 4.0) 	You can restore a database table to a point in time.

Restoration Type	Instance Type and Version	Scenario
Restoring Data to an On-Premises Database	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Cluster (versions 3.4 and 4.0) Replica set (versions 3.4 and 4.0) Single node (versions 3.4 and 4.0) 	You can download a DDS backup file to your local PC and restore data to an on-premises database.
Restoring Data Using mongorestore	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Cluster Replica set Single node 	You can use tools provided by the MongoDB client to restore data.
Restoring Data Using mongoimport	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> Cluster Replica set Single node 	You can use tools provided by the MongoDB client to restore data.

7.2 Restoring Data to a New Instance

7.2.1 Restoring a Cluster Backup to a New Instance

DDS allows you to restore an existing automated or manual backup to a new instance. The restored data is the same as the backup data.

When you restore an instance from a backup file, a full backup file is downloaded from OBS and then restored to the instance at an average speed of 40 MB/s.

Precautions

To restore backup files to a new instance, your account balance must be greater than or equal to \$0 USD. You will pay for the new instance specifications.

Procedure



- Step 1** [Log in to the management console.](#)
- Step 2** Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.
- Step 3** Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.
- Step 4** On the **Instances** page, click the cluster instance name. Choose **Backups & Restorations** in the navigation pane, select the backup to be restored, and click **Restore**.

Figure 7-1 Restoring a cluster from a backup

Backup NameID	Backup Type	Backup Time	Status	Size	Backup Method	Description	Operation
[Redacted]	Automated	2023/05/15 10:13:48 - 2023/05/15...	Completed	288.49 KB	Physical	-	Download

Alternatively, on the navigation pane on the left, choose **Backups**. On the **Backups** page, locate the target backup on the **Clusters** tab and click **Restore** in the **Operation** column.

Figure 7-2 Restoring a cluster from a backup

Backup NameID	DB Instance NameID	DB Engine Version	Backup Type	Backup Time	Status	Size	Backup Method	Description	Operation
DDS-d81... ca7893p...	dds-e509 979fe2ba8ae...	Community Edition 4.2	Automated	Dec 06, 2023 01:20:21 ...	Completed	17.18 MB	Physical	-	Restore Download
DDS-d81... e1c22e...	dds-e509 979fe2ba8ae...	Community Edition 4.2	Automated	Dec 05, 2023 15:54:22 ...	Completed	360.88 KB	Physical	-	Restore Download

Step 5 In the **Restore DB Instance** dialog box, select **Create New Instance for Restoration Method** and click **OK**.

Figure 7-3 Restoring a cluster backup to a new instance

Restore DB Instance ✕

i When you restore the DB instance from a backup file, a full backup file is downloaded from OBS and then restored to the DB instance at an average speed of 40 MB/s.

DB Instance	Backup Name	DB Instance Name
	DDS-dds-ce25-20211227173050544	dds-ce25

Restoration Method: Create New Instance Restore to Original

OK
Cancel

Step 6 The **Create New Instance** page is displayed for you to create an instance using the backup data. The new DB instance is independent from the original one.

- You are recommended to deploy the restored DB instance in a different AZ to ensure that applications will not be adversely affected by the failure in any single AZ.
- The database type, DB instance type, compatible MongoDB version, storage engine, storage type, and shard quantity must be the same as those of the original and cannot be changed.
- The number of dds mongos nodes is 2 by default and ranges from 2 to 16. You can specify the quantity.
- The storage space is the same as that of the original shard node by default. You can increase the storage space, but you cannot reduce it.
- Other settings are the same as those of the original DB instance by default and can be modified. For details, see [Buying a Cluster Instance](#).

- A full backup is triggered after the new instance is created.

----End

7.2.2 Restoring a Replica Set Backup to a New Instance

DDS allows you to restore an existing automated or manual backup to a new instance. The restored data is the same as the backup data.

When you restore an instance from a backup file, a full backup file is downloaded from OBS and then restored to the instance at an average speed of 40 MB/s.


Precautions

To restore backup files to a new instance, your account balance must be greater than or equal to \$0 USD. You will pay for the new instance specifications.

Procedure

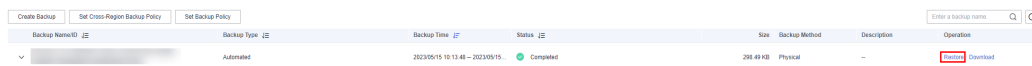
Step 1 Log in to the management console.

Step 2 Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

Step 3 Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

Step 4 On the **Instances** page, click the replica set instance. Choose **Backups & Restorations** in the navigation pane, select the backup to be restored, and click **Restore**.

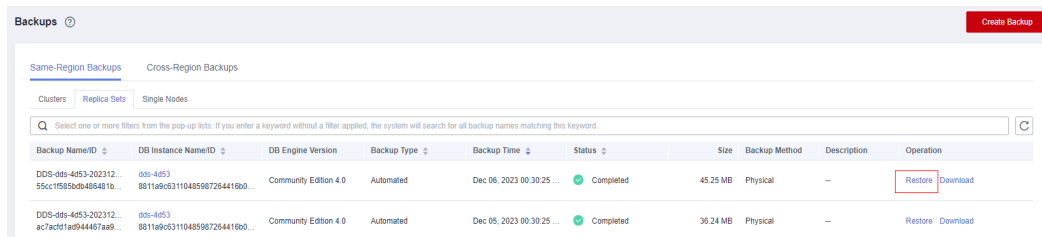
Figure 7-4 Restoring a replica set instance backup



Backup Name/ID	Backup Type	Backup Time	Status	Size	Backup Method	Description	Operation
	Automated	20230515 10:13:48 - 20230515	Completed	291.49 KB	Physical		Restore Download

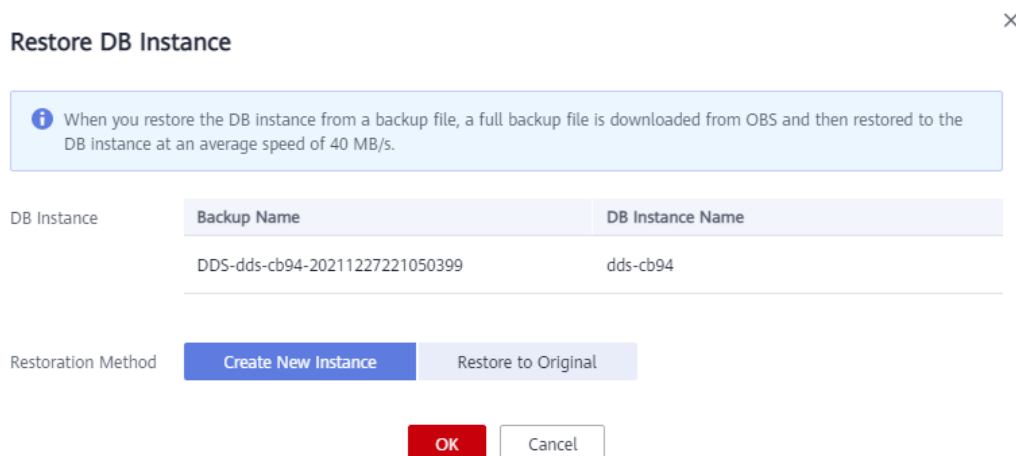
Alternatively, on the navigation pane on the left, choose **Backups**. On the **Backups** page, locate the backup on the **Replica Sets** tab and click **Restore** in the **Operation** column.

Figure 7-5 Restoring a replica set instance backup



Backup Name/ID	DB Instance Name/ID	DB Engine Version	Backup Type	Backup Time	Status	Size	Backup Method	Description	Operation
DDS-dbs-4053-202312-55cc1158560b489481b...	005-4053-8811a9c6311048598726441800...	Community Edition 4.0	Automated	Dec 06, 2023 00:30:25 ...	Completed	45.25 MB	Physical	--	Restore Download
DDS-dbs-4053-202312-ac7ac71fad944497aa9...	005-4053-8811a9c6311048598726441800...	Community Edition 4.0	Automated	Dec 05, 2023 00:30:25 ...	Completed	36.24 MB	Physical	--	Restore Download

Step 5 In the **Restore DB Instance** dialog box, select **Create New Instance** for **Restoration Method** and click **OK**.

Figure 7-6 Restoring to a new instance

- Step 6** The **Create New Instance** page is displayed for you to create an instance using the backup data. The new DB instance is independent from the original one.
- You are recommended to deploy the restored DB instance in a different AZ to ensure that applications will not be adversely affected by the failure in any single AZ.
 - The database type, DB instance type, compatible MongoDB version, storage engine, and storage type must be the same as those of the original and cannot be changed.
 - The storage space is the same as that of the original instance by default. You can increase the storage space, but you cannot reduce it.
 - Other settings have default values and can be modified. For details, see [Buying a Replica Set Instance](#).
 - A full backup is triggered after the new instance is created.

----End

7.2.3 Restoring a Single Node Backup to a New Instance

DDS allows you to restore an existing automated or manual backup to a new instance. The restored data is the same as the backup data.

When you restore an instance from a backup file, a full backup file is downloaded from OBS and then restored to the instance at an average speed of 40 MB/s.

NOTE

Huawei Cloud has discontinued the sale of DDS single node instances since July 15, 2023.


Precautions

To restore backup files to a new instance, your account balance must be greater than or equal to \$0 USD. You will pay for the new instance specifications.

Procedure

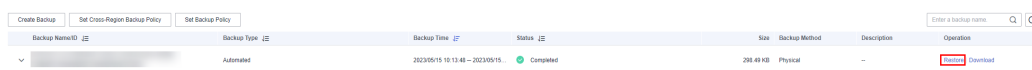
- Step 1** [Log in to the management console](#).

Step 2 Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

Step 3 Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

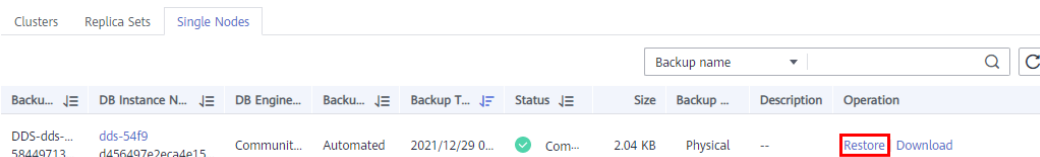
Step 4 On the **Instances** page, click the single node instance name. Choose **Backups & Restorations** in the navigation pane, select the backup to be restored, and click **Restore**.

Figure 7-7 Restoring a single node backup



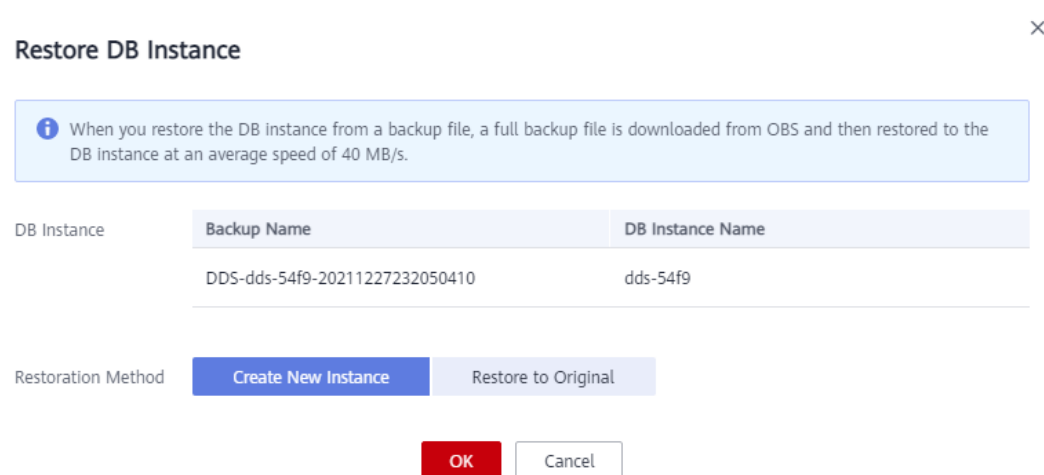
Alternatively, on the navigation pane on the left, choose **Backups**. On the **Backups** page, locate the target backup on the **Single Nodes** tab and click **Restore** in the **Operation** column.

Figure 7-8 Restoring a single node backup



Step 5 In the **Restore DB Instance** dialog box, select **Create New Instance** for **Restoration Method** and click **OK**.

Figure 7-9 Restoring a single node backup to a new instance



Step 6 The **Create New Instance** page is displayed for you to create an instance using the backup data. The new DB instance is independent from the original one.

- You are recommended to deploy the restored DB instance in a different AZ to ensure that applications will not be adversely affected by the failure in any single AZ.

- The database type, DB instance type, compatible MongoDB version, storage engine, and storage type must be the same as those of the original and cannot be changed.
- The storage space is the same as that of the original instance by default. You can increase the storage space, but you cannot reduce it.
- A full backup is triggered after the new instance is created.

----End

7.2.4 Restoring a Cross-Region Backup to a New DB Instance

DDS allows you to restore an existing automated backup to a new instance. The restored data is the same as the backup data.


When you restore an instance from a backup file, a full backup file is downloaded from OBS and then restored to the instance at an average speed of 40 MB/s.


Precautions

To restore backup files to a new instance, your account balance must be greater than or equal to \$0 USD. You will pay for the new instance specifications.

Procedure

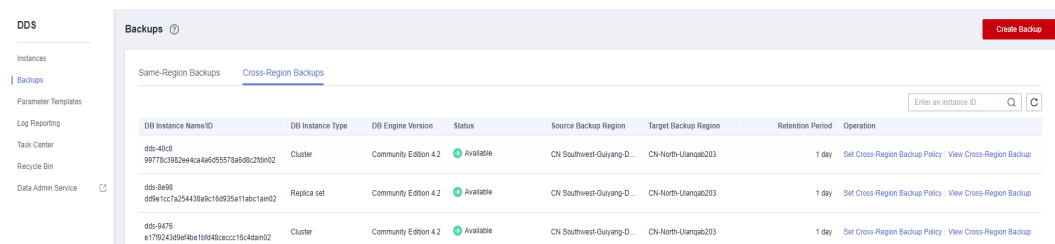
Step 1 [Log in to the management console.](#)

Step 2 Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

Step 3 Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service.**

Step 4 On the **Instances** page, choose **Backups** on the navigation pane. Click the **Cross-Region Backups** tab. On the displayed page, locate the target DB instance and click **View Cross-Region Backup** in the **Operation** column.

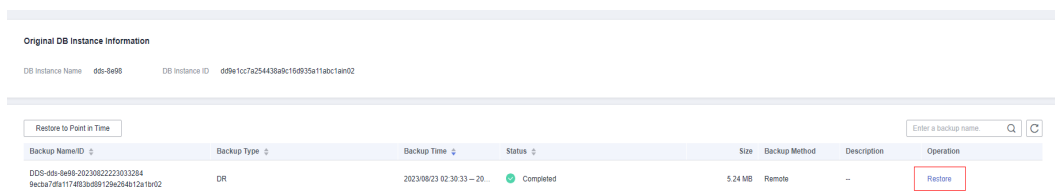
Figure 7-10 Cross-region backups



DB Instance Name/ID	DB Instance Type	DB Engine Version	Status	Source Backup Region	Target Backup Region	Retention Period	Operation
dds-4f08 9977b29b2ee4ca4a955579a959c259102	Cluster	Community Edition 4.2	Available	CN Southwest-Guiyang-D...	CN-North-Ulanqab203	1 day	Set Cross-Region Backup Policy View Cross-Region Backup
dds-9e98 dd9e1cc7a254438a9c16d9935a11abc1am02	Replica set	Community Edition 4.2	Available	CN Southwest-Guiyang-D...	CN-North-Ulanqab203	1 day	Set Cross-Region Backup Policy View Cross-Region Backup
dds-9475 e179243d9df4be1b5484cecc016c4d9m02	Cluster	Community Edition 4.2	Available	CN Southwest-Guiyang-D...	CN-North-Ulanqab203	1 day	Set Cross-Region Backup Policy View Cross-Region Backup

Step 5 Locate the backup to be restored and click **Restore** in the **Operation** column.

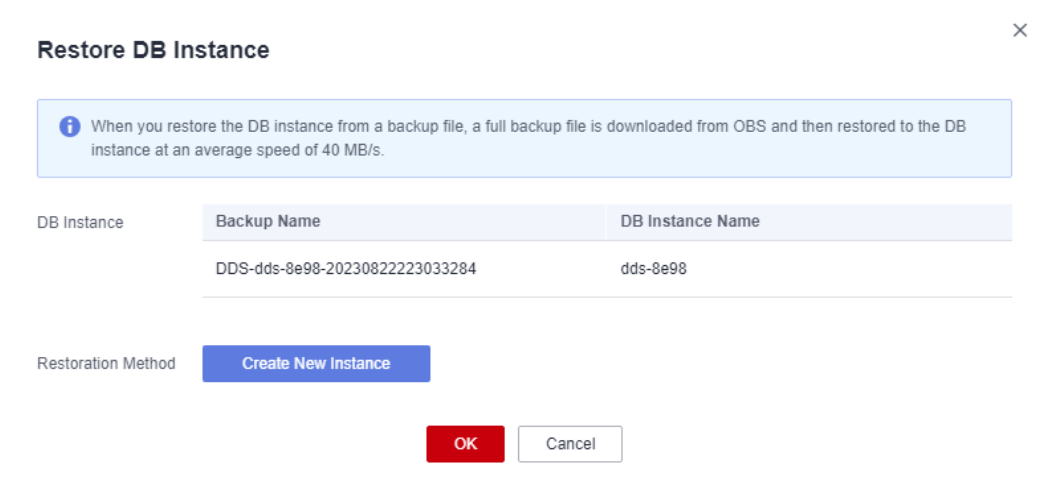
Figure 7-11 Restoring a cross-region backup



Backup Name/ID	Backup Type	Backup Time	Status	Size	Backup Method	Description	Operation
DDS-dds-9e98-20230822223033284 9ecba77da117483bd98129e264b12a1b02	DR	2023/08/23 02:30:33 -- 20...	Completed	5.24 MB	Remote	--	Restore

Step 6 In the **Restore DB Instance** dialog box, select **Create New Instance** for **Restoration Method** and click **OK**.

Figure 7-12 Restoring a cross-region backup to a new DB instance



Step 7 The **Create New Instance** page is displayed for you to create an instance using the backup data. The new DB instance is independent from the original one.

- You are recommended to deploy the restored DB instance in a different AZ to ensure that applications will not be adversely affected by the failure in any single AZ.
- The database type, DB instance type, compatible MongoDB version, storage engine, storage type, and shard quantity must be the same as those of the original and cannot be changed.
- The storage space is the same as that of the original instance by default. You can increase the storage space, but you cannot reduce it.
- Other settings are the same as those of the original DB instance by default and can be modified. For details, see [Buying a Cluster Instance](#) or [Buying a Replica Set Instance](#).
- A full backup is triggered after the new instance is created.

----End

7.3 Restoring Data to the Original Instance

7.3.1 Restoring a Cluster Backup to the Original Instance

DDS allows you to restore an existing automated or manual backup to an original instance. The restored data is the same as the backup data.

When you restore an instance from a backup file, a full backup file is downloaded from OBS and then restored to the instance at an average speed of 40 MB/s.


Precautions

- Restoring backup data to the original instance will overwrite existing data on the instance and cause the instance to be unavailable during the restoration. Exercise caution when performing this operation.
- The administrator password of the instance remains unchanged after the restoration.
- If you restore a manual backup, check whether the instance to which the manual backup belongs exists. If the instance does not exist, the backup can only be restored to a new instance.
- If a cluster DB instance have read replicas associated, backup data can only be restored to a new DB instance.

Procedure

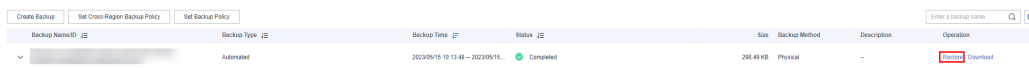
Step 1 [Log in to the management console.](#)

Step 2 Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

Step 3 Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service.**

Step 4 On the **Instances** page, click the cluster instance name. Choose **Backups & Restorations** in the navigation pane on the left, select the backup to be restored, and click **Restore.**

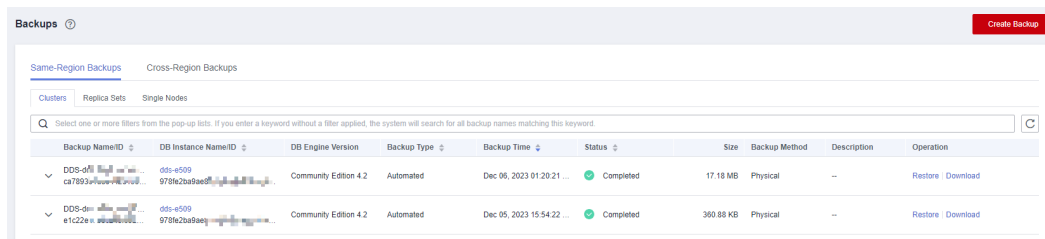
Figure 7-13 Restoring a cluster from a backup



Backup NameID	Backup Type	Backup Time	Status	Size	Backup Method	Description	Operation
[Redacted]	Automated	2023/05/15 10:13:48 -- 2023/05/15	Completed	281.49 KB	Physical	--	Restore Download

Alternatively, on the navigation pane on the left, choose **Backups.** On the **Backups** page, locate the target backup on the **Clusters** tab and click **Restore** in the **Operation** column.

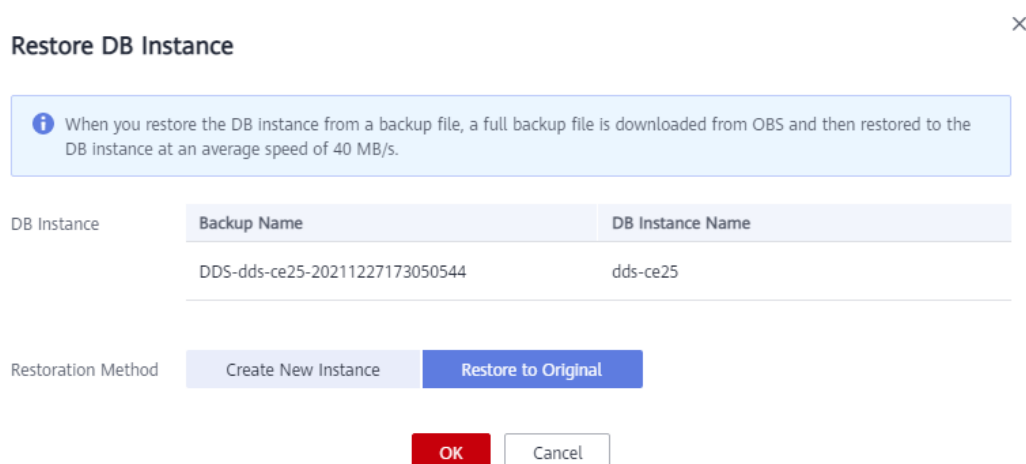
Figure 7-14 Restoring a cluster from a backup



Backup NameID	DB Instance NameID	DB Engine Version	Backup Type	Backup Time	Status	Size	Backup Method	Description	Operation
DDS-df1-ca7893a1...	dds-e509-978fe2ba9ac...	Community Edition 4.2	Automated	Dec 06, 2023 01:20:21 ...	Completed	17.18 MB	Physical	--	Restore Download
DDS-df1-e1c22a...	dds-e509-978fe2ba9ac...	Community Edition 4.2	Automated	Dec 05, 2023 15:54:22 ...	Completed	360.88 KB	Physical	--	Restore Download

Step 5 In the **Restore DB Instance** dialog box, select **Restore to Original** for **Restoration Method** and click **OK.**

Figure 7-15 Restore to Original



- On the **Instances** page, the status of the instance changes from **Restoring** to **Available**.
- After the restoration is complete, a full backup will be automatically triggered.

----End

7.3.2 Restoring a Replica Set Backup to the Original Instance

DDS allows you to restore an existing automated or manual backup to an original instance. The restored data is the same as the backup data.

When you restore an instance from a backup file, a full backup file is downloaded from OBS and then restored to the instance at an average speed of 40 MB/s.


Precautions

- Restoring backup data to the original instance will overwrite existing data on the instance and cause the instance to be unavailable during the restoration. Exercise caution when performing this operation.
- The administrator password of the instance remains unchanged after the restoration.
- If you restore a manual backup, check whether the instance to which the manual backup belongs exists. If the instance does not exist, the backup can only be restored to a new instance.

Procedure

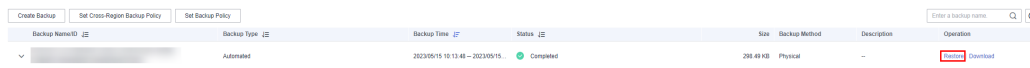
Step 1 [Log in to the management console](#).

Step 2 Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

Step 3 Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

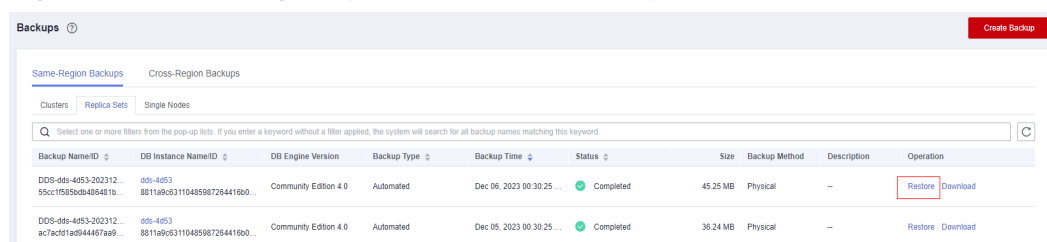
Step 4 On the **Instances** page, click the replica set instance. Choose **Backups & Restorations** in the navigation pane on the left, select the backup to be restored, and click **Restore**.

Figure 7-16 Restoring a replica set instance backup



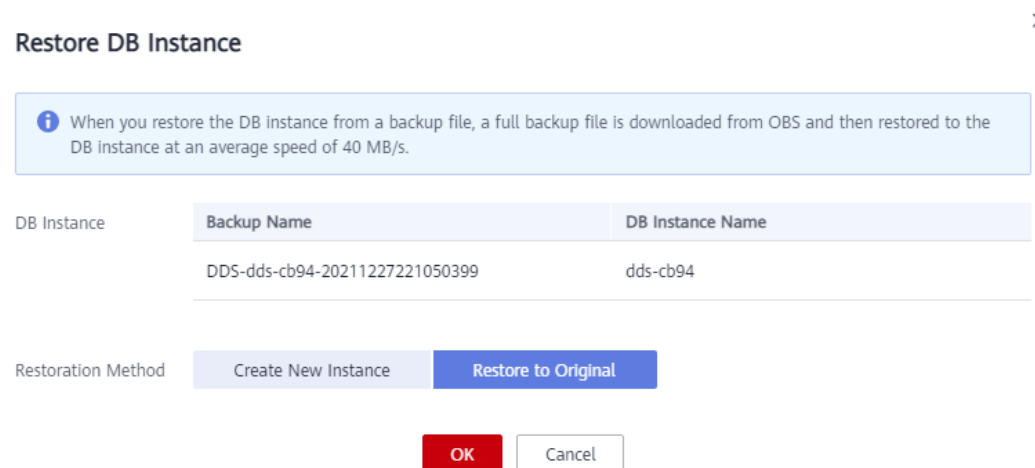
Alternatively, on the navigation pane on the left, choose **Backups**. On the **Backups** page, locate the backup on the **Replica Sets** tab and click **Restore** in the **Operation** column.

Figure 7-17 Restoring a replica set instance backup



Step 5 In the **Restore DB Instance** dialog box, select **Restore to Original** for **Restoration Method** and click **OK**.

Figure 7-18 Restore to Original



- On the **Instances** page, the status of the instance changes from **Restoring** to **Available**.
- After the restoration is complete, a full backup will be automatically triggered.

----End

7.3.3 Restoring a Single Node Backup to the Original Instance

DDS allows you to restore an existing automated or manual backup to an original instance. The restored data is the same as the backup data.

When you restore an instance from a backup file, a full backup file is downloaded from OBS and then restored to the instance at an average speed of 40 MB/s.

NOTE

Huawei Cloud has discontinued the sale of DDS single node instances since July 15, 2023.


Precautions

- Restoring backup data to the original instance will overwrite existing data on the instance and cause the instance to be unavailable during the restoration. Exercise caution when performing this operation.
- The administrator password of the instance remains unchanged after the restoration.
- If you restore a manual backup, check whether the instance to which the manual backup belongs exists. If the instance does not exist, the backup can only be restored to a new instance.

Procedure

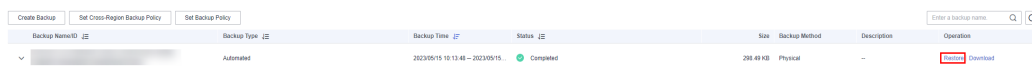
Step 1 [Log in to the management console.](#)

Step 2 Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

Step 3 Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

Step 4 On the **Instances** page, click the single node instance name. Choose **Backups & Restorations** in the navigation pane on the left, select the backup to be restored, and click **Restore**.

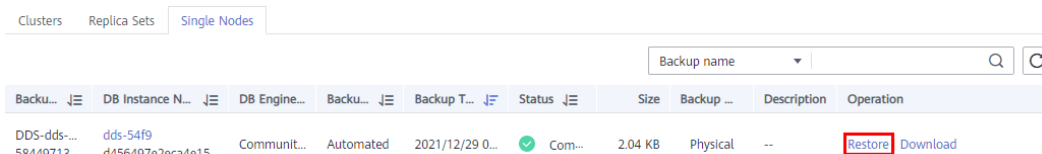
Figure 7-19 Restoring a single node backup



Backup Name/ID	Backup Type	Backup Time	Status	Size	Backup Method	Description	Operation
...	Automated	2023/05/15 10:13:48 - 2023/05/15...	Completed	281.49 KB	Physical	--	Download

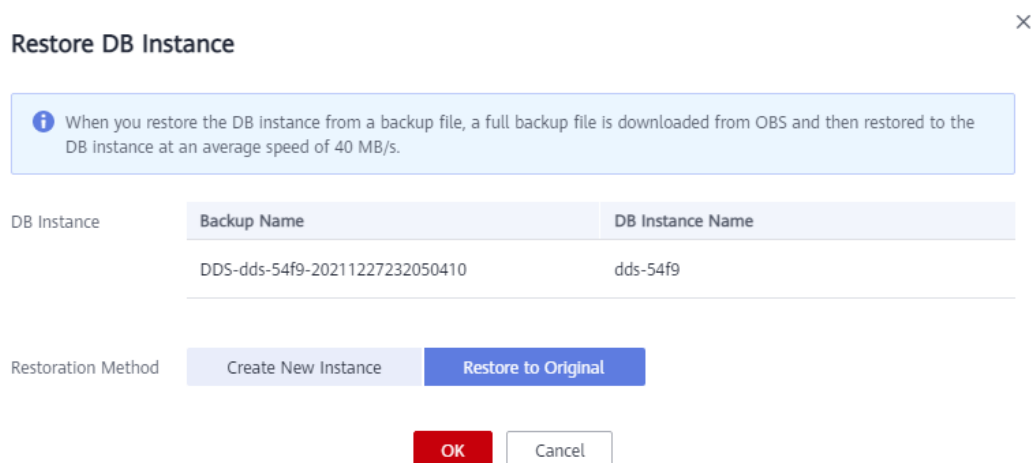
Alternatively, on the navigation pane on the left, choose **Backups**. On the **Backups** page, locate the target backup on the **Single Nodes** tab and click **Restore** in the **Operation** column.

Figure 7-20 Restoring a single node backup



Backu...	DB Instance N...	DB Engine...	Backu...	Backup T...	Status	Size	Backup ...	Description	Operation
DDS-dds-... 58449713...	dds-54f9 d456497e2eca4e15...	Communit...	Automated	2021/12/29 0...	Com...	2.04 KB	Physical	--	Restore Download

Step 5 In the **Restore DB Instance** dialog box, select **Restore to Original** for **Restoration Method** and click **OK**.

Figure 7-21 Restore to Original

- On the **Instances** page, the status of the instance changes from **Restoring** to **Available**.
- After the restoration is complete, a full backup will be automatically triggered.

----End

7.4 Restoring Data to a Point in Time

7.4.1 Restoring a Cluster Instance to a Point in Time

DDS allows you to restore cluster instances to a point in time.

When you enter the point in time that you want to restore the instance to, DDS downloads the most recent full backup file from OBS to the instance. Then, incremental backups are also restored to the specified point in time on the instance. Data is restored at an average speed of 30 MB/s.

Precautions

- To use this function, contact customer service to apply for the corresponding permission.
- Only cluster instances of versions 4.0, 4.2, and 4.4 can be restored to a point in time.
- Data can be restored to a specific point in time only after the automated and incremental backup policies are enabled.
- Data can be restored to a new instance or the original instance.
- To ensure data security, the dropDatabase operation is blocked when the incremental backup is restored to a point in time. Empty databases or views may exist after the restoration. You can delete them.
- Data cannot be restored to a point in time in any of the following scenarios: rename operation, collmod operation, creating a user, deleting a user, creating a role, deleting a role, enabling shard IP addresses of a cluster instance,


changing the password of the shard node user, enabling config IP addresses of a cluster instance, changing the password of the config node user, and changing the password of the **rwuser** user. When a restricted scenario occurs, the incremental backup stops. After the next automated full backup, the incremental backup resumes.

Procedure

Step 1 Log in to the management console.

Step 2 Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

If you want compute and network resources dedicated to your exclusive use, [enable a DeC](#) and [apply for DCC resources](#). After enabling a DeC, you can select the DeC region and project.

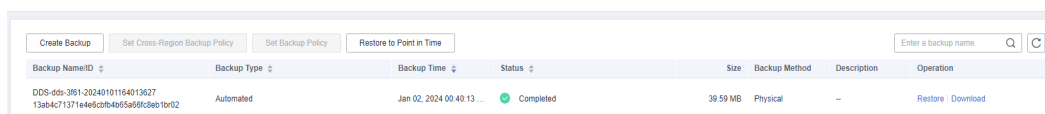
Step 3 Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

Step 4 On the **Instances** page, click the cluster instance name.

Step 5 In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Backups & Restorations**.

Step 6 On the **Backups & Restorations** page, click **Restore to Point in Time**.

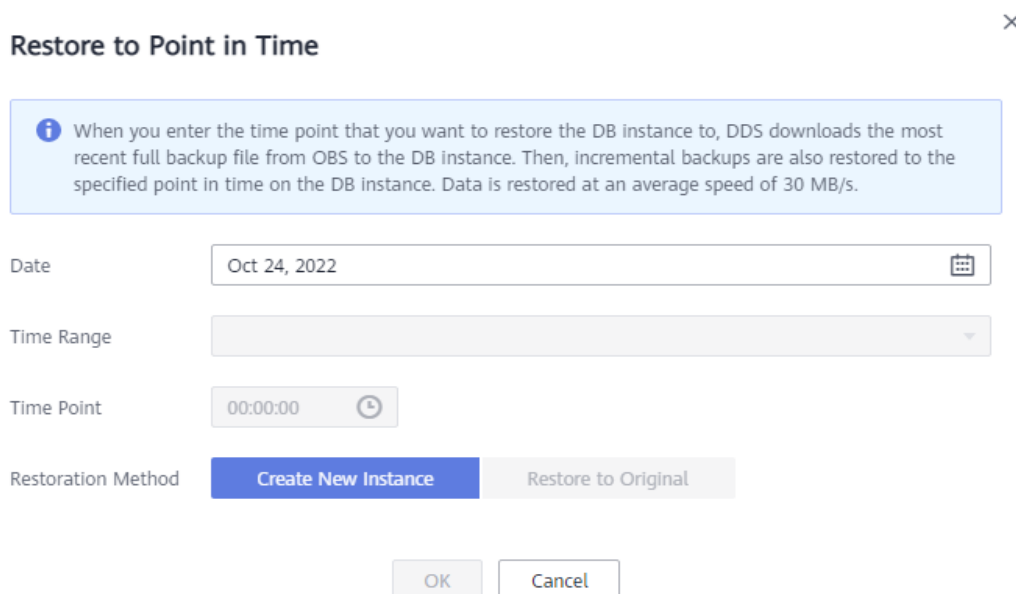
Figure 7-22 Restoring a cluster instance to a point in time



Backup Name/ID	Backup Type	Backup Time	Status	Size	Backup Method	Description	Operation
DDS-d4b-3851-20240101164013627 13ab4c71371e4e6c0b4e65a69c8eb1br02	Automated	Jan 02, 2024 00:40:13 ...	Completed	39.59 MB	Physical	--	Restore Download


Step 7 Select the date and time range, select or enter a time point within the acceptable range, and select **Create New Instance** or **Restore to Original**.

Figure 7-23 Restoring to a point in time




Restore to Point in Time ✕

i When you enter the time point that you want to restore the DB instance to, DDS downloads the most recent full backup file from OBS to the DB instance. Then, incremental backups are also restored to the specified point in time on the DB instance. Data is restored at an average speed of 30 MB/s.

Date: 

Time Range:

Time Point: 

Restoration Method:

Step 8 On the displayed page, the instance is restored based on the restoration method you selected in [Step 7](#).

- Create New Instance

The **Create New Instance** page is displayed for you to create an instance using the backup data. The new instance is independent from the original one.

- You are recommended to deploy the restored instance in a different AZ to ensure that applications will not be adversely affected by the failure in any single AZ.
- The database type, DB instance type, compatible MongoDB version, storage engine, and storage type must be the same as those of the original and cannot be changed.
- The storage space is the same as that of the original instance by default. You can increase the storage space, but you cannot reduce it.
- Other settings can be modified. For details, see [Buying a Cluster Instance](#).

- Restore to Original

Check that the status of the instance on the **Instances** page is **Restoring**.

NOTICE

- Restoring backup data to the original instance will overwrite existing data on the instance and cause the instance to be unavailable during the restoration. Exercise caution when performing this operation.
 - The administrator password of the instance remains unchanged after the restoration.
-

----End

7.4.2 Restoring a Replica Set Instance to a Point in Time

You can restore a replica set instance to a specific point in time.

When you enter the point in time that you want to restore the instance to, DDS downloads the most recent full backup file from OBS to the instance. Then, incremental backups are also restored to the specified point in time on the instance. Data is restored at an average speed of 30 MB/s.

Precautions


- Currently, you can restore a replica set instance to a new or original DB instance at a point in time.
- Only replica set instances of versions 4.0, 4.2, and 4.4 can be restored to a point in time.
- Data can be restored to a specific point in time only after the automated backup policy is enabled.
- The local database is not included in the databases that can be restored to a specified time point.

- To ensure data security, the dropDatabase operation is blocked when the incremental backup is restored to a point in time. Empty databases or views may exist after the restoration. You can delete them.
- Only whitelisted users can use this function. You need to submit a service ticket to apply for this function. In the upper right corner of the management console, choose [Service Tickets > Create Service Ticket](#) to submit a service ticket.

Procedure

Step 1 [Log in to the management console.](#)

Step 2 Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

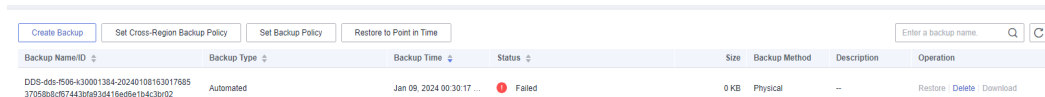
Step 3 Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service.**

Step 4 On the **Instances** page, click the replica set instance name.

Step 5 In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Backups & Restorations.**

Step 6 On the **Backups & Restorations** page, click **Restore to Point in Time.**

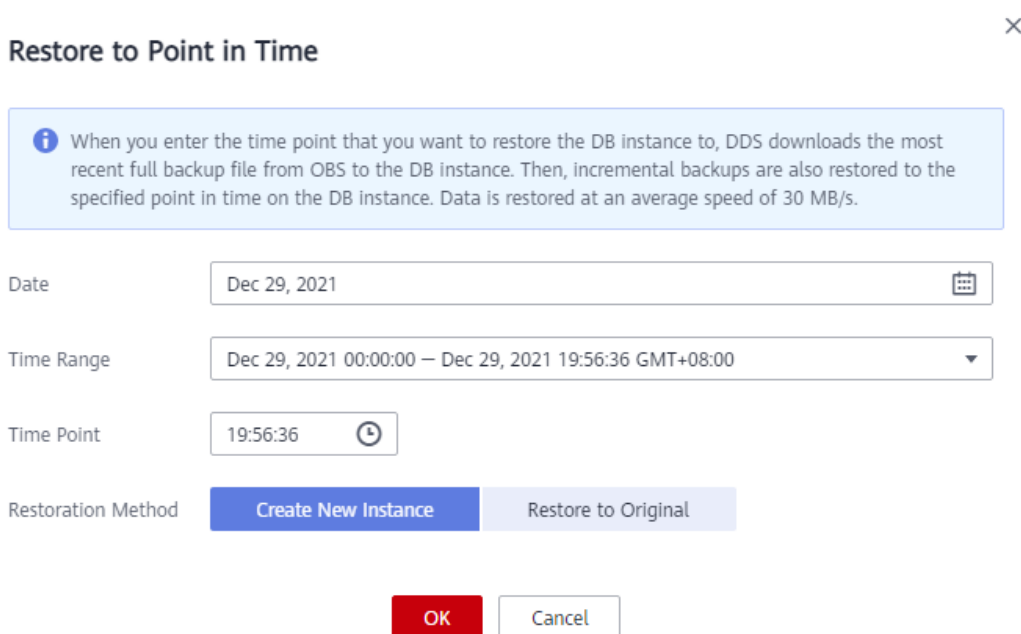
Figure 7-24 Restoring to a point in time



Backup Name/ID	Backup Type	Backup Time	Status	Size	Backup Method	Description	Operation
DDS-dbs-f505-k30001384-20240108163017685 3705880c674430f993d416e95e1b4c3br02	Automated	Jan 09, 2024 00:30:17...	Failed	0 KB	Physical	--	Restore Delete Download

Step 7 Select the date and time range, select or enter a time point within the acceptable range, and select **Create New Instance** or **Restore to Original**.

Figure 7-25 Restoring to a point in time



Restore to Point in Time ✕

i When you enter the time point that you want to restore the DB instance to, DDS downloads the most recent full backup file from OBS to the DB instance. Then, incremental backups are also restored to the specified point in time on the DB instance. Data is restored at an average speed of 30 MB/s.

Date

Time Range

Time Point

Restoration Method

Step 8 On the displayed page, the DB instance is restored based on the restoration method you selected in [Step 7](#).

- Create New Instance

The **Create New Instance** page is displayed for you to create an instance using the backup data. The new DB instance is independent from the original one.

- You are recommended to deploy the restored DB instance in a different AZ to ensure that applications will not be adversely affected by the failure in any single AZ.
- The database type, DB instance type, compatible MongoDB version, storage engine, and storage type must be the same as those of the original and cannot be changed.
- The storage space is the same as that of the original instance by default. You can increase the storage space, but you cannot reduce it.
- Other settings have default values and can be modified. For details, see [Buying a Replica Set Instance](#).

- Restore to Original

NOTICE

- Restoring backup data to the original instance will overwrite existing data on the instance and cause the instance to be unavailable during the restoration. Exercise caution when performing this operation.
- The administrator password of the instance remains unchanged after the restoration.
- If the backup method is logical backup, the backup cannot be restored to the original instance.

Check that the status of the DB instance on the **Instances** page is **Restoring**.

----End

7.4.3 Restoring a Replica Set Database and Table to a Point in Time

To ensure data integrity and reduce impact on the original instance performance, the system restores the full and incremental data at the selected time point to a temporary instance, automatically exports the databases and tables to be restored, and then restores the databases and tables to the original instance. The time required depends on the amount of data to be backed up and restored on the instance. Please wait.

Restoring databases and tables will not overwrite data in the instance. You can select databases and tables to be restored.


Precautions


- Currently, only replica set instances of version 4.0, 4.2, or 4.4 support the point-in-time recovery at the database and table level.

- Before performing the restoration, you need enable the automated backup policy.
- After a successful restoration, a new table named **Original table name_bak_Timestamp** is generated in the instance by default. If the table contains an index, the namespace of the index is changed to **Original database name.Original table name_bak_Timestamp**. You can rename the table later as required.
- New databases and tables will be generated in the original DB instance. Ensure that sufficient storage space is available.
- The length of **<Database name>.<Table name>** cannot exceed 120 characters. The length of **<Database name>.<Table name>.<Index name>** cannot exceed 128 characters, or the restoration may fail.
- Ensure that the name of the restored table is different from that of the existing table, or the restoration may fail.
- If you perform a table-level restoration and the table does not exist at the required point in time, an empty table is automatically created. If you perform a database-level restoration, the missing table is not created.
- Only whitelisted users can use this function. You need to submit a service ticket to apply for this function. In the upper right corner of the management console, choose **Service Tickets > Create Service Ticket** to submit a service ticket.

Procedure

Step 1 [Log in to the management console.](#)

Step 2 Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

Step 3 Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

Step 4 On the **Instances** page, click the replica set instance.

Step 5 In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Backups & Restorations**.

Step 6 On the **Backups & Restorations** page, click **Restore Database and Table**.

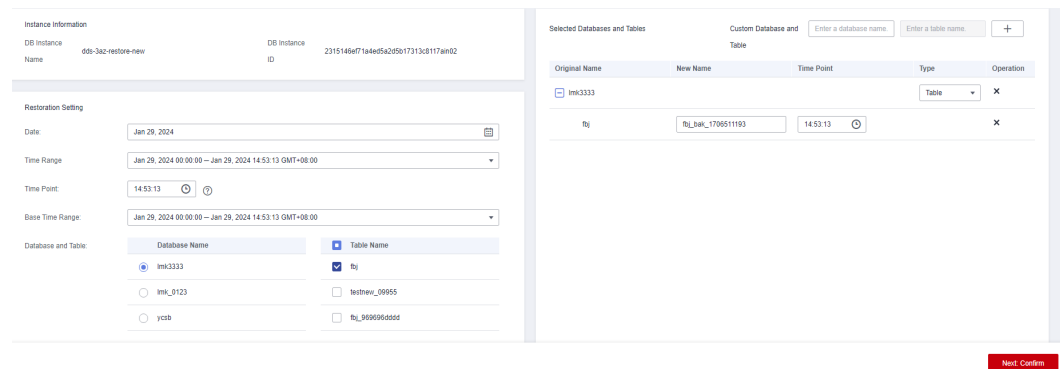
Step 7 In the displayed dialog box, configure parameters as required. The data in the new database and table is the same as that in the database and table at the selected time point.

Table 7-2 Database information

Parameter	Description
Date	Date when the automated backup of the DB instance is generated.
Time Range	Time range during which the automated backup can be restored.

Parameter	Description
Time Point	The specific point in time when the automated full backup is generated.
Base Time Range	Time range during which the database and table can be restored based on the automated full backup.
Database and Table	Databases and tables that have been automatically backed up within the base time range are displayed on the left. Select the databases and tables on the left to sync information to the area on the right.
Time Point	The point in time within the base time range.
Custom Database and Table	<p>You can add custom databases and tables as required.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The system databases cannot be restored. Therefore, the database name cannot be admin, local, or config. The database name cannot contain spaces and the following special characters: ".\ /\$ The table name cannot contain spaces and the following special characters: ".\ /\$ The length of <i><Database name>.<Table name></i> cannot exceed 120 characters. The length of <i><Database name>.<Table name>.<Index name></i> cannot exceed 128 characters, or the restoration may fail. Ensure that the name of the restored table is different from that of the existing table. Otherwise, the restoration may fail. After a successful restoration, a new table named <i>Original table name_bak_Timestamp</i> is generated in the instance by default. If the table contains an index, the namespace of the index is changed to <i>Original database name.Original table name_bak_Timestamp</i>. You can rename the table later as required. <p>To distinguish the point in time of the custom databases and tables from those synchronized on the right, set the point in time to a different value. The system restores data to the custom databases and tables based on the time configured here.</p>
Type	<p>You can restore data to a database or table.</p> <p>If you perform a table-level restoration and the table does not exist at the required point in time, an empty table is automatically created. If you perform a database-level restore, data will be restored to the database separately, and the table will not be created.</p>

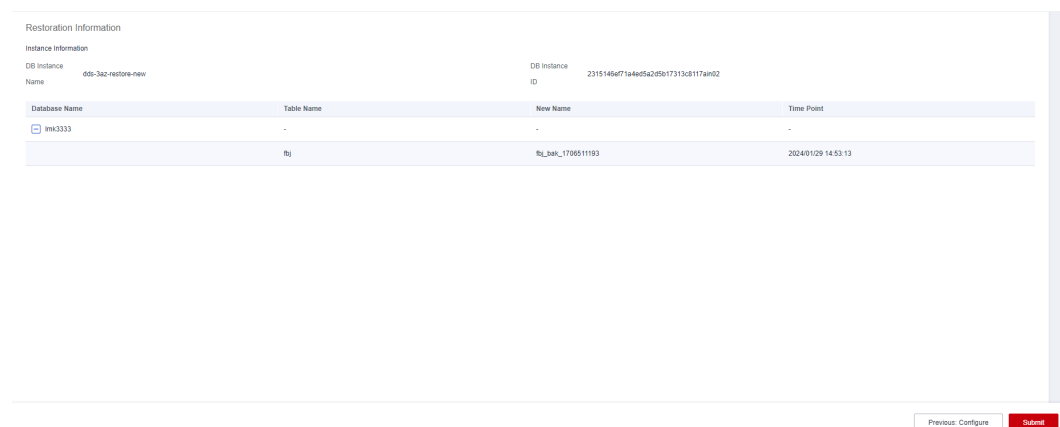
Figure 7-26 Selecting database and table



Step 8 Click **Next: Confirm**.

Step 9 Click **Submit** to start the restoration.

Figure 7-27 Confirming the information



Step 10 On the **Instances** page, the DB instance status is **Restoring**. During the restoration process, services are not interrupted.

Step 11 After the restoration is successful, manage data in the database and table as required.

If you need to use the original database and table names, you can use a rename operation to back up the original database and table and switch your service to the restored database and table. Then, delete the original database and table after ensuring that your services are normal.

Example:

```
db.adminCommand({renameCollection: "db1.test1", to: "db2.test2"})
```

The above command is used to move the **test1** table from the **db1** database to the **db2** database and rename the table to **test2**.

----End

7.4.4 Restoring a Cross-Region Backup to a Point in Time

DDS allows you to restore cross-region backups to a point in time.

When you enter the point in time that you want to restore the instance to, DDS downloads the most recent full backup file from OBS to the instance. Then, incremental backups are also restored to the specified point in time on the instance. Data is restored at an average speed of 30 MB/s.


Precautions

- To restore backup files to a new instance, your account balance must be greater than or equal to \$0 USD. You will pay for the new instance specifications.
- Only cluster and replica set instances of versions 4.0 and 4.2 can be restored to a point in time.
- Cluster instances can be restored to a specific point in time only after the automated and incremental backup policies are enabled.
- Replica set instances can be restored to a specific point in time only after the automated backup policy is enabled.
- The local database is not included in the databases that can be restored to a specified time point.
- To ensure data security, the dropDatabase operation is blocked when the incremental backup is restored to a point in time. Empty databases or views may exist after the restoration. You can delete them.
- Only whitelisted users can use this function. You need to submit a service ticket to apply for this function. In the upper right corner of the management console, choose [Service Tickets > Create Service Ticket](#) to submit a service ticket.

Procedure

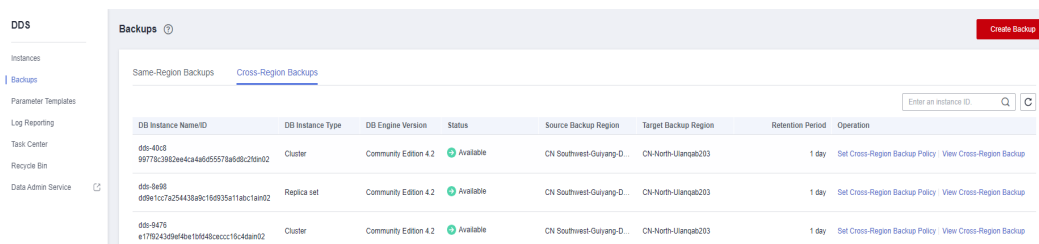
Step 1 [Log in to the management console](#).

Step 2 Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

Step 3 Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

Step 4 On the **Instances** page, choose **Backups** on the navigation pane. Click the **Cross-Region Backups** tab. On the displayed page, locate the target DB instance and click **View Cross-Region Backup** in the **Operation** column.

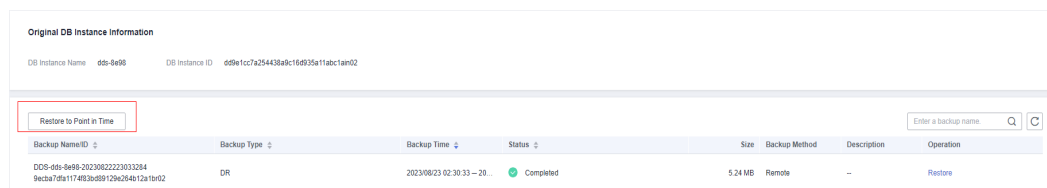
Figure 7-28 Cross-region backups



DB Instance Name/ID	DB Instance Type	DB Engine Version	Status	Source Backup Region	Target Backup Region	Retention Period	Operation
dds-49c8 99778c3982ee4ca4a6d55578a699c269f02	Cluster	Community Edition 4.2	Available	CN_Southwest-Guiyang-D...	CN-North-Ulanqab203	1 day	Set Cross-Region Backup Policy View Cross-Region Backup
dds-8e88 d89e1c07a254438a9c169935a11abc1am02	Replica set	Community Edition 4.2	Available	CN_Southwest-Guiyang-D...	CN-North-Ulanqab203	1 day	Set Cross-Region Backup Policy View Cross-Region Backup
dds-9476 e179243d9ef8e1e1e48c0ccc1fcd4am02	Cluster	Community Edition 4.2	Available	CN_Southwest-Guiyang-D...	CN-North-Ulanqab203	1 day	Set Cross-Region Backup Policy View Cross-Region Backup

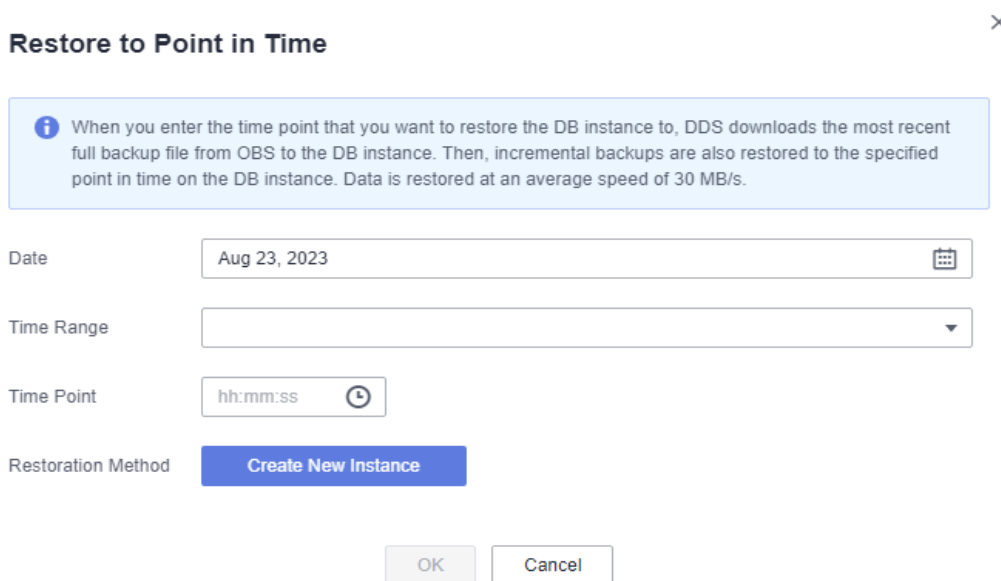
Step 5 Locate the backup to be restored and click **Restore to Point in Time**.

Figure 7-29 Restoring a cross-region backup



Step 6 In the **Restore to Point in Time** dialog box, select **Create New Instance** for **Restoration Method** and click **OK**.

Figure 7-30 Restoring a cross-region backup to a point in time



Step 7 The **Create New Instance** page is displayed for you to create an instance using the backup data. The new DB instance is independent from the original one.

- You are recommended to deploy the restored DB instance in a different AZ to ensure that applications will not be adversely affected by the failure in any single AZ.
- The database type, DB instance type, compatible MongoDB version, storage engine, storage type, and shard quantity must be the same as those of the original and cannot be changed.
- The storage space is the same as that of the original instance by default. You can increase the storage space, but you cannot reduce it.
- Other settings are the same as those of the original DB instance by default and can be modified. For details, see [Buying a Cluster Instance](#) or [Buying a Replica Set Instance](#).
- A full backup is triggered after the new instance is created.

----End

7.5 Restoring Data to an On-Premises Database

7.5.1 Restoring a Cluster Backup to an On-premises Database

7.5.1.1 Overview

This section uses the Linux operating system as an example to describe how to restore the downloaded backup file of a cluster to your on-premises database. For details about how to download backup files, see [Downloading Backup Files](#).

Precautions

- This method applies only to cluster instances.
- Only DDS 3.4 and 4.0 instances can be restored in this method. DDS 4.2 does not support this method.
- The directories, IP addresses, and ports provided in the example are for reference only. Configure these items based on your service requirements.
- There is one backup file of the configsvr node and multiple backup files of the shardsvr node. The number of backup files depends on the number of shardsvr nodes.
- After the backup file is downloaded, decompress the file using LZ4. Command for reference: `lz4 -d $1 | tar -xC $2`
`$1`: indicates the downloaded backup file.
`$2`: indicates the directory to which the backup file is decompressed.
- For details about how to migrate data at the database or collection level, see [Migrating Data Using mongodump and mongorestore](#).

Prerequisites

MongoDB client 3.4 or 4.0 has been installed on your on-premises database.

7.5.1.2 Directories and Configurations

NOTICE

The local directory, configuration file, and configuration information are not fixed and can be customized.

The following uses backup files of two shardsvr cluster instances as an example (instance ID: cac1efc8e65e42ecad8953352321bfeein02).

- Directory of the decompressed backup files of the configsvr node: `/compile/download/backups/cac1efc8e65e42ecad8953352321bfeein02_41c8a32fb10245899708dea453a8c5c9no02`
- Directory of the decompressed backup files of the shardsvr1 node: `/compile/download/backups/cac1efc8e65e42ecad8953352321bfeein02_6cfa6167d4114d7c8cec5b47f9a78dc5no02`

- Directory of the decompressed backup files of the shardsvr2 node:
/compile/download/backups/
cac1efc8e65e42ecad8953352321bfeein02_92b196d2401041a7af869a2a3cab70
79no02

Data directories and log directories of the three configsvr nodes

```
/compile/cluster-restore/cfg1/data/db  
/compile/cluster-restore/cfg1/log  
/compile/cluster-restore/cfg2/data/db  
/compile/cluster-restore/cfg2/log  
/compile/cluster-restore/cfg3/data/db  
/compile/cluster-restore/cfg3/log
```

Data directories and log directories of the three nodes of shardsvr1

```
/compile/cluster-restore/shd11/data/db  
/compile/cluster-restore/shd11/log  
/compile/cluster-restore/shd12/data/db  
/compile/cluster-restore/shd12/log  
/compile/cluster-restore/shd13/data/db  
/compile/cluster-restore/shd13/log
```

Data directories and log directories of the three nodes of shardsvr2

```
/compile/cluster-restore/shd21/data/db  
/compile/cluster-restore/shd21/log  
/compile/cluster-restore/shd22/data/db  
/compile/cluster-restore/shd22/log  
/compile/cluster-restore/shd23/data/db  
/compile/cluster-restore/shd23/log
```

Log directories of the dds mongos node

```
/compile/cluster-restore/mgs1/log  
/compile/cluster-restore/mgs2/log
```

IP Address and Port Information

The IP address bound to the process is 127.0.0.1. The port numbers are allocated as follows:

- dds mongos node: 40301, 40302
- configsvr node: 40303, 40304, 40305
- shardsvr1: 40306, 40307, and 40308
- shardsvr2: 40309, 40310, and 40311

Configuration file description

- Configuration file of a single node and configuration files of three nodes in the configsvr replica set
/compile/mongodb/mongodb-src-4.0.3/restoreconfig/single_40303.yaml
/compile/mongodb/mongodb-src-4.0.3/restoreconfig/configsvr_40303.yaml
/compile/mongodb/mongodb-src-4.0.3/restoreconfig/configsvr_40304.yaml
/compile/mongodb/mongodb-src-4.0.3/restoreconfig/configsvr_40305.yaml
- Configuration file of a single node and configuration files of three nodes in the shardsvr1 replica set
/compile/mongodb/mongodb-src-4.0.3/restoreconfig/single_40306.yaml
/compile/mongodb/mongodb-src-4.0.3/restoreconfig/shardsvr_40306.yaml
/compile/mongodb/mongodb-src-4.0.3/restoreconfig/shardsvr_40307.yaml
/compile/mongodb/mongodb-src-4.0.3/restoreconfig/shardsvr_40308.yaml
- Configuration file of a single node and configuration files of three nodes in the shardsvr2 replica set:
/compile/mongodb/mongodb-src-4.0.3/restoreconfig/single_40309.yaml
/compile/mongodb/mongodb-src-4.0.3/restoreconfig/shardsvr_40309.yaml
/compile/mongodb/mongodb-src-4.0.3/restoreconfig/shardsvr_40310.yaml
/compile/mongodb/mongodb-src-4.0.3/restoreconfig/shardsvr_40311.yaml
- Configuration file of the dds mongos node:
/compile/mongodb/mongodb-src-4.0.3/restoreconfig/mongos_40301.yaml
/compile/mongodb/mongodb-src-4.0.3/restoreconfig/mongos_40302.yaml

Procedure

Command running directory: /compile/mongodb/mongodb-src-4.0.3

7.5.1.3 Restoring the configsvr Replica Set

Preparing Directories

```
rm -rf /compile/cluster-restore/cfg*  
mkdir -p /compile/cluster-restore/cfg1/data/db  
mkdir -p /compile/cluster-restore/cfg1/log  
mkdir -p /compile/cluster-restore/cfg2/data/db  
mkdir -p /compile/cluster-restore/cfg2/log  
mkdir -p /compile/cluster-restore/cfg3/data/db
```

```
mkdir -p /compile/cluster-restore/cfg3/log
```

Procedure

Step 1 Prepare the configuration file and data directory of a single node and start the process in single-node mode.

1. The configuration file is as follows (restoreconfig/single_40303.yaml):

```
net:
  bindIp: 127.0.0.1
  port: 40303
  unixDomainSocket: {enabled: false}
processManagement: {fork: true, pidFilePath: /compile/cluster-restore/cfg1/configsvr.pid}
storage:
  dbPath: /compile/cluster-restore/cfg1/data/db/
  directoryPerDB: true
  engine: wiredTiger
  wiredTiger:
    collectionConfig: {blockCompressor: snappy}
    engineConfig: {directoryForIndexes: true, journalCompressor: snappy}
    indexConfig: {prefixCompression: true}
systemLog: {destination: file, logAppend: true, logRotate: reopen, path: /compile/cluster-restore/cfg1/log/configsingle.log}
```

2. Copy the decompressed **configsvr** file to the **dbPath** directory on the single node.

```
cp -aR
/compile/download/backups/
cac1efc8e65e42ecad8953352321bfeein02_41c8a32fb10245899708dea453a8c5
c9no02/* /compile/cluster-restore/cfg1/data/db/
```

3. Start the process.

```
./mongod -f restoreconfig/single_40303.yaml
```

Step 2 Connect to the single node and run the following configuration command:

```
./mongo --host 127.0.0.1 --port 40303
```

1. Run the following commands to modify the replica set configuration:

```
var cf=db.getSiblingDB('local').system.replset.findOne();
cf['members'][0]['host']='127.0.0.1:40303';
cf['members'][1]['host']='127.0.0.1:40304';
cf['members'][2]['host']='127.0.0.1:40305';
cf['members'][0]['hidden']=false;
cf['members'][1]['hidden']=false;
cf['members'][2]['hidden']=false;
cf['members'][0]['priority']=1;
cf['members'][1]['priority']=1;
cf['members'][2]['priority']=1;
db.getSiblingDB('local').system.replset.remove({});
db.getSiblingDB('local').system.replset.insert(cf)
```

2. Run the following commands to clear the built-in accounts:

```
db.getSiblingDB('admin').dropAllUsers();
```

- ```
db.getSiblingDB('admin').dropAllRoles();
```
3. Run the following command to update the dds mongos and shard information:  

```
db.getSiblingDB('config').mongos.remove({});
```

Query the `_id` information about multiple shards in the **config.shards** table. The `_id` information is used as the query condition of `_id` in the following statements. Update records in sequence.  

```
db.getSiblingDB('config').shards.update({'_id' : 'shard_1'},{$set: {'host': 'shard_1/127.0.0.1:40306,127.0.0.1:40307,127.0.0.1:40308'}})
db.getSiblingDB('config').shards.update({'_id' : 'shard_2'},{$set: {'host': 'shard_2/127.0.0.1:40309,127.0.0.1:40310,127.0.0.1:40311'}})
db.getSiblingDB('config').mongos.find({});
db.getSiblingDB('config').shards.find({});
```
  4. Run the following command to stop the single-node process:  

```
db.getSiblingDB('admin').shutdownServer();
```

### Step 3 Create a configsvr replica set.

1. Copy the **dbPath** file of the configsvr1 node to the directories of the other two configsvr nodes.  

```
cp -aR /compile/cluster-restore/cfg1/data/db/ /compile/cluster-restore/cfg2/data/db/
cp -aR /compile/cluster-restore/cfg1/data/db/ /compile/cluster-restore/cfg3/data/db/
```
2. Add the replica set configuration attribute to the configuration file (**restoreconfig/configsvr\_40303.yaml**) of the configsvr-1 node.

```
net:
 bindIp: 127.0.0.1
 port: 40303
 unixDomainSocket: {enabled: false}
processManagement: {fork: true, pidFilePath: /compile/cluster-restore/cfg1/configsvr.pid}
replication: {replSetName: config}
sharding: {archiveMovedChunks: false, clusterRole: configsvr}
storage:
 dbPath: /compile/cluster-restore/cfg1/data/db/
 directoryPerDB: true
 engine: wiredTiger
 wiredTiger:
 collectionConfig: {blockCompressor: snappy}
 engineConfig: {directoryForIndexes: true, journalCompressor: snappy}
 indexConfig: {prefixCompression: true}
systemLog: {destination: file, logAppend: true, logRotate: reopen, path: /compile/cluster-restore/cfg1/log/configsvr.log}
```
3. Start the process.  

```
./mongod -f restoreconfig/configsvr_40303.yaml
```
4. Add the replica set configuration attribute to the configuration file (**restoreconfig/configsvr\_40304.yaml**) of the configsvr-2 node.

```
net:
 bindIp: 127.0.0.1
 port: 40304
 unixDomainSocket: {enabled: false}
processManagement: {fork: true, pidFilePath: /compile/cluster-restore/cfg2/configsvr.pid}
replication: {replSetName: config}
```

```
sharding: {archiveMovedChunks: false, clusterRole: configsvr}
storage:
 dbPath: /compile/cluster-restore/cfg2/data/db/
 directoryPerDB: true
 engine: wiredTiger
 wiredTiger:
 collectionConfig: {blockCompressor: snappy}
 engineConfig: {directoryForIndexes: true, journalCompressor: snappy}
 indexConfig: {prefixCompression: true}
systemLog: {destination: file, logAppend: true, logRotate: reopen, path: /compile/cluster-restore/cfg2/log/configsvr.log}
```

5. Start the process.

```
./mongod -f restoreconfig/configsvr_40304.yaml
```

6. Add the replica set configuration attribute to the configuration file (**restoreconfig/configsvr\_40305.yaml**) of the configsvr-3 node.

```
net:
 bindIp: 127.0.0.1
 port: 40305
 unixDomainSocket: {enabled: false}
processManagement: {fork: true, pidFilePath: /compile/cluster-restore/cfg3/configsvr.pid}
replication: {replSetName: config}
sharding: {archiveMovedChunks: false, clusterRole: configsvr}
storage:
 dbPath: /compile/cluster-restore/cfg3/data/db/
 directoryPerDB: true
 engine: wiredTiger
 wiredTiger:
 collectionConfig: {blockCompressor: snappy}
 engineConfig: {directoryForIndexes: true, journalCompressor: snappy}
 indexConfig: {prefixCompression: true}
systemLog: {destination: file, logAppend: true, logRotate: reopen, path: /compile/cluster-restore/cfg3/log/configsvr.log}
```

7. Start the process.

```
./mongod -f restoreconfig/configsvr_40305.yaml
```

- Step 4** Wait until the primary node is selected.

```
./mongo --host 127.0.0.1 --port 40303
```

Run the **rs.status()** command to check whether the primary node exists.

----End

### 7.5.1.4 Restoring the shardsvr1 Replica Set

#### Preparing Directories

```
rm -rf /compile/cluster-restore/shd1*
mkdir -p /compile/cluster-restore/shd11/data/db
mkdir -p /compile/cluster-restore/shd11/log
mkdir -p /compile/cluster-restore/shd12/data/db
mkdir -p /compile/cluster-restore/shd12/log
mkdir -p /compile/cluster-restore/shd13/data/db
```

```
mkdir -p /compile/cluster-restore/shd13/log
```

## Procedure

**Step 1** Prepare the configuration file and directory of a single node and start the process in single-node mode.

1. The configuration file is as follows (**restoreconfig/single\_40306.yaml**):

```
net:
 bindIp: 127.0.0.1
 port: 40306
 unixDomainSocket: {enabled: false}
processManagement: {fork: true, pidFilePath: /compile/cluster-restore/shd11/mongod.pid}
storage:
 dbPath: /compile/cluster-restore/shd11/data/db/
 directoryPerDB: true
 engine: wiredTiger
 wiredTiger:
 collectionConfig: {blockCompressor: snappy}
 engineConfig: {directoryForIndexes: true, journalCompressor: snappy}
 indexConfig: {prefixCompression: true}
systemLog: {destination: file, logAppend: true, logRotate: reopen, path: /compile/cluster-restore/shd11/log/mongod.log}
```

2. Copy the decompressed **shardsvr1** file to the **dbPath** directory on the single node.

```
cp -aR
/compile/download/backups/
cac1efc8e65e42ecad8953352321bfeein02_6cfa6167d4114d7c8cec5b47f9a78dc
5no02/* /compile/cluster-restore/shd11/data/db/
```

3. Start the process.

```
./mongod -f restoreconfig/single_40306.yaml
```

**Step 2** Connect to the single node and run the following configuration command:

Connection command: `./mongo --host 127.0.0.1 --port 40306`

1. Run the following commands to modify the replica set configuration:

```
var cf=db.getSiblingDB('local').system.replset.findOne();
cf['members'][0]['host']='127.0.0.1:40306';
cf['members'][1]['host']='127.0.0.1:40307';
cf['members'][2]['host']='127.0.0.1:40308';
cf['members'][0]['hidden']=false;
cf['members'][1]['hidden']=false;
cf['members'][2]['hidden']=false;
cf['members'][0]['priority']=1;
cf['members'][1]['priority']=1;
cf['members'][2]['priority']=1;
db.getSiblingDB('local').system.replset.remove({});
db.getSiblingDB('local').system.replset.insert(cf)
```

2. Run the following commands to clear the built-in accounts:

```
db.getSiblingDB('admin').dropAllUsers();
```

- ```
db.getSiblingDB('admin').dropAllRoles();
```
3. Run the following commands to update the configsvr information:
Connection command: `./mongo --host 127.0.0.1 --port 40306`

```
var vs = db.getSiblingDB('admin').system.version.find();
while (vs.hasNext()) {
  var curr = vs.next();
  if (curr.hasOwnProperty('configsvrConnectionString')) {
    db.getSiblingDB('admin').system.version.update({'_id' : curr._id}, {$set:
    {'configsvrConnectionString': 'config/
    127.0.0.1:40303,127.0.0.1:40304,127.0.0.1:40305'}});
  }
}
```
 4. Run the following command to stop the single-node process:

```
db.getSiblingDB('admin').shutdownServer();
```

Step 3 Create the shardsvr1 replica set.

1. Copy the **dbPath** file of the shardsvr1 node to the directories of the other two shardsvr nodes.

```
cp -aR /compile/cluster-restore/shd11/data/db/ /compile/cluster-restore/
shd12/data/db/
```

```
cp -aR /compile/cluster-restore/shd11/data/db/ /compile/cluster-restore/
shd13/data/db/
```

2. Add the replica set configuration attribute to the configuration file (**restoreconfig/shardsvr_40306.yaml**) of the shardsvr1-1 node.

--- For details about the value of **replication.replSetName**, see the `shard_id` information in [Step 2.3](#).

```
net:
  bindIp: 127.0.0.1
  port: 40306
  unixDomainSocket: {enabled: false}
processManagement: {fork: true, pidFilePath: /compile/cluster-restore/shd11/mongod.pid}
replication: {replSetName: shard_1}
sharding: {archiveMovedChunks: false, clusterRole: shardsvr}
storage:
  dbPath: /compile/cluster-restore/shd11/data/db/
  directoryPerDB: true
  engine: wiredTiger
  wiredTiger:
    collectionConfig: {blockCompressor: snappy}
    engineConfig: {directoryForIndexes: true, journalCompressor: snappy}
    indexConfig: {prefixCompression: true}
systemLog: {destination: file, logAppend: true, logRotate: reopen, path: /compile/cluster-
restore/shd11/log/mongod.log}
```

3. Start the process.
`./mongod -f restoreconfig/shardsvr_40306.yaml`
4. Add the replica set configuration attribute to the configuration file (**restoreconfig/shardsvr_40307.yaml**) of the shardsvr1-2 node.
--- For details about the value of **replication.replSetName**, see the `shard_id` information in [Step 2.3](#).

```
net:
  bindIp: 127.0.0.1
  port: 40307
  unixDomainSocket: {enabled: false}
processManagement: {fork: true, pidFilePath: /compile/cluster-restore/shd12/mongod.pid}
replication: {replSetName: shard_1}
sharding: {archiveMovedChunks: false, clusterRole: shardsvr}
storage:
  dbPath: /compile/cluster-restore/shd12/data/db/
  directoryPerDB: true
  engine: wiredTiger
  wiredTiger:
    collectionConfig: {blockCompressor: snappy}
    engineConfig: {directoryForIndexes: true, journalCompressor: snappy}
    indexConfig: {prefixCompression: true}
systemLog: {destination: file, logAppend: true, logRotate: reopen, path: /compile/cluster-restore/shd12/log/mongod.log}
```

5. Start the process.

```
./mongod -f restoreconfig/shardsvr_40307.yaml
```

6. Add the replica set configuration attribute to the configuration file (**restoreconfig/shardsvr_40308.yaml**) of the shardsvr1-3 node.

--- For details about the value of **replication.replSetName**, see the `shard_id` information in [Step 2.3](#).

```
net:
  bindIp: 127.0.0.1
  port: 40308
  unixDomainSocket: {enabled: false}
processManagement: {fork: true, pidFilePath: /compile/cluster-restore/shd13/mongod.pid}
replication: {replSetName: shard_1}
sharding: {archiveMovedChunks: false, clusterRole: shardsvr}
storage:
  dbPath: /compile/cluster-restore/shd13/data/db/
  directoryPerDB: true
  engine: wiredTiger
  wiredTiger:
    collectionConfig: {blockCompressor: snappy}
    engineConfig: {directoryForIndexes: true, journalCompressor: snappy}
    indexConfig: {prefixCompression: true}
systemLog: {destination: file, logAppend: true, logRotate: reopen, path: /compile/cluster-restore/shd13/log/mongod.log}
```

7. Start the process.

```
./mongod -f restoreconfig/shardsvr_40308.yaml
```

- Step 4** Wait until the primary node is selected.

```
./mongo --host 127.0.0.1 --port 40306
```

Run the **rs.status()** command to check whether the primary node exists.

----End

7.5.1.5 Restoring the shardsvr2 Replica Set

Preparing Directories

```
rm -rf /compile/cluster-restore/shd2*
```

```
mkdir -p /compile/cluster-restore/shd21/data/db
```

```
mkdir -p /compile/cluster-restore/shd21/log
mkdir -p /compile/cluster-restore/shd22/data/db
mkdir -p /compile/cluster-restore/shd22/log
mkdir -p /compile/cluster-restore/shd23/data/db
mkdir -p /compile/cluster-restore/shd23/log
```

Procedure

Step 1 Prepare the configuration file and directory of a single node and start the process in single-node mode.

1. The configuration file is as follows (**restoreconfig/single_40309.yaml**):

```
net:
  bindIp: 127.0.0.1
  port: 40309
  unixDomainSocket: {enabled: false}
processManagement: {fork: true, pidFilePath: /compile/cluster-restore/shd21/mongod.pid}
storage:
  dbPath: /compile/cluster-restore/shd21/data/db/
  directoryPerDB: true
  engine: wiredTiger
  wiredTiger:
    collectionConfig: {blockCompressor: snappy}
    engineConfig: {directoryForIndexes: true, journalCompressor: snappy}
    indexConfig: {prefixCompression: true}
systemLog: {destination: file, logAppend: true, logRotate: reopen, path: /compile/cluster-restore/shd21/log/mongod.log}
```

1. Copy the decompressed **shardsvr2** file to the **dbPath** directory on the single node.

```
cp -aR
/compile/download/backups/
cac1efc8e65e42ecad8953352321bfeein02_92b196d2401041a7af869a2a3cab70
79no02/* /compile/cluster-restore/shd21/data/db/
```

2. Start the process.

```
./mongod -f restoreconfig/single_40309.yaml
```

Step 2 Connect to the single node and run the following configuration command:

Connection command: `./mongo --host 127.0.0.1 --port 40309`

1. Run the following commands to modify the replica set configuration:

```
var cf=db.getSiblingDB('local').system.replset.findOne();
cf['members'][0]['host']='127.0.0.1:40309';
cf['members'][1]['host']='127.0.0.1:40310';
cf['members'][2]['host']='127.0.0.1:40311';
cf['members'][0]['hidden']=false;
cf['members'][1]['hidden']=false;
cf['members'][2]['hidden']=false;
cf['members'][0]['priority']=1;
cf['members'][1]['priority']=1;
```


- ```
cf['members'][2]['priority']=1;
db.getSiblingDB('local').system.replset.remove({});
db.getSiblingDB('local').system.replset.insert(cf)
```
- Run the following commands to clear the built-in accounts:

```
db.getSiblingDB('admin').dropAllUsers();
db.getSiblingDB('admin').dropAllRoles();
```
  - Run the following commands to update the configsvr information:

```
var vs = db.getSiblingDB('admin').system.version.find();
while (vs.hasNext()) {
var curr = vs.next();
if (curr.hasOwnProperty('configsvrConnectionString')) {
db.getSiblingDB('admin').system.version.update({'_id' : curr._id}, {$set:
{'configsvrConnectionString': 'config/
127.0.0.1:40303,127.0.0.1:40304,127.0.0.1:40305'}});
}
}
}
```
  - Run the following command to stop the single-node process:

```
db.getSiblingDB('admin').shutdownServer();
```

### Step 3 Create the shardsvr2 replica set.

- Copy the **dbPath** file of the shardsvr2 node to the directories of the other two shardsvr nodes.

```
cp -aR /compile/cluster-restore/shd21/data/db/ /compile/cluster-restore/
shd22/data/db/
```

```
cp -aR /compile/cluster-restore/shd21/data/db/ /compile/cluster-restore/
shd23/data/db/
```

- Add the replica set configuration attribute to the configuration file (**restoreconfig/shardsvr\_40309.yaml**) of the shardsvr2-1 node.

--- For details about the value of **replication.replSetName**, see the **shard\_id** information in [Step 2.3](#).

```
net:
 bindIp: 127.0.0.1
 port: 40309
 unixDomainSocket: {enabled: false}
processManagement: {fork: true, pidFilePath: /compile/cluster-restore/shd21/mongod.pid}
replication: {replSetName: shard_2}
sharding: {archiveMovedChunks: false, clusterRole: shardsvr}
storage:
 dbPath: /compile/cluster-restore/shd21/data/db/
 directoryPerDB: true
 engine: wiredTiger
 wiredTiger:
 collectionConfig: {blockCompressor: snappy}
 engineConfig: {directoryForIndexes: true, journalCompressor: snappy}
 indexConfig: {prefixCompression: true}
systemLog: {destination: file, logAppend: true, logRotate: reopen, path: /compile/cluster-
restore/shd21/log/mongod.log}
```

- Start the process.

```
./mongod -f restoreconfig/shardsvr_40309.yaml
```

4. Add the replica set configuration attribute to the configuration file (**restoreconfig/shardsvr\_40310.yaml**) of the shardsvr2-2 node.  
--- For details about the value of **replication.replSetName**, see the `shard_id` information in [Step 2.3](#).

```
net:
 bindIp: 127.0.0.1
 port: 40310
 unixDomainSocket: {enabled: false}
processManagement: {fork: true, pidFilePath: /compile/cluster-restore/shd22/mongod.pid}
replication: {replSetName: shard_2}
sharding: {archiveMovedChunks: false, clusterRole: shardsvr}
storage:
 dbPath: /compile/cluster-restore/shd22/data/db/
 directoryPerDB: true
 engine: wiredTiger
 wiredTiger:
 collectionConfig: {blockCompressor: snappy}
 engineConfig: {directoryForIndexes: true, journalCompressor: snappy}
 indexConfig: {prefixCompression: true}
systemLog: {destination: file, logAppend: true, logRotate: reopen, path: /compile/cluster-restore/shd22/log/mongod.log}
```

5. Start the process.  
`./mongod -f restoreconfig/shardsvr_40310.yaml`
6. Add the replica set configuration attribute to the configuration file (**restoreconfig/shardsvr\_40311.yaml**) of the shardsvr2-2 node.  
--- For details about the value of **replication.replSetName**, see the `shard_id` information in [Step 2.3](#).

```
net:
 bindIp: 127.0.0.1
 port: 40311
 unixDomainSocket: {enabled: false}
processManagement: {fork: true, pidFilePath: /compile/cluster-restore/shd23/mongod.pid}
replication: {replSetName: shard_2}
sharding: {archiveMovedChunks: false, clusterRole: shardsvr}
storage:
 dbPath: /compile/cluster-restore/shd23/data/db/
 directoryPerDB: true
 engine: wiredTiger
 wiredTiger:
 collectionConfig: {blockCompressor: snappy}
 engineConfig: {directoryForIndexes: true, journalCompressor: snappy}
 indexConfig: {prefixCompression: true}
systemLog: {destination: file, logAppend: true, logRotate: reopen, path: /compile/cluster-restore/shd23/log/mongod.log}
```

7. Start the process.  
`./mongod -f restoreconfig/shardsvr_40311.yaml`

**Step 4** Wait until the primary node is selected.

```
./mongo --host 127.0.0.1 --port 40309
```

Run the **rs.status()** command to check whether the primary node exists.

----End

### 7.5.1.6 Restoring the dds mongos Node

**Step 1** Prepare the configuration file and directory of the dds mongos node.

```
rm -rf /compile/cluster-restore/mgs*

mkdir -p /compile/cluster-restore/mgs1/log

mkdir -p /compile/cluster-restore/mgs2/log
```

**Step 2** Configuration file (restoreconfig/mongos\_40301.yaml)

```
net:
 bindIp: 127.0.0.1
 port: 40301
 unixDomainSocket: {enabled: false}
processManagement: {fork: true, pidFilePath: /compile/cluster-restore/mgs1/mongos.pid}
sharding: {configDB: 'config/127.0.0.1:40303,127.0.0.1:40304,127.0.0.1:40305'}
systemLog: {destination: file, logAppend: true, logRotate: reopen, path: /compile/cluster-restore/
mgs1/log/mongos.log}
```

**Step 3** Configuration file (restoreconfig/mongos\_40302.yaml)

```
net:
 bindIp: 127.0.0.1
 port: 40302
 unixDomainSocket: {enabled: false}
processManagement: {fork: true, pidFilePath: /compile/cluster-restore/mgs2/mongos.pid}
sharding: {configDB: 'config/127.0.0.1:40303,127.0.0.1:40304,127.0.0.1:40305'}
systemLog: {destination: file, logAppend: true, logRotate: reopen, path: /compile/cluster-restore/
mgs2/log/mongos.log}
```

**Step 4** Start the mongo node.

```
./mongos -f restoreconfig/mongos_40301.yaml

./mongos -f restoreconfig/mongos_40302.yaml

----End
```

### 7.5.1.7 Checking the Cluster Status

Connect to the cluster through dds mongos and check the data status.

```
./mongo --host 127.0.0.1 --port 40301

./mongo --host 127.0.0.1 --port 40302
```

## 7.5.2 Restoring a Replica Set Backup to an On-Premises Database

To restore a DB instance backup file to an on-premises database, you can only use databases on Linux.

This section uses the Linux operating system as an example to describe how to restore the downloaded backup file of a replica set instance to your on-premises databases. For details about how to download backup files, see [Downloading Backup Files](#).

## Precautions

- MongoDB client 3.4 has been installed on your on-premises MongoDB database.
- Only DDS 3.4 and 4.0 instances can be restored in this method. DDS 4.2 does not support this method.
- For details about how to migrate data at the database or collection level, see [Migrating Data Using mongodump and mongorestore](#).

## Procedure

**Step 1** Log in to the server on which the on-premises databases are deployed.

Assume that **/path/to/mongo** is the directory for restoration, and **/path/to/mongo/data** is the directory for storing the backup file.

**Step 2** Before the restoration, ensure that the **/path/to/mongo/data** directory is empty.

```
cd /path/to/mongo/data/
rm -rf *
```

**Step 3** Copy and paste the downloaded backup file package to **/path/to/mongo/data/** and decompress it.

```
lz4 -d xxx_.tar.gz |tar -xC /path/to/mongo/data/
```

**Step 4** Create the **mongod.conf** configuration file in **/path/to/mongo**.

```
touch mongod.conf
```

**Step 5** Start the database in single-node mode.

1. Modify the **mongod.conf** file to meet the backup startup configuration requirements.

The following is a configuration template for backup startup:

```
systemLog:
 destination: file
 path: /path/to/mongo/mongod.log
 logAppend: true
security:
 authorization: enabled
storage:
 dbPath: /path/to/mongo/data
 directoryPerDB: true
 engine: wiredTiger
 wiredTiger:
 collectionConfig: {blockCompressor: snappy}
 engineConfig: {directoryForIndexes: true, journalCompressor: snappy}
 indexConfig: {prefixCompression: true}
net:
 http:
 enabled: false
 port: 27017
 bindIp: xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx,xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx
 unixDomainSocket:
 enabled: false
processManagement:
 fork: true
 pidFilePath: /path/to/mongo/mongod.pid
```

 NOTE

*bindIp* indicates the IP address bound to the database. This field is optional. If it is not specified, your local IP address is bound by default.

2. Run the **mongod.conf** command to start the database.

```
/usr/bin/mongod -f /path/to/mongo/mongod.conf
```

 NOTE

*/usr/bin/* is the directory that stores the **mongod** file of the installed MongoDB client.

3. After the database is started, log in to the database using mongo shell to verify the restoration result.

```
mongo --host <DB_HOST> -u <DB_USER> -p <PASSWORD> --
authenticationDatabase admin
```

 NOTE

- **DB\_HOST** is the IP address bound to the database.
- **DB\_USER** is the database user. The default value is **rwuser**.
- **PASSWORD** is the password for the database user, which is the password used for backing up the DB instance.

----End

## Starting the Database in Replica Set Mode

By default, the physical backup of the DDS DB instance contains the replica set configuration of the original DB instance. You need to start the database in single-node mode. Otherwise, the database cannot be accessed.

If you want to start the database in replica set mode, perform step [Step 5](#) and then perform the following steps:

**Step 1** Log in to the database using mongo shell.

**Step 2** Remove the original replica set configuration.

**use local**

```
db.system.replset.remove({})
```

**Step 3** Stop the database process.

**use admin**

```
db.shutdownServer()
```

**Step 4** Add the replication configuration in the **mongod.conf** file in the */path/to/mongo/* directory. For details about the command usage, see [Deploy a Replica Set](#).

**Step 5** Run the **mongod.conf** command to start the database.

```
/usr/bin/mongod -f /path/to/mongo/mongod.conf
```

 NOTE

*/usr/bin/* is the directory that stores the **mongod** file of the installed MongoDB client.

**Step 6** Add the replica set members and initialize the replica set.

 **NOTE**

Use the `rs.initiate()` command to perform the preceding step. For details, see [rs.initiate\(\)](#).

----End

## 7.5.3 Restoring a Single Node Backup to an On-Premises Database

This section uses the Linux operating system as an example to describe how to restore the downloaded backup file of a single node instance to your on-premises database. For details about how to download backup files, see [Downloading Backup Files](#).

 **NOTE**

Huawei Cloud has discontinued the sale of DDS single node instances since July 15, 2023.

### Precautions

- MongoDB client 3.4 has been installed on your on-premises MongoDB database.
- Only DDS 3.4 and 4.0 instances can be restored in this method. DDS 4.2 does not support this method.
- For details about how to migrate data at the database or collection level, see [Migrating Data Using mongodump and mongorestore](#).

### Procedure

**Step 1** [Download the backup file of the single node](#).

**Step 2** Log in to the device that can access the on-premises database.

**Step 3** Upload the single-node backup file to the device that can access the on-premises database.

Select an uploading method based on the OS you are using. In Linux, for example, run the following command:

```
scp -r <IDENTITY_DIR> <REMOTE_USER>@<REMOTE_ADDRESS>:<REMOTE_DIR>
```

- **IDENTITY\_DIR** is the directory that stores the backup file.
- **REMOTE\_USER** is the username for logging in to the device that can access the on-premises database.
- **REMOTE\_ADDRESS** is the IP address of the host that can access the on-premises database.
- **REMOTE\_DIR** is the destination directory to which the backup file is imported.

In Windows, upload the backup file using file transfer tools.

**Step 4** Import the backup files in the on-premises database.

```
./mongorestore --host <DB_HOST> --port <DB_PORT> -u <DB_USER> --
authenticationDatabase <AUTH_DB> --drop --gzip --archive=<Backup
directory> -vvvv --stopOnError
```

- **DB\_HOST** is the on-premises database address.
- **DB\_PORT** is the on-premises database port.
- **DB\_USER** is the on-premises database username.
- **AUTH\_DB** is the database that authenticates DB\_USER. Generally, this value is **admin**.
- **Backup directory** is the backup file name.

Enter the password for logging in to the on-premises database when prompted:

Enter password:

Example:

```
./mongorestore --host 192.168.6.187 --port 8635 -u rwuser --
authenticationDatabase admin --drop --gzip --archive=xxx_tar.gz -vvvv --
stopOnError
```

----End

## 7.6 Restoring Data of Enhanced Edition

### Scenarios

DDS 4.4 and DDS 4.4 Enhanced Edition (DDS 4.4 pro for short) are incompatible due to different underlying data storage structures. You can upgrade DDS 4.4 to DDS 4.4 pro in either of the following ways:

- Use DRS to migrate data from DDS 4.4 to DDS 4.4 pro. For details, see [From On-Premises MongoDB to DDS](#).
- Contact customer service to upgrade DDS 4.4 to DDS 4.4 pro by rebuilding data on the original DB instance.

### Precautions

- After data in a DDS DB instance is migrated to an enhanced binary system, backups before the migration cannot be restored to the original DB instance or a new DB instance.
- After data in a DDS DB instance is migrated to an enhanced binary system, backups cannot be restored to the time point before the migration.
- DDS enhanced binary data backups cannot be restored to on-premises databases.

# 8 Parameter Template Management

---

## 8.1 Overview

DB parameter templates act as a container for engine configuration values that are applied to one or more DB instances. You can customize the parameter settings to manage DB engine configurations.

### Parameter Template Type

When creating a DB instance, you can associate a default parameter template or a customized parameter template with the DB instance. After a DB instance is created, you can also change the associated parameter template.

- **Default parameter template**  
The DB engine parameter values and system service parameter values in the default parameter group are designed for optimizing the database performance.
- **Custom parameter template**  
If you need a DB instance with customized parameter settings, you can create a parameter template and change the parameter values as required.  
If you change the parameter values of the parameter template associated with several DB instances, the changes will apply to all these DB instances.

### Application Scenarios

- If you want to use a customized parameter template, you only need to create a parameter template in advance and select the parameter template when creating a DB instance. For details about how to create a parameter template, see [Creating a Parameter Template](#).
- When you have already created a parameter template and want to include most of the custom parameters and values from that template in a new parameter template, you can replicate that parameter template following the instructions provided in section [Replicating a Parameter Template](#).



## Precautions

- Default parameter templates are unchangeable. You can only view them by clicking their names. If inappropriate settings of customized parameter templates lead to a database startup failure, you can reset the customized parameter template by referring to the settings of the default parameter template.
- After modifying a parameter, you need to view the associated instance status in the instance list. If **Pending restart** is displayed, you need to restart the instance for the modification to take effect.
- Improperly setting parameters in a parameter template may have unintended adverse effects, including degraded performance and system instability. Exercise caution when modifying database parameters and you need to back up data before modifying parameters in a parameter template. Before applying parameter changes to a production DB instance, you should try out these changes on a test DB instance.

## 8.2 Creating a Parameter Template

DB parameter templates act as a container for engine configuration values that are applied to one or more DB instances.


### Precautions

- DDS does not share parameter template quotas with RDS.
- Each account can create up to 100 DDS parameter templates for the cluster, replica set, and single node instances.

### Cluster

**Step 1** [Log in to the management console.](#)

**Step 2** Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

**Step 3** Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

**Step 4** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Parameter Templates**.

**Step 5** On the **Parameter Templates** page, click **Create Parameter Template**.

**Step 6** Select **Cluster** for **DB Instance Type**, specify **DB Engine Version**, **Node Type**, **New Parameter Template**, and **Description** (optional), and then click **OK**.


- **Node Type:** specifies the node type that this parameter template will apply to. For example, to create a parameter template applying to config, select **config**.
- **New Parameter Template:** The template name can be up to 64 characters. It must start with a letter and can contain only letters (case-sensitive), digits, hyphens (-), periods (.), and underscores (\_).
- **Description:** It can contain up to 256 characters but cannot contain line breaks or the following special characters >!<"&'=


**Step 7** On the **Parameter Templates** page, view and manage parameter templates on the **Clusters** tab.

----End

## Replica Set

**Step 1** [Log in to the management console.](#)

**Step 2** Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

**Step 3** Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

**Step 4** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Parameter Templates**.

**Step 5** On the **Parameter Templates** page, click **Create Parameter Template**.

**Step 6** Select **Replica set** for **DB Instance Type**, specify **DB Engine Version**, **Node Type**, **Parameter Template Name**, and **Description** (optional), and then click **OK**.

- **Node Type:** specifies the node type that this parameter template will apply to. For example, to create a parameter template applying to a read replica, select **readonly**.
- **New Parameter Template:** The template name can be up to 64 characters. It must start with a letter and can contain only letters (case-sensitive), digits, hyphens (-), periods (.), and underscores (\_).
- **Description:** It can contain up to 256 characters but cannot contain line breaks or the following special characters >!<"&'=


**Step 7** On the **Parameter Templates** page, view and manage parameter templates on the **Replica Sets** tab.

----End

## Single Node

**Step 1** [Log in to the management console.](#)

**Step 2** Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

**Step 3** Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

**Step 4** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Parameter Templates**.

**Step 5** On the **Parameter Templates** page, click **Create Parameter Template**.

**Step 6** Select **Single node** for **DB Instance Type**, specify **DB Engine Version**, **New Parameter Template**, and **Description** (optional), and then click **OK**.

- **New Parameter Template:** The template name can be up to 64 characters. It must start with a letter and can contain only letters (case-sensitive), digits, hyphens (-), periods (.), and underscores (\_).
- **Description:** It can contain up to 256 characters but cannot contain line breaks or the following special characters >!<"&'=

**Step 7** On the **Parameter Templates** page, view and manage parameter templates on the **Single Nodes** tab.

----End

## 8.3 Modifying DDS DB Instance Parameters

You can modify parameters in custom parameter templates as needed to get the most out of DDS performance.

You can modify parameters in either of the following ways:

- Directly modify the parameters of a specified instance.  
If you change a dynamic parameter value in a parameter template and save the change, the change takes effect immediately regardless of the **Effective upon Reboot** setting. If you modify static parameters on the **Parameters** page of an instance and save the modifications, the modifications take effect only after you manually restart the target instance.
- Modify the parameters in a parameter template and apply the template to the instance.  
The changes only take effect after you apply the template to the instance. If you modify static parameters in a custom parameter template on the **Parameter Template Management** page and save the modifications, the modifications take effect only after you apply the parameter template to instances and manually restart the instances. For details about how to apply a parameter template to instances, see [Applying a Parameter Template](#).


### Precautions

- You can change parameter values in custom parameter templates but cannot change the default parameter templates provided by the system. You can only click the name of a default parameter template to view its details.
- If a custom parameter template is set incorrectly, the instance associated with the template may fail to start. You can re-configure the custom parameter template according to the configurations of the default parameter template.

### Modifying Parameters of an Instance

**Step 1** [Log in to the management console](#).

**Step 2** Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

**Step 3** Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

**Step 4** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Instances**. On the displayed page, click the DB instance whose parameters you wish to modify.

**Step 5** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Parameters**. On the displayed page, modify parameters as required.

Figure 8-1 Modifying parameters of an instance

| Parameter Name                         | Effective up... | Value    | Allowed Values         | Description                                     |
|----------------------------------------|-----------------|----------|------------------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| connPoolMaxConnsPerHost                | Yes             | 600      | 200-2,000              | Maximum size of the connection pools for o      |
| cursorTimeoutMillis                    | No              | 600000   | 600,000-1,000,000      | Expiration threshold for idle cursors before T  |
| disableJavaScriptIT                    | No              | true     | true, false            | Enable or disable JavaScriptIT.                 |
| failIndexKeyTooLong                    | No              | true     | true, false            | If the length of an indexed field value is lon  |
| internalQueryExecMaxBlockingSortBytes  | No              | 33554432 | 33,554,432-100,663,296 | Maximum memory size supported by sorting        |
| maxTransactionLockRequestTimeoutMillis | No              | 5        | 5-100                  | Time for a transaction to wait for a lock, in r |
| net.maxIncomingConnections             | No              | 1000     | 200-1,000              | Maximum number of simultaneous connect          |
| operationProfiling.mode                | Yes             | slowOp   | off, slowOp, all       | Level of database profiling.                    |
| operationProfiling.slowOpThresholdMs   | No              | 500      | 10-10,000              | Slow request threshold. If there is no special  |

**Step 6** Modify parameters based on the DB instance type.

- If the DB instance is a cluster instance, select dds mongos, shard, or config on the **Parameters** page and change the value of **net.maxIncomingConnections**, which indicates maximum number of concurrent connections that dds mongos or mongod can be connected. Enter **net.maxIncomingConnections** in the search box in the upper right corner of the page and click the search icon to search for this parameter.

Figure 8-2 Changing the maximum number of connections

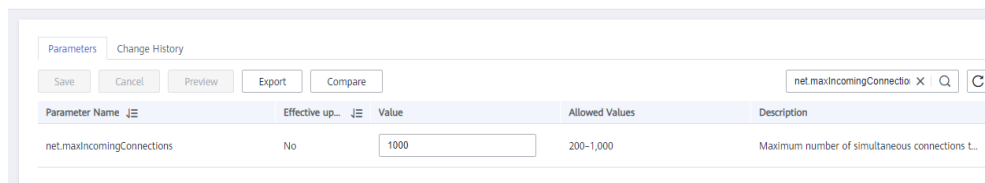
| Parameter Name             | Effective up... | Value | Allowed Values | Description                                     |
|----------------------------|-----------------|-------|----------------|-------------------------------------------------|
| net.maxIncomingConnections | No              | 2000  | 200-2,000      | Maximum number of simultaneous connections L... |

- If the DB instance is a replica set instance, select **Replica set nodes** or **Read replicas** on the **Parameters** page and change the value of **net.maxIncomingConnections**, which indicates maximum number of concurrent connections that dds mongos or mongod can be connected. Enter **net.maxIncomingConnections** in the search box in the upper right corner of the page and click the search icon to search for this parameter.

Figure 8-3 Changing the maximum number of connections

| Parameter Name             | Effective upon Re... | Value | Allowed Values | Description |
|----------------------------|----------------------|-------|----------------|-------------|
| net.maxIncomingConnections | No                   | 3000  | 200-3,000      | --          |

- If the DB instance is a single node instance, change the value of **net.maxIncomingConnections**, which indicates maximum number of concurrent connections that dds mongos or mongod can be connected. Enter **net.maxIncomingConnections** in the search box in the upper right corner of the page and click the search icon to search for this parameter.

**Figure 8-4** Changing the maximum number of connections

**Step 7** Change the maximum number of connections based on the parameter value range and instance specifications. This default value depends on the DB instance specifications. This parameter is displayed as **default** before being set, indicating that the parameter value varies with the memory specifications. For details about the parameters, see [Parameters](#).

- To save the changes, click **Save**.
- If you want to cancel the modifications, click **Cancel**.
- If you want to preview the modifications, click **Preview**.

**Step 8** After the parameters have been modified, click **Change History** to view parameter modification details. For details, see [Viewing Change History of DB Instance Parameters](#).

#### NOTICE

Check the value in the **Effective upon Restart** column. If it is set to:


- **Yes:** If an instance status on the **Instances** page is **Pending restart**, the instance needs to be restarted to apply changes. If only one node in a replica set, shard, or config is restarted, the changes will not be applied.
- **No:** The changes are applied immediately.

----End

## Modifying Parameters in a Custom Parameter Template

**Step 1** [Log in to the management console](#).

**Step 2** Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

**Step 3** Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

**Step 4** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Parameter Templates**.

**Step 5** On the **Parameter Templates** page, click **Custom Templates**. Locate the target parameter template and click its name.

**Step 6** Modify the required parameters.

**For parameter description details, see [Parameters](#).**

- If you want to save the modifications, click **Save**.
- If you want to cancel the modifications, click **Cancel**.

- If you want to preview the modifications, click **Preview**.

**Step 7** The modifications take effect only after you apply the parameter template to instances. For details, see [Applying a Parameter Template](#).

---

**NOTICE**

- After the parameters have been modified, click **Change History** to view parameter modification details. For details, see [Viewing Change History of a Custom Parameter Template](#).
- The change history page displays only the modifications of the last seven days.
- For details about the parameter template statuses, see [Parameter Template Status](#).
- After modifying a parameter, view the associated instance status in the instance list. If **Pending restart** is displayed, restart the instance for the modification to take effect.

---

----End

## 8.4 Viewing Parameter Change History

You can view the change history of a parameter template.


### Precautions

In a newly exported or created parameter template, the change history is blank.

### Viewing Change History of DB Instance Parameters

**Step 1** [Log in to the management console](#).

**Step 2** Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

**Step 3** Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

**Step 4** On the **Instances** page, click the instance name. The **Basic Information** page is displayed.


**Step 5** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Parameters**. On the **Change History** tab, view the parameter name, original parameter value, new parameter value, modification status, and modification time.

----End

### Viewing Change History of a Custom Parameter Template

**Step 1** [Log in to the management console](#).

**Step 2** Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

- Step 3** Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.
- Step 4** On the **Parameter Templates** page, click **Custom Templates**. Locate the target parameter template and click its name.
- Step 5** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Change History**. Then, view the parameter name, original parameter value, new parameter value, modification status, and modification time.



You can apply the parameter template to DB instances as required by referring to section [Applying a Parameter Template](#).

----End

## 8.5 Exporting a Parameter Template

- You can export a parameter template of a DB instance for future use. You can also apply the exported parameter template to other instances by referring to [Applying a Parameter Template](#).
- You can export the parameter template details (parameter names, values, and descriptions) of an instance to a CSV file for review and analysis.

### Procedure

- Step 1** [Log in to the management console](#).
- Step 2** Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.
- Step 3** Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.
- Step 4** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Instances**. On the displayed page, click the target instance. The **Basic Information** page is displayed.
- Step 5** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Parameters**. On the **Parameters** tab, above the parameter list, click **Export**.

**Figure 8-5** Exporting a parameter template

- **Parameter Template:** The parameter list of the instance to will be exported to a parameter template for future use.

In the displayed dialog box, configure required details and click **OK**.

**NOTE**

- **New Parameter Template:** The template name can be up to 64 characters. It must start with a letter and can contain only letters (case-sensitive), digits, hyphens (-), periods (.), and underscores (\_).
- **Description:** It can contain up to 256 characters but cannot contain line breaks or the following special characters >|<"&'=

After the parameter template is exported, a new template is generated in the list on the **Parameter Templates** page.

- **File:** The parameter template details (parameter names, values, and descriptions) of a DB instance are exported to a CSV file for review and analysis.

In the displayed dialog box, enter the file name and click **OK**.

**NOTE**

The file name must start with a letter and consist of 4 to 81 characters. It can contain only letters, digits, hyphens (-), and underscores (\_).

----End



## 8.6 Comparing Parameter Templates

This section describes how to compare two parameter templates of the same node type and DB engine version.

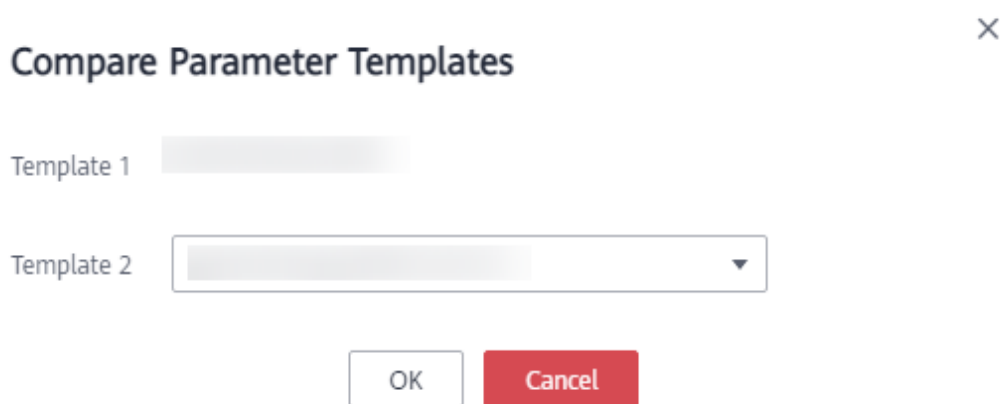
### Procedure

- Step 1** [Log in to the management console.](#)



- Step 2** Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.
- Step 3** Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.
- Step 4** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Parameter Templates**.
- Step 5** On the **Parameter Templates** page, locate the parameter template, and click **Compare**.
- Step 6** In the displayed dialog box, select a parameter template that uses the same DB engine as the target template and click **OK**.

**Figure 8-6** Comparing two parameter templates



- If their settings are different, the parameter names and values of both parameter templates are displayed.
- If their settings are the same, no data is displayed.


----End


## 8.7 Replicating a Parameter Template

You can replicate a parameter template you have created. You can replicate a parameter template you have created. If you have a parameter template where you want to use most of its parameters and values in a new parameter template, you can create a replicate of template your existing template, or you can export a parameter template of a DB instance for future use.

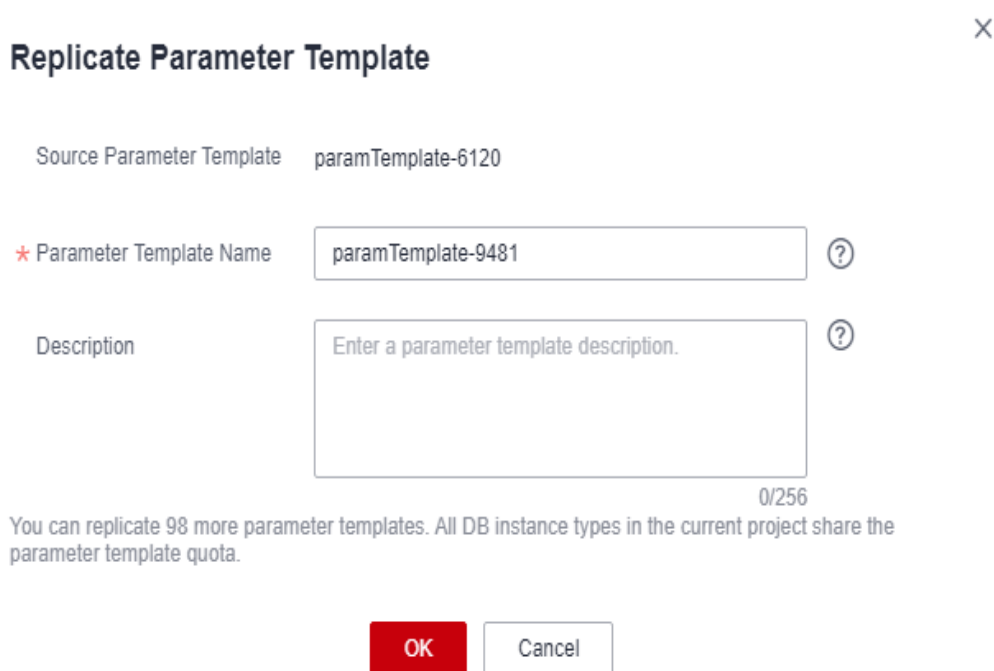
Default parameter templates cannot be replicated, but you can create parameter templates based on them.

### Procedure

- Step 1** [Log in to the management console.](#)
- Step 2** Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

- Step 3** Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.
- Step 4** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Parameter Templates**.
- Step 5** On the **Parameter Templates** page, click **Custom Templates**, locate the parameter template, and click **Replicate** in the **Operation** column.
- Step 6** In the displayed dialog box, enter the parameter template name and description and click **OK**.

**Figure 8-7** Replicating a parameter template



- **Parameter Template Name:** The template name can be up to 64 characters. It can contain only letters, digits, hyphens (-), underscores (\_), and periods (.).
- **Description:** The description can contain up to 256 characters but cannot include line breaks or the following special characters >!<"&'=

After the parameter template is replicated, a new template is generated in the list on the **Parameter Templates** page.

----End

## 8.8 Resetting a Parameter Template

This section describes how to reset all parameters in a parameter template you create to the default settings.


## Precautions

Resetting a parameter template will restore all parameters in the parameter template to their default values. Exercise caution when performing this operation.

## Procedure

**Step 1** [Log in to the management console.](#)

**Step 2** Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

**Step 3** Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

**Step 4** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Parameter Templates**.

**Step 5** On the **Parameter Templates** page, click **Custom Templates**, locate the parameter template, and choose **More > Reset** in the **Operation** column.

**Step 6** In the displayed dialog box, click **Yes**.

----End


## 8.9 Applying a Parameter Template

Modifications to parameters in a custom parameter template take effect for DB instances only after you have applied the template to the DB instances.

## Procedure

**Step 1** [Log in to the management console.](#)

**Step 2** Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

**Step 3** Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

**Step 4** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Parameter Templates**.

**Step 5** On the **Parameter Templates** page, apply a default template or a custom template to the DB instance:

- To apply a default template, click the **Default Templates** tab, locate the required parameter template, and click **Apply** in the **Operation** column.
- To apply a custom template, click **Custom Templates**, locate the parameter template, and in the **Operation** column, choose **More > Apply**.

A parameter template can be applied to one or more nodes and instances.

**Step 6** In the displayed dialog box, select the node or instance to which the parameter template will be applied and click **OK**.

After the parameter template is successfully applied, you can view the application records by referring to [Viewing Application Records of a Parameter Template](#).


----End


## 8.10 Viewing Application Records of a Parameter Template

You can view the application records of a parameter template.

### Procedure

**Step 1** [Log in to the management console.](#)

**Step 2** Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

**Step 3** Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

**Step 4** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Parameter Templates**.

**Step 5** On the **Parameter Templates** page, select the parameter template for which you want to view application records.

- Click **Default Templates**. Locate the parameter template and click **View Application Record**.
- Click **Custom Templates**. Locate the parameter template and choose **More > View Application Record**.

**Step 6** You can view the name or ID of the DB instance that the parameter template applies to, as well as the application status, application time, and the causes of any failures that have occurred.

----End

## 8.11 Modifying the Description of a Parameter Template

The section describes how to modify the description of a parameter template you created so that you can distinguish and identify parameter templates.


### Precautions




The description of a default parameter template cannot be modified.

### Procedure

**Step 1** [Log in to the management console.](#)

**Step 2** Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

**Step 3** Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

- Step 4** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Parameter Templates**.
- Step 5** On the **Parameter Templates** page, locate the parameter template, and click  in the **Description** column.
- Step 6** Enter new description information. The parameter template description can contain up to 256 characters but cannot contain line breaks or the following special characters >!<"&'=
  - To submit the change, click . After the modification is successful, you can view the new description in the **Description** column of the parameter template list.
  - To cancel the change, click .----End



## 8.12 Deleting a Parameter Template

You can delete a custom parameter template that is no longer used.

### Precautions

- Default parameter templates and parameter templates applied to instances cannot be deleted.
- Deleted parameter templates cannot be restored. Exercise caution when performing this operation.

### Procedure

- Step 1** [Log in to the management console.](#)
- Step 2** Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.
- Step 3** Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.
- Step 4** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Parameter Templates**.
- Step 5** On the **Parameter Templates** page, locate the parameter template you want to delete, and choose **More > Delete**.
- Step 6** In the displayed dialog box, click **Yes**.
- End

# 9 Connection Management

---

## 9.1 Querying DB Instance Connections and Managing Sessions

### Scenario


- You can query the number of internal and external connections of a DB instance and the source IP addresses of these connections.
- You can also manage the sessions of an instance node and kill an abnormal session that takes a long time.


### Precautions

- This function is not available to ECS-hosted instances and instances in the creating, frozen, or abnormal state.
- Exercise caution when killing a session. Your operations will be recorded in logs.
- This function is available for replica set instances and cluster instances of versions 3.4, 4.0, 4.2, and 4.4.
- When the CPU usage reaches the upper limit, requests to kill sessions may time out. In this case, you have to try more than once.

### Querying the Number of Connections of a DB Instance

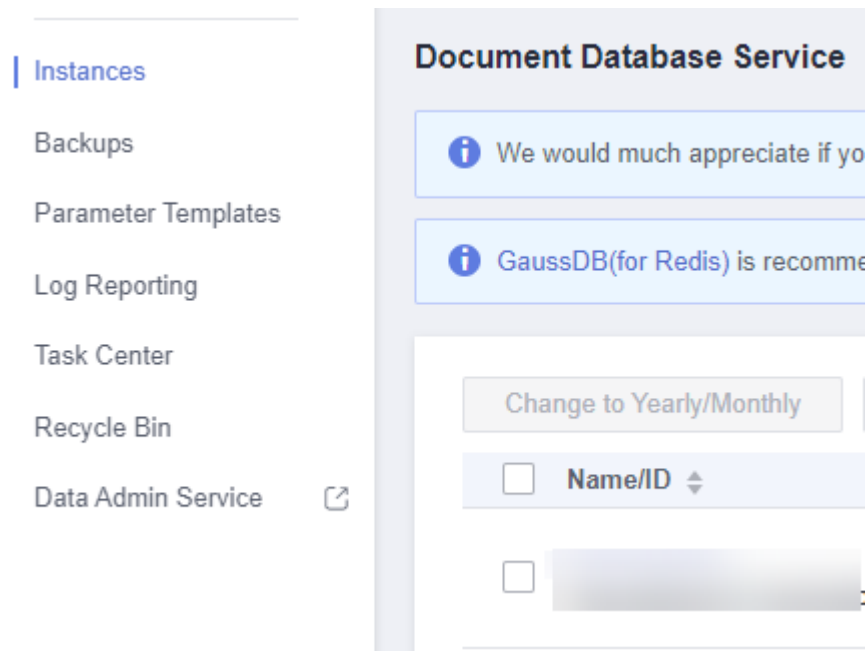
**Step 1** [Log in to the management console.](#)

**Step 2** Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

**Step 3** Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

**Step 4** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Data Admin Service**.

**Figure 9-1** Data Admin Service

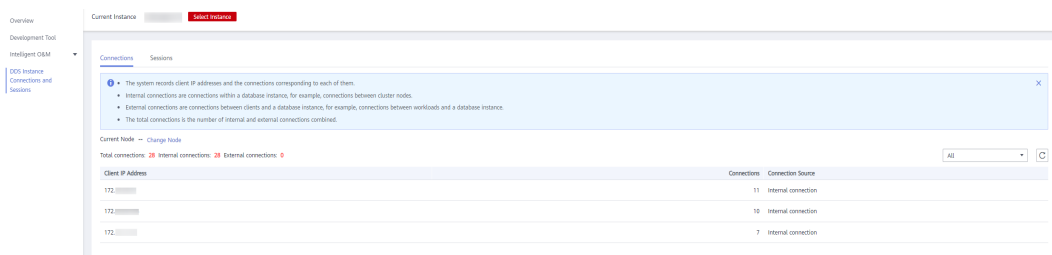


**Step 5** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **DDS Instance Connections and Sessions**.

**Step 6** In the **Current Instance** area in the upper part of the page, click **Select Instance** to select the required DDS DB instance.

**Step 7** Click the **Connections** page to view the number of internal and external connections of the current DB instance and the source IP addresses of these connections.

**Figure 9-2** Connections




**Step 8** On the displayed page, click **Change Node** to view the number of internal and external connections of a specified node in the DB instance and the source IP addresses of these connections.

----End

## Managing Sessions

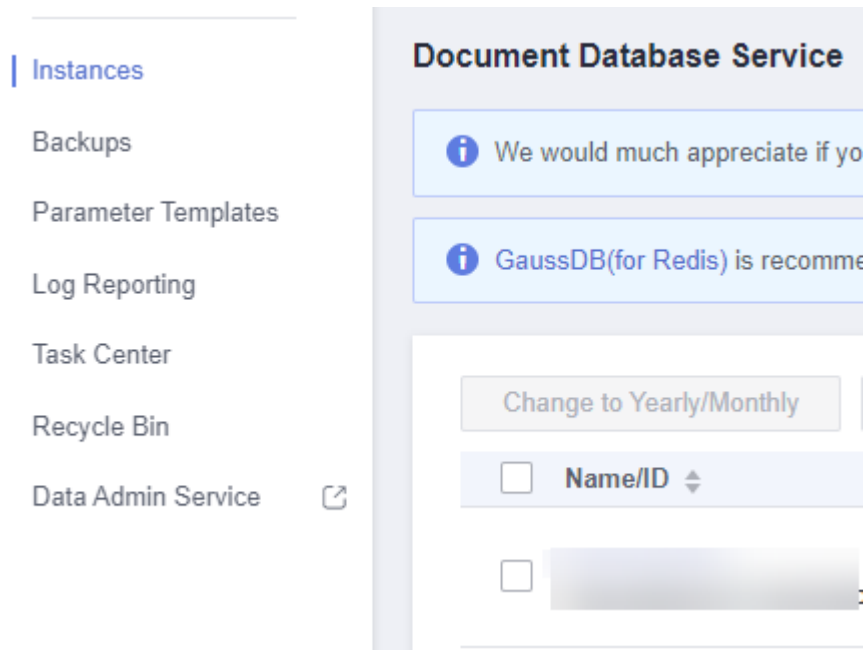
**Step 1** [Log in to the management console.](#)

**Step 2** Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

**Step 3** Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

**Step 4** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Data Admin Service**.

**Figure 9-3** Data Admin Service

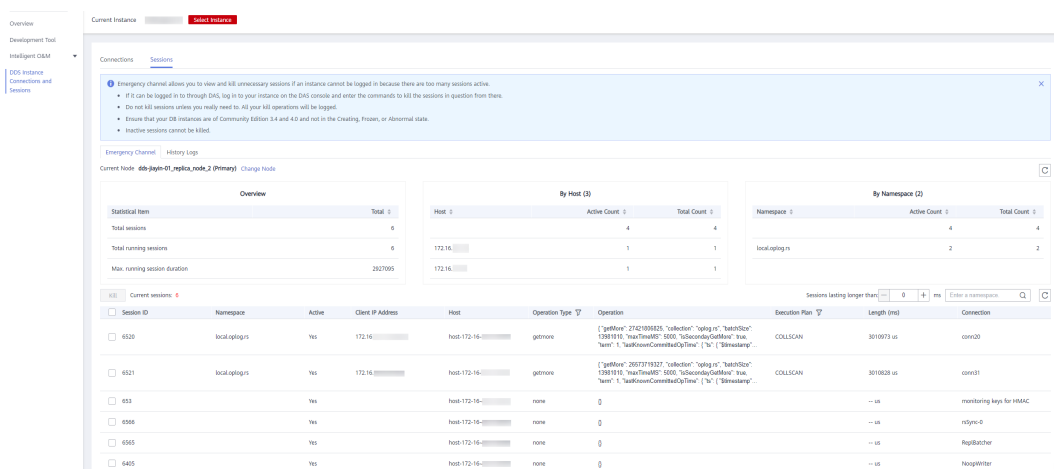


**Step 5** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **DDS Instance Connections and Sessions**.

**Step 6** In the **Current Instance** area in the upper part of the page, click **Select Instance** to select the required DDS DB instance.

**Step 7** Click the **Sessions** page to view the sessions of the current instance node.

**Figure 9-4** Sessions

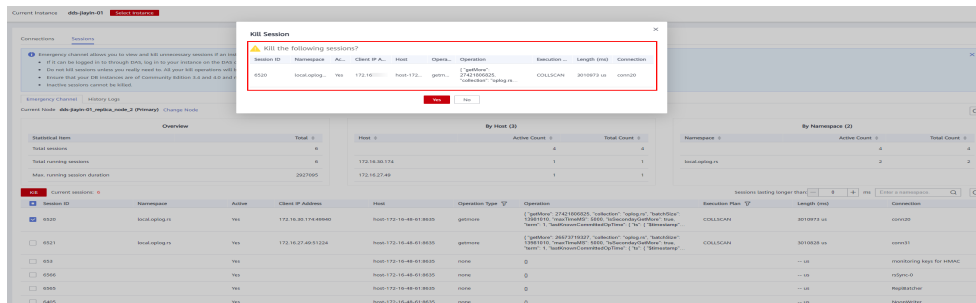


In the statistical item list, you can view total sessions, running sessions, and longest running session time of the current instance node. You can also view total

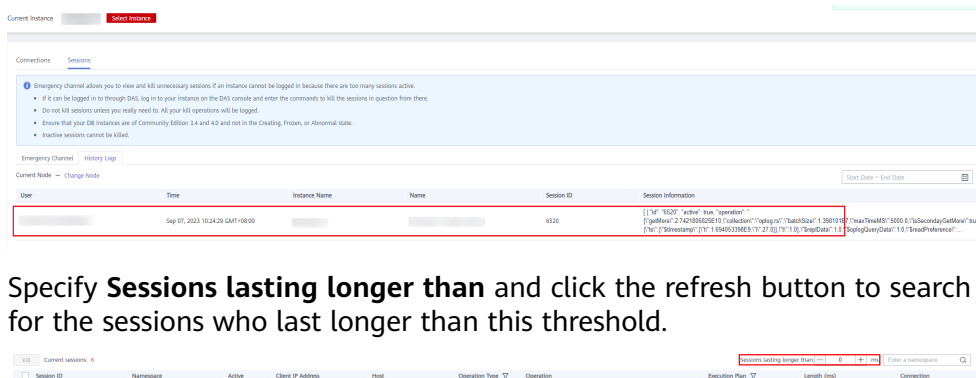


sessions and active sessions by host or namespace. In the session list, you can view session details and perform the following operations:

- Select the abnormal session you want to end and click **Kill** for your database to recover.



- Exercise caution when performing the kill operation. After you kill a session, you can switch to the **History Logs** tab to view the details.



- Specify **Sessions lasting longer than** and click the refresh button to search for the sessions who last longer than this threshold.

----End

## 9.2 Configuring Cross-CIDR Access

When a replica set instance is connected through an internal network, a replica set node is configured with a management NIC (for receiving management instructions and internal communications of the instance) and a data NIC (for receiving and responding to service requests from the client), and the mapping between management IP addresses and data IP addresses of three standard CIDR blocks is configured by default.

- If your client and the replica set instance are deployed in different CIDR blocks and the client CIDR block is 192.168.0.0/16, 172.16.0.0/12, or 10.0.0.0/8, you do not need to configure **Access Across CIDR Blocks** for the instance.
- If your client and the replica set instance are deployed in different CIDR blocks and the client CIDR block is not 192.168.0.0/16, 172.16.0.0/12, or 10.0.0.0/8, you can configure **Access Across CIDR Blocks** for the instance to communicate with your client.
- No standard network segment is configured for replica set instances created before September 2021. If the client and the replica set instance are deployed in different network segments, you need to configure access across CIDR blocks to enable network connectivity.


This section describes how to configure **Access Across CIDR Blocks** for an instance.


## Precautions

- Only replica set instances support this function.
- During the configuration of cross-CIDR access, services are running properly without interruption or intermittent disconnection.
- If the client and the replica set instance are in different VPCs and CIDR blocks, create a **VPC peering connection** between the VPCs and then configure cross-CIDR access.

## Procedure

**Step 1** Log in to the management console.



**Step 2** Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

**Step 3** Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

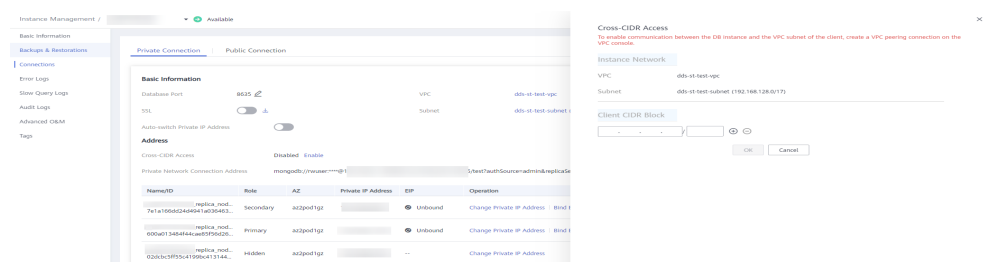
**Step 4** On the **Instances** page, click the instance name.

**Step 5** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Connections**.

**Step 6** On the **Private Connection** tab, click **Enable** to the right of **Cross-CIDR Access**. You can add or delete the blocks as required.

- Click  to add new CIDR blocks.
- Click  to delete existing CIDR blocks.

**Figure 9-5** Cross-CIDR Access

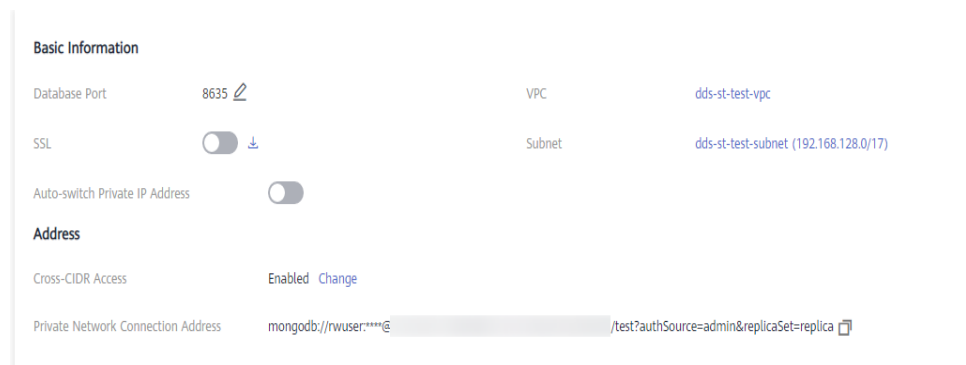


### NOTE

Up to 30 CIDR blocks can be configured, and each of them can overlap but they cannot be the same. That is, the source CIDR blocks can overlap but cannot be the same. The CIDR blocks cannot start with 127. The allowed IP mask ranges from 8 to 32.

**Step 7** View the change results. After cross-CIDR access is enabled, **Enabled** is displayed to the right of **Cross-CIDR Access**.

If you need to change the client CIDR block, click **Change** to the right of **Cross-CIDR Access**.

**Figure 9-6** Changing a CIDR block

----End

## Follow-up Operations

After cross-CIDR access is configured, you can use MongoShell to connect to a replica set instance over a private network. For details, see [Connecting to a Cluster Instance Using Mongo Shell](#).

## 9.3 Enabling IP Addresses of Shard and Config Nodes

A cluster instance for Community Edition consists of dds mongos, shard, and config nodes. When your services need to read and write data from and into databases, connect to the dds mongos node. In certain scenarios (for example, data migration and synchronization between clusters), you need to read data from the shard or config node and will need to obtain the IP address of the corresponding node.

This section describes how to obtain the IP addresses of the shard and config nodes.

### Before You Start

- If you need to use this function, choose [Service Tickets > Create Service Ticket](#) in the upper right corner of the management console and submit the application.
- DDS supports cluster instances of Community Edition 3.4, 4.0 and 4.2.
- DDS creates two connection addresses for the primary and secondary nodes in a shard group or config group.
- The network type of the connection address is the same as that of the current dds mongos node.
- Once the connection addresses are assigned to your nodes, they cannot be changed or deleted.
- If IPv6 is enabled in a subnet, you cannot enable IP addresses of the shard and config nodes for DB instances created using the subnet.
- After you enable the connection address, you can [connect to an instance using Mongo Shell](#).


## Enabling shard IP Address

### NOTE

- The button for showing shard IP address can only be enabled. It cannot be disabled or modified.
- Once the shard IP address is enabled, DDS automatically applies for connection addresses for all shard nodes in the current instance.
- After the shard IP address is enabled and new shard nodes are added, you need to manually locate a newly added shard node and choose **More > Show shard IP Address** in the **Operation** column to show the shard IP address.
- After the shard IP address is enabled, the database user **sharduser** is created. For details about how to reset the password, see [Resetting the Password of User sharduser](#).

**Step 1** [Log in to the management console](#).

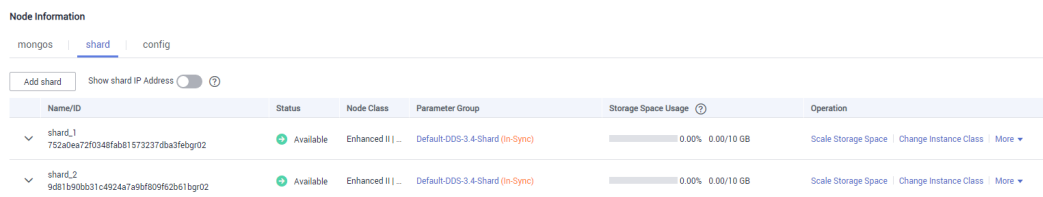
**Step 2** Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

**Step 3** Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

**Step 4** On the **Instances** page, click the instance name. The **Basic Information** page is displayed.

**Step 5** In the **Node Information** area, click the **shard** tab.

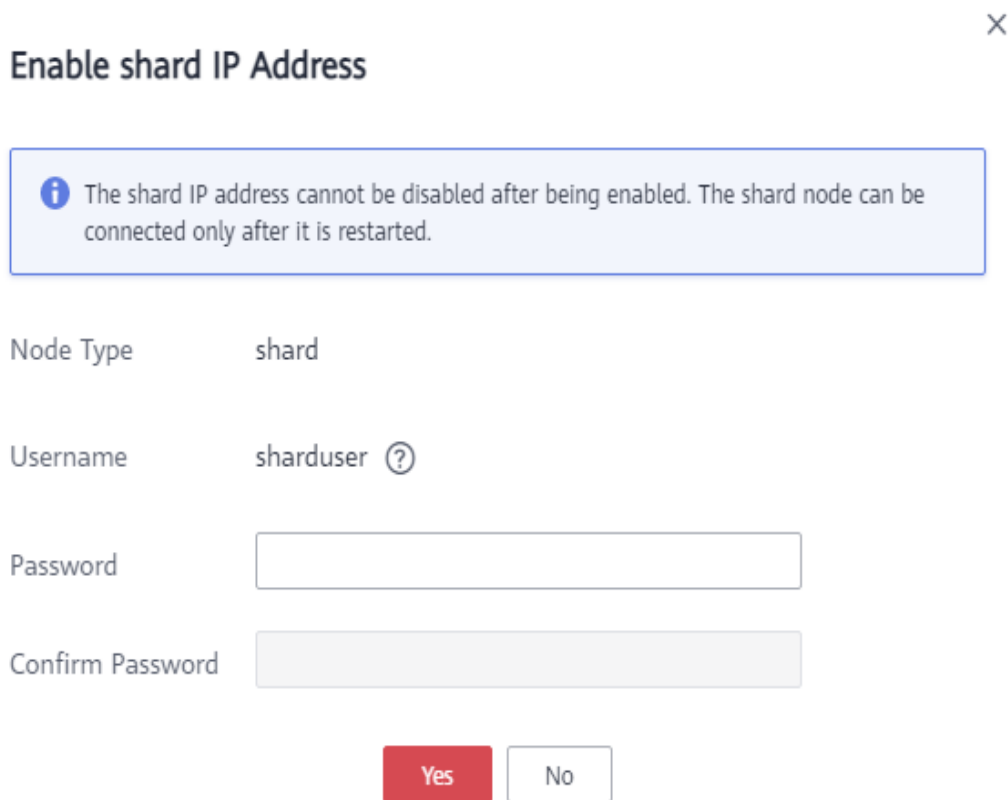
**Figure 9-7** shard nodes



| Name/ID                                        | Status    | Node Class      | Parameter Group                 | Storage Space Usage | Operation                                          |
|------------------------------------------------|-----------|-----------------|---------------------------------|---------------------|----------------------------------------------------|
| shard_1<br>752a0ea72f0348fab81573237dba3febg02 | Available | Enhanced II ... | Default-DDS-3.4-Shard (in-Sync) | 0.00% 0.00/10 GB    | Scale Storage Space   Change Instance Class   More |
| shard_2<br>9d81b90b31c4924a7a9bf809f52b61bgr02 | Available | Enhanced II ... | Default-DDS-3.4-Shard (in-Sync) | 0.00% 0.00/10 GB    | Scale Storage Space   Change Instance Class   More |

**Step 6** Click **Show shard IP Address**. In the displayed dialog box, enter and confirm the password for connecting to the node.

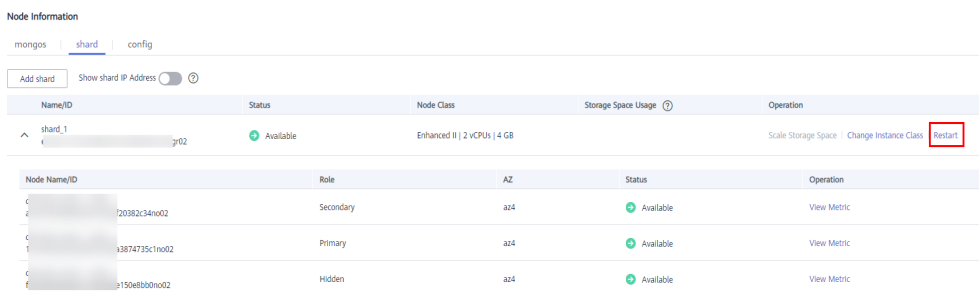
**Figure 9-8** Enable shard IP Address




After the shard IP address is enabled, restart the corresponding shard node for the configuration to take effect.

In the **Node Information** area, locate the row that contains the shard node and click **Restart** in the **Operation** column to restart the shard node.

**Figure 9-9** Restarting a shard node



**Step 7** View the private IP address of the shard node.

After the shard IP address is enabled, you can click  next to a shard node on the current page to expand the node drop-down list or click **Connections** in the navigation pane on the left, and then obtain the private IP address.

**Figure 9-10** Private IP addresses of shard nodes

Node Information

mongos | **shard** | config

Add shard Show shard IP Address

| Name/ID                                         | Status    | Node Class      | Parameter Group                 | Storage Space Usage | Operation                                        |
|-------------------------------------------------|-----------|-----------------|---------------------------------|---------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| shard_1<br>35a7ad4105174840b9c44051c701ca5egr02 | Available | Enhanced II ... | Default-DDS-4.0-Shard (In-Sync) | 0.00% 0.00/10 GB    | Scale Storage Space Change Instance Class More ▾ |

| Node Name/ID                                                  | Role      | AZ  | Status    | Private IP Address | Operation   |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|-----|-----------|--------------------|-------------|
| dds-fj_shard_1_node_1<br>e153c0d652b2b420c9d35ad0d9e49258no02 | Secondary | az1 | Available | 192.168.227.210    | View Metric |
| dds-fj_shard_1_node_2<br>2ba8833c269a4e2a1fe59444036d3c8no02  | Primary   | az1 | Available | 192.168.186.49     | View Metric |
| dds-fj_shard_1_node_3<br>1e92e4448942490fa37cb177f52ae75no02  | Hidden    | az1 | Available | -                  | View Metric |

The connection address of the current shard node is as follows:

mongodb://**sharduser**:<password>@192.168.xx.xx:8637,192.168.xx.xx:8637/test?  
authSource=admin&replicaSet=shard\_?

**NOTE**

- **sharduser** is the username of the current shard node.
- **\*\*\*\*** is the password of the current node.
- **192.168.xx.xx** and **192.168.xx.xx** are the private IP addresses of the primary and secondary shard nodes.
- **8637** is the port of the shard node and cannot be changed.
- **shard\_?** is the name of the shard node to be connected, for example, **shard\_1**.

----End


## Resetting the Password of User sharduser

**NOTE**

This function is available only after the shard IP address is enabled.

**Step 1** Log in to the management console.

**Step 2** Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

**Step 3** Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

**Step 4** On the **Instances** page, click the instance name. The **Basic Information** page is displayed.

**Step 5** In the **Node Information** area, click the **shard** tab.

**Figure 9-11** shard nodes

Node Information

mongos | **shard** | config | Read replicas

Add shard Change Classes in Batches Reset Password Show shard IP Address

| Name/ID                                          | Status    | Node Class               | Storage Space Usage | Operation                               |
|--------------------------------------------------|-----------|--------------------------|---------------------|-----------------------------------------|
| shard_1<br>0b9f9ea11fc742f7ba1a29f9c03f9c0gr02   | Available | Enhanced I 1 vCPU   4 GB | 0.35% 0.35/100 GB   | Scale Storage Space Change Class More ▾ |
| shard_2<br>97a1032c0f9a44ebba077baaw7d809719gr02 | Abnormal  | Enhanced I 1 vCPU   4 GB | 0.35% 0.35/100 GB   | Scale Storage Space Change Class More ▾ |

**Step 6** Click **Reset Password**.

**Figure 9-12** Resetting a password

**Step 7** Enter the new password and click **OK**.

----End

## Enabling config IP Address

### NOTE

- The button for showing config IP address can only be enabled. It cannot be disabled or modified.
- Once the config IP address is enabled, DDS automatically applies for connection addresses for all config nodes in the current instance.
- After the config IP address is enabled, the database user **csuser** is created. For details about how to reset the password, see [Resetting the Password of User csuser](#).

**Step 1** [Log in to the management console](#).

**Step 2** Click in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

**Step 3** Click in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

**Step 4** In the left navigation pane, choose **Instances**. In the instance list, click the instance name to go to the **Basic Information** page.

**Step 5** In the **Node Information** area, click the **config** tab.

**Figure 9-13** config nodes

| Name/ID                                       | Status    | Node Class                  | Parameter Group                  | Storage Space Usage | Operation                        |
|-----------------------------------------------|-----------|-----------------------------|----------------------------------|---------------------|----------------------------------|
| config<br>6eb9dc303684628ba0deb08948419f4gr02 | Available | Enhanced II   2 vCPUs   ... | Default-DDS-3.4-Config (In-Sync) | 0.00% 0.00/20 GB    | Restart   Change Parameter Group |

**Step 6** Click **Show config IP Address**. In the displayed dialog box, enter and confirm the password for connecting to the node.

Figure 9-14 Enable config IP Address

**Enable config IP Address** ✕

**i** The config IP address cannot be disabled after being enabled. The config node can be connected only after it is restarted.

Node Type: config

Username: csuser ?

Password:

Confirm Password:

After the config IP address is enabled, the corresponding config node needs to be restarted for the configuration to take effect.

In the **Node Information** area, locate the row that contains the config node and click **Restart** in the **Operation** column to restart the config node.

Figure 9-15 Restarting a config node

Node Information

mongos | shard | **config**

Show config IP Address

| Name/ID          | Status    | Node Class                   | Storage Space Usage <span>?</span> | Operation      |
|------------------|-----------|------------------------------|------------------------------------|----------------|
| 4c4616806ba5gr02 | Available | Enhanced II   2 vCPUs   4 GB | 0.00% 0.00/20 GB                   | <b>Restart</b> |

| Node Name/ID | Role      | AZ  | Status    | Operation   |
|--------------|-----------|-----|-----------|-------------|
| 73ca7edno02  | Secondary | az4 | Available | View Metric |
| 1e8186f9no02 | Primary   | az4 | Available | View Metric |
| 652f5e6no02  | Hidden    | az4 | Available | View Metric |

**Step 7** View the private IP address of the config node.

After the config IP address is enabled, you can click ▼ next to the node on the current page to expand the node drop-down list or click **Connections** in the navigation pane on the left, and then obtain the private IP address.



**Figure 9-16** Private IP addresses of config nodes

| Name/ID                                                       | Status    | Node Class                  | Parameter Group                  | Storage Space Usage | Operation                        |
|---------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|-----------------------------|----------------------------------|---------------------|----------------------------------|
| config<br>934361f24484e9b81f21f0b1f3a12b9f02                  | Available | Enhanced II   2 vCPUs   ... | Default-DDS-4.0-Config (In-Sync) | 0.00% 0.00/20 GB    | Restart   Change Parameter Group |
| Node Name/ID                                                  | Role      | AZ                          | Status                           | Private IP Address  | Operation                        |
| dds-fg_config_node_1<br>6cfd5c43e54340628a9e3794cf25efb4no02  | Secondary | az1                         | Available                        | -                   | View Metric                      |
| dds-fg_config_node_2<br>a8d91762b0a4442abc708ca11836d34no02   | Primary   | az1                         | Available                        | 192.168.220.236     | View Metric                      |
| dds-fg_config_node_3<br>9d10803739864cf48401ce1a7d3896005no02 | Hidden    | az1                         | Available                        | -                   | View Metric                      |

The connection address of the current config node is as follows:

`mongodb://csuser:<password>@192.168.xx.xx:8636/test?authSource=admin`

**NOTE**

- **csuser** is the username of the current config node.
- **\*\*\*\*** is the password of the current node.
- **192.168.xx.xx** is the private IP address of the primary config node.
- **8636** is the port of the config node and cannot be changed.

----End


## Resetting the Password of User csuser

**NOTE**

This function is available only after the config IP address is enabled.

**Step 1** [Log in to the management console.](#)

**Step 2** Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

**Step 3** Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

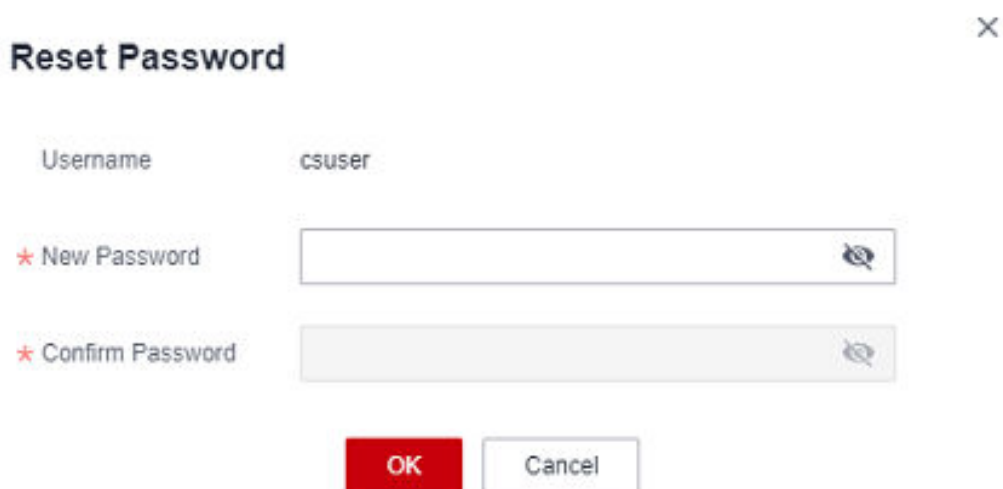
**Step 4** On the **Instances** page, click the instance name. The **Basic Information** page is displayed.

**Step 5** In the **Node Information** area, click the **config** tab.

**Figure 9-17** config nodes

| Name/ID                                       | Status    | Node Class                   | Storage Space Usage | Operation              |
|-----------------------------------------------|-----------|------------------------------|---------------------|------------------------|
| config<br>fcbaf9ce851b4d03bceafe176fa2cd3pr02 | Available | Enhanced II   2 vCPUs   4 GB | 1.70% 0.34/20 GB    | Change Class   Restart |

**Step 6** Click **Reset Password**.

**Figure 9-18** Resetting a password

The screenshot shows a 'Reset Password' dialog box. The 'Username' field is filled with 'csuser'. Below it are two password fields: 'New Password' and 'Confirm Password', both with red asterisks and eye icons. At the bottom are 'OK' and 'Cancel' buttons.

**Step 7** Enter the new password and click **OK**.

----End

## Follow-up Operations

After the connection addresses of the shard or config nodes are enabled, you can connect to the shard or config nodes using MongoShell. The procedure is similar to that for connecting to a dds mongos node. For details, see [Connecting to a Cluster Instance Using Mongo Shell](#).

## 9.4 Changing a Private IP Address

After data is migrated from an on-premises database or other cloud databases to DDS, the private IP address of the database may be changed. DDS allows you to change the private IP address, simplifying and accelerating the migration process.


### Precautions

Changing the private IP address of a node will invalidate the previous private IP address. If an EIP is bound to the node, do not unbind the EIP during the change of the private IP address. After the change, the new private IP address is bound to the EIP.

### Procedure

**Step 1** [Log in to the management console](#).

**Step 2** Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

**Step 3** Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

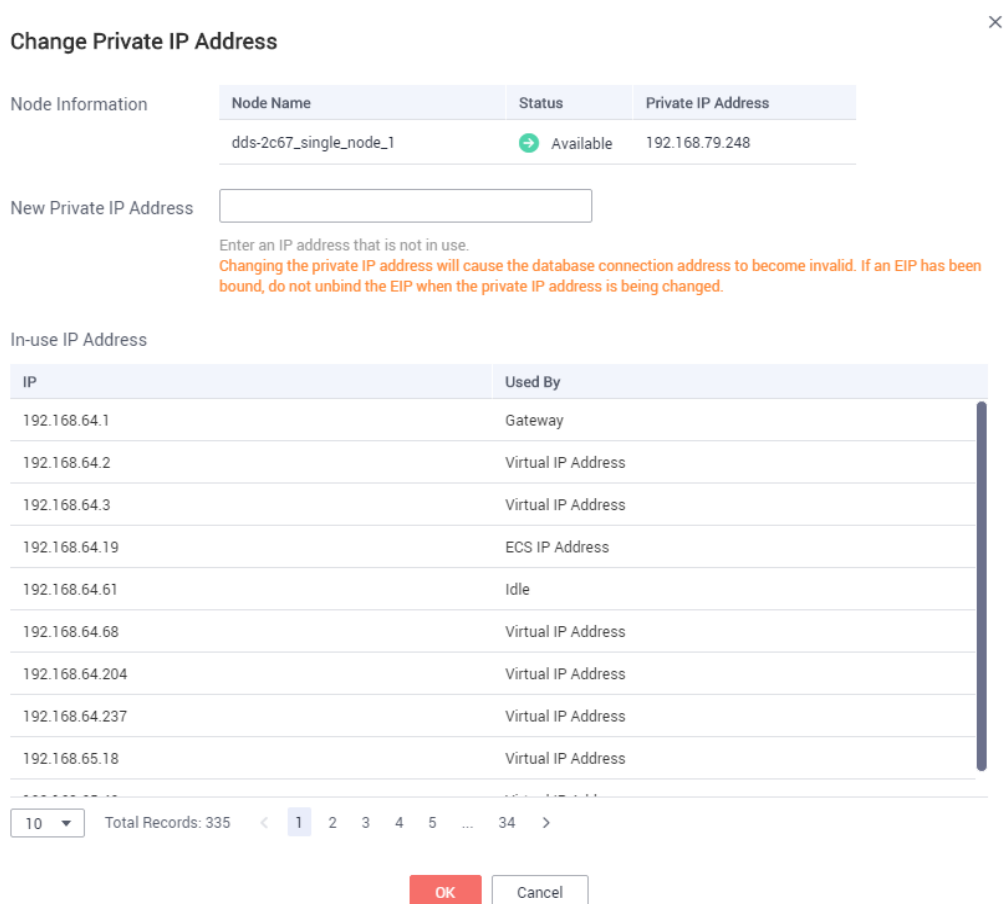
**Step 4** On the **Instances** page, click the instance name. The **Basic Information** page is displayed.

Alternatively, you can click **Connections** in the navigation pane on the left to go to the **Basic Information** page.

**Step 5** In the **Node Information** area, locate the target node and click **Change Private IP Address** in the **Operation** column.

**Step 6** In the displayed dialog box, enter a private IP address that is not in use and click **OK**.

**Figure 9-19** Changing a private IP address



**Step 7** In the **Node Information** area, locate the target node and view the new private IP address.

----End

## 9.5 Changing a Database Port

This section describes how to change a database port.


## Precautions

- For security purposes, the database port cannot be modified when the instance is in any of the following statuses:
  - Frozen
  - Restarting
  - Adding node
  - Switching SSL
  - Changing instance class
  - Deleting node
  - The storage space is being expanded.
  - Abnormal
- The default port of a DB instance is 8635. After a DB instance is created, you can change its port number to a value ranging from 2100 to 65535 (excluding 12017 and 33071).


## Procedure

**Step 1** [Log in to the management console.](#)

**Step 2** Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.


**Step 3** Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

**Step 4** On the **Instances** page, click the instance name.

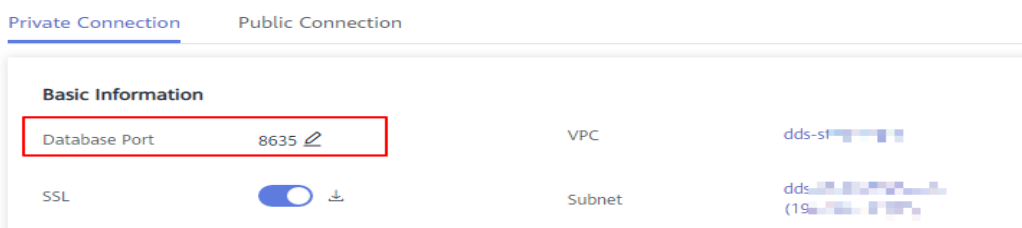
**Step 5** In the **Network Information** area on the **Basic Information** page, click  in the **Database Port** field to change the database port.

**Figure 9-20** Changing a database port





In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Connections** and click  in the **Database Port** field in the **Basic Information** area to change the database port.

**Figure 9-21** Changing a database port



 **NOTE**

The database port ranges from 2100 to 65535 (excluding 12017 and 33071).

- To submit the change, click . This process takes about 1 to 5 minutes.
- To cancel the change, click .

**Step 6** View the modification result.

----End

## 9.6 Applying for and Modifying a Private Domain Name

You can apply for a private domain name and connect to DDS instances using the private domain name.


### Precautions

- After a private domain name is generated, changing the private IP address will interrupt database connections. Exercise caution when performing this operation.
- You need to apply for the permissions needed to use private domain names. For details, contact customer service.
- When this function is enabled, you need to apply for a domain name for an existing instance. A domain name is automatically applied for a new instance.

### Applying for a Private Domain Name

**Step 1** [Log in to the management console.](#)

**Step 2** Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

**Step 3** Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

**Step 4** On the **Instances** page, click the instance name and go to the **Basic Information** page.

**Step 5** In the **Node Information** area on the **Basic Information** page, click **Private Domain Name**.







Alternatively, in the navigation pane on the left, choose **Connections**. In the **Basic Information** area on the **Private Connection** tab, click **Private Domain Name**.

**Figure 9-22** Applying for a private domain name

Node Information

mongos | shard | config

Add mongos **Private Domain Name**

| Name/ID                                                           | Status                                                                              | Node Class     | AZ        | Private IP Address                                                                  | Private Domain Name | EIP                                                                                           | Operation                                |
|-------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|-----------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
| dds-90c1tdh_mongos_node_1<br>710d8b47254d4f9a85b68e87baaa030dno02 |  | 2 vCPUs   4 GB | az1pod1gz |  | --                  |  Unbound | Change Instance Class   Restart   More ▾ |
| dds-90c1tdh_mongos_node_2<br>41d02baadd2b4972b1c3f907aa2cea15nu02 |  | 2 vCPUs   4 GB | az1pod1gz |  | --                  |  Unbound | Change Instance Class   Restart   More ▾ |

**Step 6** In the **Node Information** area on the **Basic Information** page, view the generated private domain names in the **Private Domain Name** column.


Alternatively, click **Connections** in the navigation pane on the left. In the **Basic Information** area on the displayed page, view the generated private domain names in the **Private Domain Name** column.


----End

## Modifying a Private Domain Name

You can change the private domain name of an existing DB instance.

**Step 1** [Log in to the management console.](#)

**Step 2** Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

**Step 3** Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

**Step 4** On the **Instances** page, click the instance name.

**Step 5** In the **Node Information** area on the **Basic Information** page, choose **More > Change Private Domain Name** in the **Operation** column.

Alternatively, choose **Connections** in the navigation pane on the left. In the lower part of the **Basic Information** area on the **Private Connection** tab, choose **More > Change Private Domain Name** in the **Operation** column.

**Step 6** In the displayed dialog box, enter a new private domain name. Click **OK**. After the private domain name is changed, it takes about 5 minutes for the change to take effect.

### NOTE

- Only the prefix of a private domain name can be modified.
- The prefix of a private domain name can contain 8 to 56 characters, and can include only letters and digits.
- The new private domain name must be different from the existing ones.

**Step 7** If you have enabled the operation protection function, click **Send Code** in the displayed **Identity Verification** dialog box and enter the obtained verification code. Then, click **OK**.

Two-factor authentication improves the security of your account and cloud product. For details about how to enable operation protection, see the *Identity and Access Management User Guide*.

----End

# 10 Database Usage

---

## 10.1 Creating a Database Account Using Commands

When you create a DDS instance, the system automatically creates the default account **rwuser**. You can use the default account **rwuser** to create other database accounts based on service requirements. Then, you can use the default account **rwuser** or other created accounts to perform operations on data in the database, such as databases, tables, and indexes.

### Precautions

- When creating a database account for a specified instance, you are advised to enable SSL to improve data security.
- If the existing DDS instances are of version 3.2, you cannot create database accounts for them. You can only change the password of the administrator account **rwuser**.
- When creating a database account, configure `passwordDigestor:"server"`. For details, see the [official document](#).

### Prerequisites

A DDS instance has been connected. For details, see "Connecting to an Instance over a Public Network" and "Connecting to an Instance over a Private Network" in *Document Database Service Getting Started*.

### Account Description

- When a DDS instance is created, users **root**, **monitor**, and **backup** are automatically created. These accounts belong to the Huawei Cloud DB instance management platform and cannot be operated or used. Attempting to delete, rename, change the passwords, or change privileges for these accounts will result in errors.
- You can change the password of the database administrator **rwuser** and any accounts you create.

- The default user **rwuser** and users created by **rwuser** have limited permissions on system databases **admin** and **config**. They have all required permissions on the databases and tables created under them.
- Generally, a MongoDB user is created in a specified authentication database. When connecting to a database, use **--authenticationDatabase** to specify the corresponding authentication database.
- In a DDS instance, the default authentication database of user **rwuser** is **admin**.
- If you enter incorrect passwords for five consecutive times, the account will be locked for 10s.

## Setting Password Strength for Database Accounts

- The administrator password must meet the following password policy:
  - Contains 8 to 32 characters.
  - Must be a combination of uppercase letters, lowercase letters, digits, and special characters: `~!@#%^*_-=+?()$`
- The database user created on the client must meet the following password policy:
  - Contains 8 to 32 characters.
  - Must be a combination of uppercase letters, lowercase letters, digits, and special characters: `~@#%~!*_+=^?`

When you create a DB instance or set a password, DDS automatically checks your password strength. If the password does not meet the complexity requirements, change the password as prompted.

## Creating an Account

**Step 1** Run the following command to select the admin database:

```
use admin
```

**Step 2** Run the following command to create a database account (**user1** as an example):

```
db.createUser({user: "user1", pwd: "****", passwordDigestor:"server", roles: [{role: "root", db: "admin"}]})
```

- **server** indicates the password encrypted on the server. It has a fixed value and does not need to be changed.
- **\*\*\*\***: indicates the example new password. The password must be 8 to 32 characters in length and contain uppercase letters, lowercase letters, digits, and special characters, such as `~@#%~!*_+=^?`
- **roles** restricts the rights of the account. If an empty array is specified, the account does not have any permission.

**Step 3** Check the result:

The account is successfully created if the following information is displayed:

```
Successfully added user: {
 "user" : "user1",
 "passwordDigestor" : "server",
 "roles" : [
```



```
 {
 "role" : "root",
 "db" : "admin"
 }
]
}
```

----End

## Changing a Password

**Step 1** Run the following command to select the admin database:

```
use admin
```

**Step 2** Uses user `user1` as an example. Run the following command to change its password:

```
db.updateUser("user1", {passwordDigestor:"server",pwd:"newPasswd12#"})
```

- `server` indicates the password encrypted on the server. It has a fixed value and does not need to be changed.
- `newPasswd12#`: indicates the example new password. The password must be 8 to 32 characters in length and contain uppercase letters, lowercase letters, digits, and special characters, such as `~@#%-_!*+=^?`
- If the password contains any of the special characters `@/ %?#` and is used in the MongoDB URL, escape the special characters in the URL and replace them with hexadecimal URL codes (ASCII codes).

**Step 3** Check the setting result. The password is successfully changed if the following information is displayed:

- Cluster  
mongos>
- Replica set  
replica:PRIMARY>
- Single node  
replica:PRIMARY>

----End

## Connecting to an Instance Using the Created Account

After a database account is created, it can be used to connect to the database. The operation details are as follows:

- [Connecting to a Cluster Instance Using Mongo Shell \(Private Network\)](#)
- [Connecting to a Cluster Instance Using Mongo Shell \(Public Network\)](#)
- [Connecting to a Replica Set Instance Using Mongo Shell \(Private Network\)](#)
- [Connecting to a Replica Set Instance Using Mongo Shell \(Public Network\)](#)
- [Connecting to a Single Node Instance Using Mongo Shell \(Private Network\)](#)
- [Connecting to a Single Node Instance Using Mongo Shell \(Public Network\)](#)

## 10.2 Creating a Database Using Commands

A database is a collection of tables, indexes, views, stored procedures, and operators. To make it easier to manage DDS DB instances, you can create a database by running commands on the newly-created DB instance. If the database does not exist, create the database and switch to the new database. If the database exists, directly switch to the database.

### Prerequisites

A DDS instance has been connected. For details, see "Connecting to an Instance over a Public Network" and "Connecting to an Instance over a Private Network" in *Document Database Service Getting Started*.

### Procedure

**Step 1** Create a database.

```
use dbname
```

*dbname*: indicates the name of the database to be created.

**Figure 10-1** Creating databases

```
replica:PRIMARY> use test001
switched to db test001
```

**Step 2** After a database is created, insert data into the database so that you can view the database in the database list.

**Figure 10-2** Inserting data

```
replica:PRIMARY> db.user.insert({"key1":"value1"})
WriteResult({ "nInserted" : 1 })
replica:PRIMARY> show dbs
admin 0.000GB
local 0.004GB
test 0.000GB
test001 0.000GB
replica:PRIMARY>
```

#### NOTE

There are three system databases created by default: admin, local, and test. If you directly insert data without creating a database, the data is inserted to the test database by default.

**Figure 10-3** Viewing the database

```
replica:PRIMARY> show dbs
admin 0.000GB
local 0.004GB
test 0.000GB
```

**Step 3** View data in the database.

**Figure 10-4** Viewing data

```

replica:PRIMARY> show collections
user
replica:PRIMARY> db.user.find()
{ "_id" : ObjectId("5da1880d2b4ccf2e1163ad1d"), "key1" : "value1" }

```

----End

## 10.3 Which Commands are Supported or Restricted by DDS?

The following tables list the commands supported and restricted by DDS.

For more information, see [official MongoDB documentation](#).

 **NOTE**

As shown in the following table, "√" indicates that the current version supports the command, and "x" indicates that the current version does not support the command.

**Table 10-1** Commands supported and restricted by DDS

| Type                | Command   | 3.4 | 4.0 | 4.2 | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
|---------------------|-----------|-----|-----|-----|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Aggregates Commands | aggregate | √   | √   | √   | -                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|                     | count     | √   | √   | √   | -                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|                     | distinct  | √   | √   | √   | -                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|                     | group     | √   | √   | √   | -                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
|                     | mapReduce | √   | √   | √   | This command can be used only when the <b>security.javascriptEnabled</b> parameter in the parameter template associated with the DB instance is set to <b>true</b> . For more information, see <a href="#">How Do I Use MapReduce Commands?</a> |

| Type                               | Command                  | 3.4 | 4.0 | 4.2 | Description    |
|------------------------------------|--------------------------|-----|-----|-----|----------------|
| Geospatial Commands                | geoNear                  | √   | √   | √   | -              |
|                                    | geoSearch                | √   | √   | √   | -              |
| Query and Write Operation Commands | find                     | √   | √   | √   | -              |
|                                    | insert                   | √   | √   | √   | -              |
|                                    | update                   | √   | √   | √   | -              |
|                                    | delete                   | √   | √   | √   | -              |
|                                    | findAndModify            | √   | √   | √   | -              |
|                                    | getMore                  | √   | √   | √   | -              |
|                                    | getLastError             | √   | √   | √   | -              |
|                                    | resetError               | √   | √   | √   | -              |
|                                    | getPrevError             | √   | √   | √   | -              |
|                                    | parallelCollectionScan   | √   | √   | √   | -              |
| Query Plan Cache Commands          | planCacheListFilters     | √   | √   | √   | -              |
|                                    | planCacheSetFilter       | √   | √   | √   | -              |
|                                    | planCacheClearFilters    | √   | √   | √   | -              |
|                                    | planCacheListQueryShapes | √   | √   | √   | -              |
|                                    | planCacheListPlans       | √   | √   | √   | -              |
|                                    | planCacheClear           | √   | √   | √   | -              |
| Authentication Commands            | logout                   | √   | √   | √   | -              |
|                                    | authenticate             | √   | √   | √   | -              |
|                                    | copydbgetnonce           | √   | √   | √   | -              |
|                                    | getnonce                 | √   | √   | √   | -              |
|                                    | authSchemaUpgrade        | x   | x   | x   | System command |

| Type                     | Command                  | 3.4 | 4.0 | 4.2 | Description    |
|--------------------------|--------------------------|-----|-----|-----|----------------|
| User Management Commands | createUser               | √   | √   | √   | -              |
|                          | updateUser               | √   | √   | √   | -              |
|                          | dropUser                 | √   | √   | √   | -              |
|                          | dropAllUsersFromDatabase | √   | √   | √   | -              |
|                          | grantRolesToUser         | √   | √   | √   | -              |
|                          | revokeRolesFromUser      | √   | √   | √   | -              |
|                          | usersInfo                | √   | √   | √   | -              |
| Role Management Commands | invalidateUserCache      | √   | √   | √   | -              |
|                          | createRole               | √   | √   | √   | -              |
|                          | updateRole               | √   | √   | √   | -              |
|                          | dropRole                 | √   | √   | √   | -              |
|                          | dropAllRolesFromDatabase | √   | √   | √   | -              |
|                          | grantPrivilegesToRole    | √   | √   | √   | -              |
|                          | revokePrivilegesFromRole | √   | √   | √   | -              |
|                          | grantRolesToRole         | √   | √   | √   | -              |
|                          | revokeRolesFromRole      | √   | √   | √   | -              |
|                          | rolesInfo                | √   | √   | √   | -              |
| Replication Commands     | replSetElect             | x   | x   | x   | System command |
|                          | replSetUpdatePosition    | x   | x   | x   | System command |
|                          | appendOplogNote          | x   | x   | x   | System command |
|                          | replSetFreeze            | x   | x   | x   | System command |
|                          | replSetGetStatus         | √   | √   | √   | -              |

| Type              | Command                      | 3.4 | 4.0 | 4.2                | Description            |
|-------------------|------------------------------|-----|-----|--------------------|------------------------|
|                   | replSetInitiate              | x   | x   | x                  | System command         |
|                   | replSetMaintenance           | x   | x   | x                  | System command         |
|                   | replSetReconfig              | x   | x   | x                  | System command         |
|                   | replSetStepDown              | x   | x   | x                  | System command         |
|                   | replSetSyncFrom              | x   | x   | x                  | System command         |
|                   | replSetRequestVotes          | x   | x   | x                  | System command         |
|                   | replSetDeclareElectionWinner | x   | x   | x                  | System command         |
|                   | resync                       | x   | x   | x                  | System command         |
|                   | applyOps                     | x   | x   | x                  | System command         |
|                   | isMaster                     | √   | √   | √                  | -                      |
|                   | replSetGetConfig             | x   | x   | x                  | System command         |
| Sharding Commands | flushRouterConfig            | √   | √   | √                  | High-risk commands     |
|                   | addShard                     | x   | x   | x                  | Unauthorized operation |
|                   | addShardToZone               | √   | √   | √                  | -                      |
|                   | balancerStart                | √   | √   | √                  | -                      |
|                   | balancerStatus               | √   | √   | √                  | -                      |
|                   | balancerStop                 | √   | √   | √                  | -                      |
|                   | removeShardFromZone          | √   | √   | √                  | -                      |
|                   | updateZoneKeyRange           | √   | √   | √                  | -                      |
| cleanupOrphaned   | x                            | x   | x   | High-risk commands |                        |

| Type                    | Command                        | 3.4 | 4.0 | 4.2 | Description        |
|-------------------------|--------------------------------|-----|-----|-----|--------------------|
|                         | checkShardingIndex             | x   | x   | x   | System command     |
|                         | enableSharding                 | √   | √   | √   | -                  |
|                         | listShards                     | x   | x   | x   | System command     |
|                         | removeShard                    | x   | x   | x   | High-risk commands |
|                         | getShardMap                    | x   | x   | x   | System command     |
|                         | getShardVersion                | √   | √   | √   | -                  |
|                         | mergeChunks                    | √   | √   | √   | -                  |
|                         | setShardVersion                | x   | x   | x   | System command     |
|                         | shardCollection                | √   | √   | √   | -                  |
|                         | shardingState                  | x   | x   | x   | System command     |
|                         | unsetSharding                  | x   | x   | x   | System command     |
|                         | split                          | √   | √   | √   | -                  |
|                         | splitChunk                     | √   | √   | √   | -                  |
|                         | splitVector                    | √   | √   | √   | -                  |
|                         | moveChunk                      | √   | √   | √   | -                  |
|                         | movePrimary                    | √   | x   | √   | -                  |
|                         | isdbgrid                       | √   | √   | √   | -                  |
| Administration Commands | setFeatureCompatibilityVersion | √   | √   | √   | -                  |
|                         | renameCollection               | √   | √   | √   | -                  |
|                         | dropDatabase                   | √   | √   | √   | -                  |
|                         | listCollections                | √   | √   | √   | -                  |
|                         | drop                           | √   | √   | √   | -                  |
|                         | create                         | √   | √   | √   | -                  |

| Type | Command                  | 3.4 | 4.0 | 4.2 | Description                  |
|------|--------------------------|-----|-----|-----|------------------------------|
|      | clone                    | x   | x   | x   | System command               |
|      | cloneCollection          | √   | √   | √   | -                            |
|      | cloneCollection AsCapped | √   | √   | √   | -                            |
|      | convertToCapped          | √   | √   | √   | -                            |
|      | filemd5                  | √   | √   | √   | -                            |
|      | createIndexes            | √   | √   | √   | -                            |
|      | listIndexes              | √   | √   | √   | -                            |
|      | dropIndexes              | √   | √   | √   | -                            |
|      | fsync                    | √   | √   | √   | -                            |
|      | clean                    | x   | x   | x   | System command               |
|      | connPoolSync             | x   | x   | x   | System command               |
|      | connectionStatus         | √   | √   | √   | -                            |
|      | compact                  | x   | x   | x   | High-risk commands           |
|      | collMod                  | √   | √   | √   | -                            |
|      | reIndex                  | √   | √   | √   | -                            |
|      | setParameter             | x   | x   | x   | System configuration command |
|      | getParameter             | √   | √   | √   | -                            |
|      | repairDatabase           | x   | x   | x   | High-risk commands           |
|      | repairCursor             | x   | x   | x   | System command               |
|      | touch                    | √   | √   | √   | -                            |
|      | shutdown                 | x   | x   | x   | High-risk commands           |
|      | logRotate                | x   | x   | x   | High-risk commands           |



| Type                | Command               | 3.4 | 4.0 | 4.2 | Description    |
|---------------------|-----------------------|-----|-----|-----|----------------|
|                     | killOp                | √   | √   | √   | -              |
|                     | releaseFreeMemory     | √   | √   | √   | -              |
| Diagnostic Commands | availableQueryOptions | √   | √   | √   | -              |
|                     | buildInfo             | √   | √   | √   | -              |
|                     | collStats             | √   | √   | √   | -              |
|                     | connPoolStats         | x   | x   | x   | System command |
|                     | cursorInfo            | x   | x   | x   | System command |
|                     | dataSize              | √   | √   | √   | -              |
|                     | dbHash                | x   | x   | x   | System command |
|                     | dbStats               | √   | √   | √   | -              |
|                     | diagLogging           | x   | x   | x   | System command |
|                     | driverOIDTest         | x   | x   | x   | System command |
|                     | explain               | √   | √   | √   | -              |
|                     | features              | √   | √   | √   | -              |
|                     | getCmdLineOptions     | x   | x   | x   | System command |
|                     | getLog                | x   | x   | x   | System command |
|                     | hostInfo              | x   | x   | x   | System command |
|                     | isSelf                | x   | x   | x   | System command |
|                     | listCommands          | √   | √   | √   | -              |
|                     | listDatabases         | √   | √   | √   | -              |
|                     | netstat               | x   | x   | x   | System command |
|                     | ping                  | √   | √   | √   | -              |
| profile             | √                     | √   | √   | -   |                |

| Type              | Command                  | 3.4 | 4.0 | 4.2 | Description                  |
|-------------------|--------------------------|-----|-----|-----|------------------------------|
|                   | serverStatus             | √   | √   | √   | -                            |
|                   | shardConnPoolStats       | x   | x   | x   | System command               |
|                   | top                      | √   | √   | √   | -                            |
|                   | validate                 | x   | x   | x   | System configuration command |
|                   | whatsmyuri               | √   | √   | √   | -                            |
| Internal Commands | handshake                | x   | x   | x   | System command               |
|                   | _recvChunkAbort          | x   | x   | x   | System command               |
|                   | _recvChunkCommit         | x   | x   | x   | System command               |
|                   | _recvChunkStart          | x   | x   | x   | System command               |
|                   | _recvChunkStatus         | x   | x   | x   | System command               |
|                   | _replSetFresh            | x   | x   | x   | System command               |
|                   | mapreduce.sharddedfinish | x   | x   | x   | System command               |
|                   | _transferMods            | x   | x   | x   | System command               |
|                   | replSetHeartbeat         | x   | x   | x   | System command               |
|                   | replSetGetRBID           | x   | x   | x   | System command               |
|                   | _migrateClone            | x   | x   | x   | System command               |
|                   | replSetElect             | x   | x   | x   | System command               |
|                   | writeBacksQueued         | x   | x   | x   | System command               |
|                   | writebacklisten          | x   | x   | x   | System command               |

| Type                            | Command                | 3.4 | 4.0 | 4.2 | Description    |
|---------------------------------|------------------------|-----|-----|-----|----------------|
| System Events Auditing Commands | logApplication Message | x   | x   | x   | System command |

# 11 Data Security

## 11.1 Enabling or Disabling SSL

Secure Socket Layer (SSL) is an encryption-based Internet security protocol for establishing an encrypted link between a server and a client. It provides privacy, authentication, and integrity to Internet communications.

- Authenticates users and servers, ensuring that data is sent to the correct clients and servers.
- Encrypts data to prevent it from being intercepted during transfer.
- Ensures data integrity during transmission.

After SSL is enabled, you can establish an encrypted connection between your client and the instance you want to access to improve data security.

### Precautions

- Enabling or disabling SSL will cause instances to restart. Exercise caution when performing this operation.

#### NOTE

When you enable or disable SSL, DDS will restart once. During the restart, each node will be intermittently disconnected for about 30 seconds. You are advised to enable or disable SSL during off-peak hours and ensure that your applications support automatic reconnection.

- If SSL is enabled, you can connect to a database using SSL, which is more secure.

Currently, insecure encryption algorithms are disabled. The following table lists the supported TLS versions and cipher suites.


| Version | TLS Version | Cipher Suites                                       |
|---------|-------------|-----------------------------------------------------|
| 3.4     | TLS 1.2     | AES256-GCM-SHA384 AES128-GCM-SHA256                 |
| 4.0     | TLS 1.2     | DHE-RSA-AES256-GCM-SHA384 DHE-RSA-AES128-GCM-SHA256 |


The server where the client is located must support the corresponding TLS version and encryption algorithm suite. Otherwise, the connection fails.

- If SSL is disabled, you can connect to a database using an unencrypted connection.

## Enabling SSL

**Step 1** [Log in to the management console.](#)

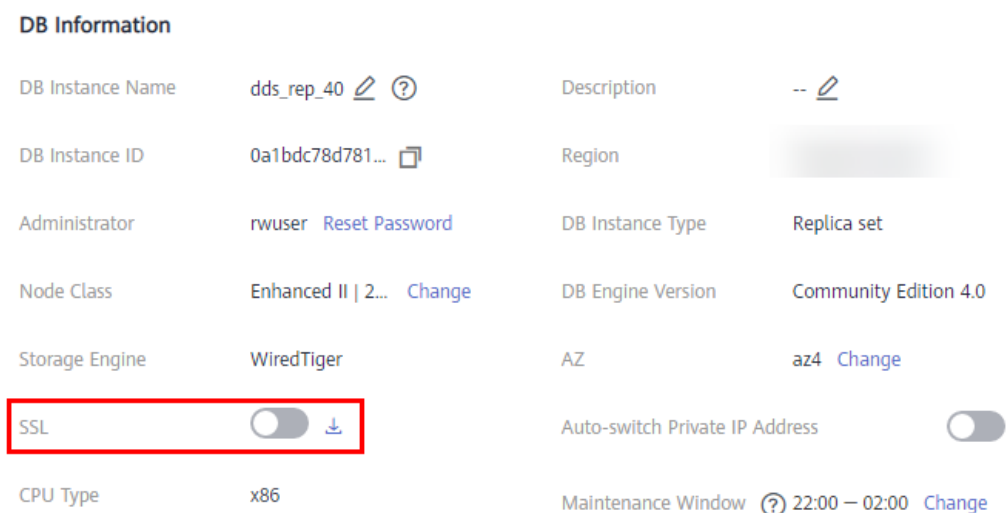
**Step 2** Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.


**Step 3** Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

**Step 4** On the **Instances** page, click the target DB instance.

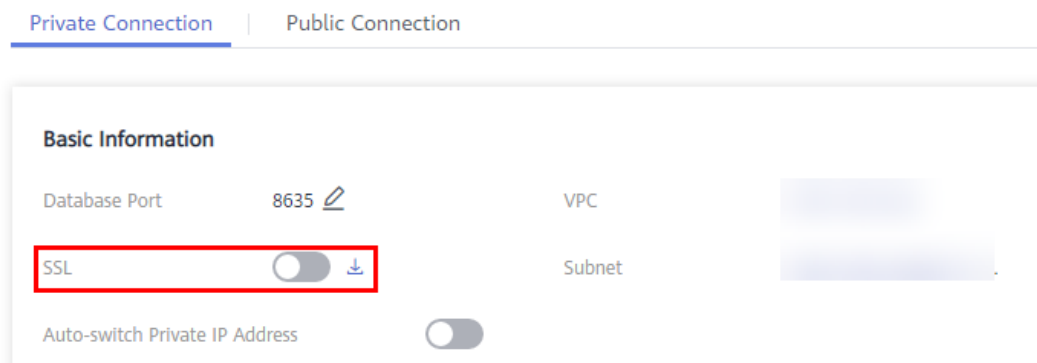
**Step 5** In the **DB Information** area on the **Basic Information** page, click  next to the **SSL** field.

**Figure 11-1** Enabling SSL



Alternatively, in the navigation pane on the left, choose **Connections**. In the **Basic Information** area, click  next to the **SSL** field.

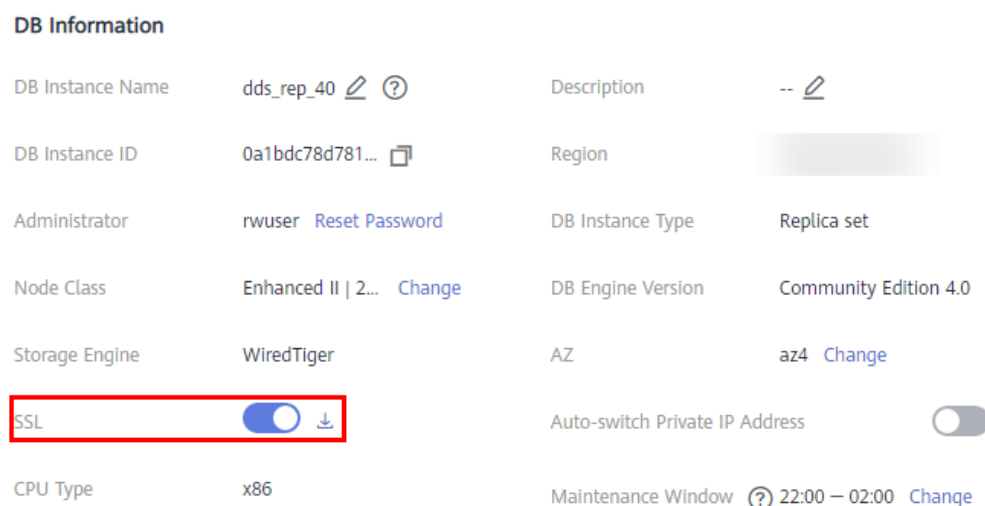
**Figure 11-2** Enabling SSL



**Step 6** In the displayed dialog box, click **Yes**.

**Step 7** In the **Basic Information** area, view the modification result.

**Figure 11-3** SSL enabled



**Step 8** After SSL is enabled, click  next to **SSL** to download an SSL certificate.

For details about how to connect to an instance using SSL, refer to the following content:


- [Connecting to a Cluster Instance Using SSL](#)
- [Connecting to a Replica Set Instance Using SSL](#)
- [Connecting to a Single Node Instance Using SSL](#)

----End

## Disabling SSL

**Step 1** [Log in to the management console](#).

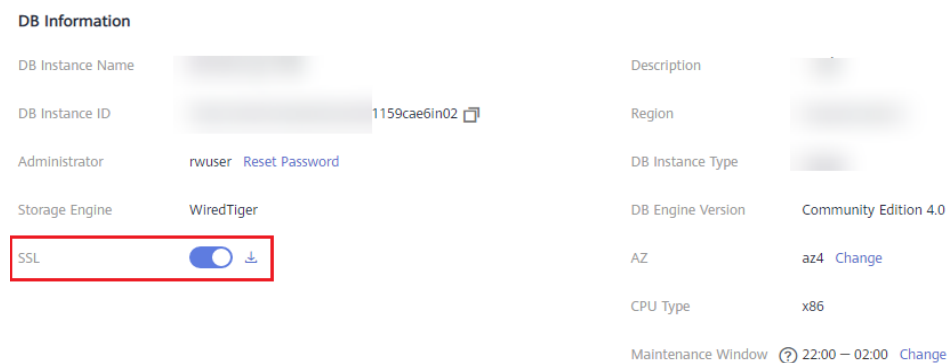
**Step 2** Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.


**Step 3** Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

**Step 4** On the **Instances** page, click the target DB instance.

**Step 5** In the **DB Information** area on the **Basic Information** page, click  next to the **SSL** field.

**Figure 11-4** Disabling SSL



Alternatively, in the navigation pane on the left, choose **Connections**. In the **Basic Information** area, click  next to the **SSL** field.

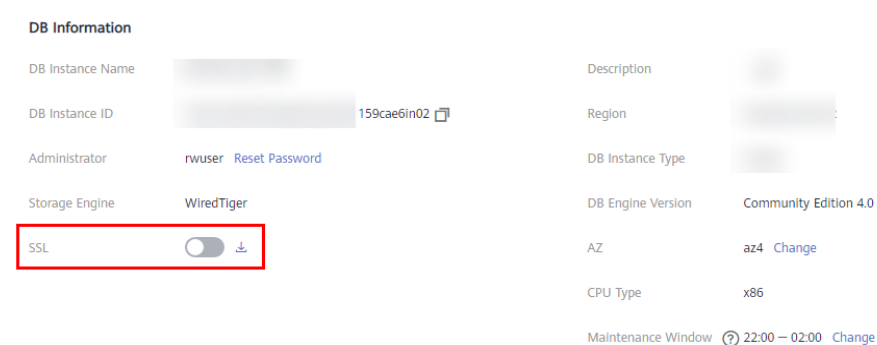
**Figure 11-5** Disabling SSL



**Step 6** In the displayed dialog box, click **Yes**.

**Step 7** In the **Basic Information** area, view the modification result.

**Figure 11-6** SSL disabled



**Step 8** Connect to an instance using an unencrypted connection.

For details, refer to the following content:

- [Connecting to a Cluster Instance Using an Unencrypted Connection](#)
- [Connecting to a Replica Set Instance Using an Unencrypted Connection](#)
- [Connecting to a Single Node Instance Using an Unencrypted Connection](#)

----End

## 11.2 Resetting the Administrator Password

For security reasons, you are advised to periodically change administrator passwords.

If you do not set the administrator password for the DB instance that you are creating, you need to reset the password before connecting to the DB instance.


### Precautions

- You cannot reset the administrator password for an instance is in any of the following statuses:
  - Frozen
  - Creating
  - Restarting
  - Adding node
  - Switching SSL
  - Changing port
  - Changing instance class
  - Deleting node
  - Upgrading minor version
  - Switchover in progress
  - Changing AZ
  - Adding read replicas
- If you enable operation protection to improve the security of your account and cloud products, two-factor authentication is required for sensitive operations. For details about how to enable operation protection, see [Operation Protection](#) in *Identity and Access Management User Guide*.

### Procedure

**Step 1** [Log in to the management console](#).

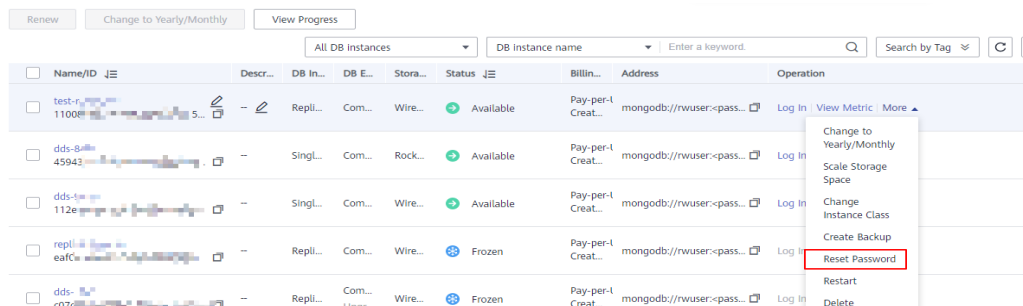
**Step 2** Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

**Step 3** Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.



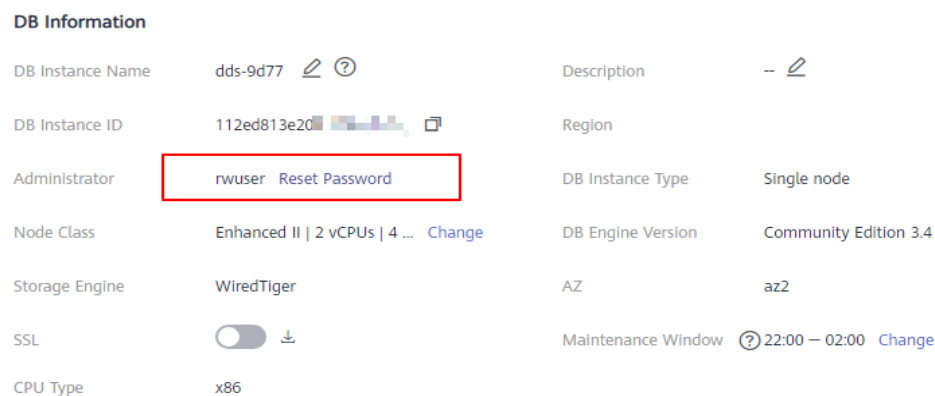
**Step 4** On the **Instances** page, locate the target DB instance and choose **More > Reset Password** in the **Operation** column.

**Figure 11-7** Resetting a password



Alternatively, on the **Instances** page, click the instance. In the **DB Information** area on the **Basic Information** page, click **Reset Password** in the **Administrator** field.

**Figure 11-8** Resetting a password



**Step 5** Enter and confirm the new administrator password and click **OK**.

- Resetting the password does not disconnect the authenticated connection. However, you will need to enter the new password when logging in to the database.
- The password must be 8 to 32 characters in length and contain uppercase letters, lowercase letters, digits, and any of the following special characters ~!  
@#%^\*\_-=+?()\$

**Step 6** If you have enabled operation protection, click **Start Verification** in the displayed dialog box. On the displayed page, click **Send Code**, enter the verification code, and click **Verify** to close the page.

----End

## 11.3 Changing a Security Group

This section describes how to change a security group for cluster and replica set instances

## Precautions


If any of the following operations is in progress, do not change the security group:

- Adding nodes
- Migrating data

## Changing a Security Group


**Step 1** [Log in to the management console.](#)

**Step 2** Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

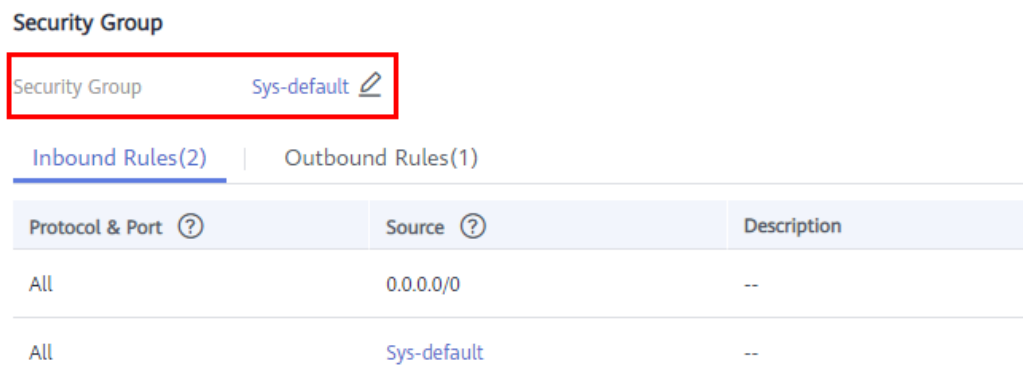
**Step 3** Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service.**



**Step 4** On the **Instances** page, click the target DB instance.

**Step 5** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Connections.**

**Step 6** In the **Security Group** area, click  to select the security group to which the DB instance belongs.

**Figure 11-9** Changing a security group



- To submit the change, click . This process takes about 1 to 3 minutes.
- To cancel the change, click .

**Step 7** View the modification result.



----End

## Managing Security Groups

### NOTE

To use multiple security groups for a DDS instance, choose [Service Tickets > Create Service Ticket](#) in the upper right corner of the management console to apply for the required permissions.

**Step 1** [Log in to the management console.](#)

- Step 2** Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.
- Step 3** Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.
- Step 4** On the **Instances** page, click the instance name.
- Step 5** In the **Network Information** area on the **Basic Information** page, click **Manage** next to the **Security Group** field.

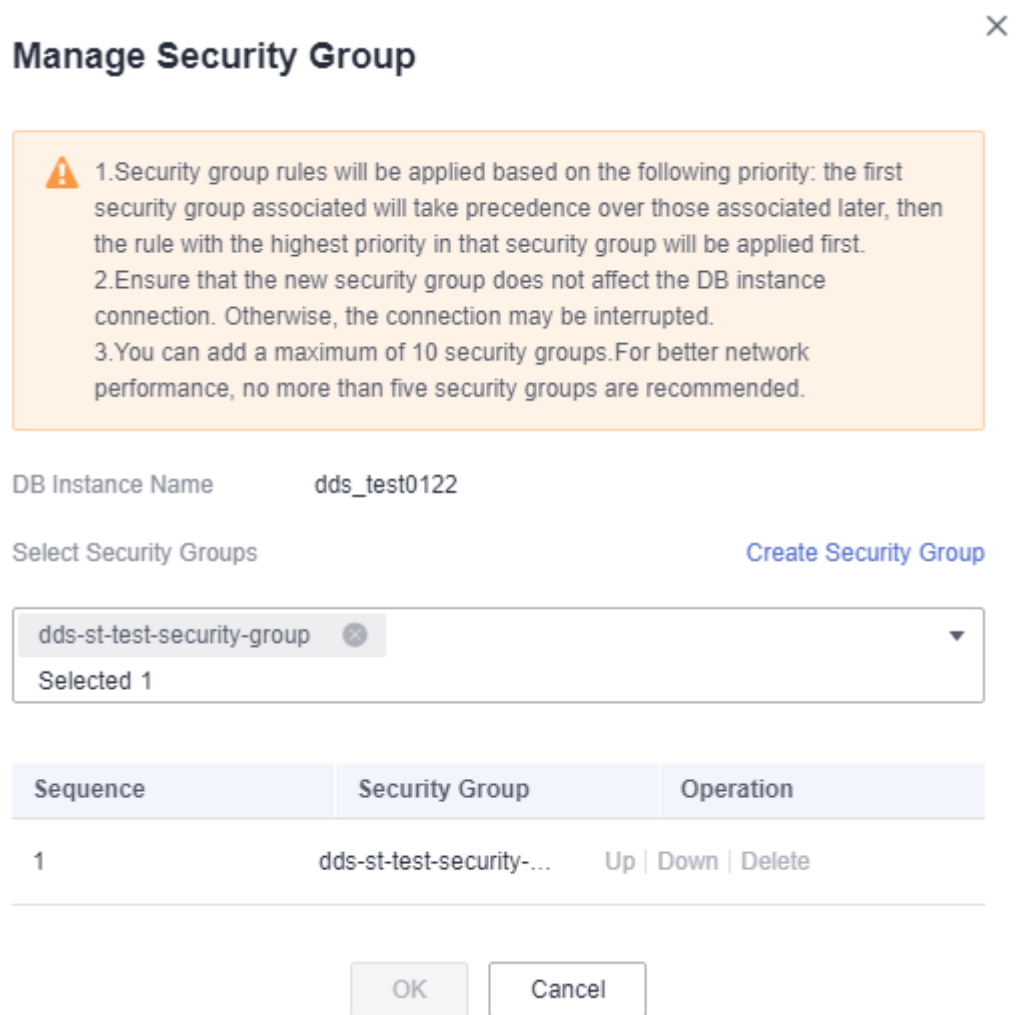
Alternatively, choose **Connections** in the navigation pane on the left. In the **Security Group** area, click **Manage**.

- You can select multiple security groups at a time. The security group rules will be applied based on the following sequence: the first security group associated will take precedence over those associated later, then the rule with the highest priority in that security group will be applied first.
- To create a new security group, click **Create Security Group**.

 **NOTE**

Using multiple security groups may impact the network performance. Selecting more than five security groups is not recommended.

Figure 11-10 Managing security groups



**Step 6** Click **OK**.

----End

# 12 Monitoring and Alarm Reporting

## 12.1 DDS Metrics

This section describes metrics reported by Document Database Service (DDS) to Cloud Eye as well as their namespaces and dimensions. You can use APIs provided by Cloud Eye to query the metrics of the monitored object and alarms generated for DDS.

### Namespace

SYS.DDS

### Monitoring Metrics

Table 12-1 Recommended DDS metrics

| Metric ID                  | Metrics Name                          | Description                                                                                                                       | Value Range | Monitored Object                                                                                                      | Monitoring Interval (Raw Data) |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| mongo007_connections_usage | Percentage of Active Node Connections | Percentage of the number of connections that attempt to connect to the instance node to the total number of available connections | 0~100%      | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• dds mongos node</li> <li>• Primary node</li> <li>• Secondary node</li> </ul> | 1 minute<br>5 seconds          |

| Metric ID           | Metrics Name        | Description                                 | Value Range | Monitored Object                                                                                                      | Monitoring Interval (Raw Data) |
|---------------------|---------------------|---------------------------------------------|-------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| mongo032_mem_usage  | Memory Usage        | Memory usage of the monitored object        | 0~100%      | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• dds mongos node</li> <li>• Primary node</li> <li>• Secondary node</li> </ul> | 1 minute<br>5 seconds          |
| mongo031_cpu_usage  | CPU Usage           | CPU usage of the monitored object           | 0~100%      | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• dds mongos node</li> <li>• Primary node</li> <li>• Secondary node</li> </ul> | 1 minute<br>5 seconds          |
| mongo035_disk_usage | Storage Space Usage | Storage space usage of the monitored object | 0~100%      | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Primary node</li> <li>• Secondary node</li> </ul>                            | 1 minute                       |

**Table 12-2** DDS metrics

| Metric ID           | Metrics Name                  | Description                                      | Value Range    | Monitored Object                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Monitoring Interval (Raw Data) |
|---------------------|-------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| mongo001_command_ps | COMMAND Statements per Second | Number of COMMAND statements executed per second | ≥ 0<br>Count/s | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• DDS DB instance</li> <li>• dds mongos node</li> <li>• Read replica of a DDS replica set instance</li> <li>• Primary node</li> <li>• Secondary node</li> <li>• Hidden node</li> </ul> | 1 minute<br>5 seconds          |

| Metric ID           | Metrics Name                  | Description                                      | Value Range | Monitored Object                                                                                                                                 | Monitoring Interval (Raw Data) |
|---------------------|-------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|-------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| mongo002_delete_ps  | DELETE Statements per Second  | Number of DELETE statements executed per second  | ≥ 0 Count/s | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• DDS DB instance</li> <li>• dds mongos node</li> <li>• Primary node</li> <li>• Secondary node</li> </ul> | 1 minute 5 seconds             |
| mongo003_insert_ps  | INSERT Statements per Second  | Number of INSERT statements executed per second  | ≥ 0 Count/s | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• DDS DB instance</li> <li>• dds mongos node</li> <li>• Primary node</li> <li>• Secondary node</li> </ul> | 1 minute 5 seconds             |
| mongo004_query_ps   | QUERY Statements per Second   | Number of QUERY statements executed per second   | ≥ 0 Count/s | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• DDS DB instance</li> <li>• dds mongos node</li> <li>• Primary node</li> <li>• Secondary node</li> </ul> | 1 minute 5 seconds             |
| mongo005_update_ps  | UPDATE Statements per Second  | Number of UPDATE statements executed per second  | ≥ 0 Count/s | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• DDS DB instance</li> <li>• dds mongos node</li> <li>• Primary node</li> <li>• Secondary node</li> </ul> | 1 minute 5 seconds             |
| mongo006_getmore_ps | GETMORE Statements per Second | Number of GETMORE statements executed per second | ≥ 0 Count/s | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• DDS DB instance</li> <li>• dds mongos node</li> <li>• Primary node</li> <li>• Secondary node</li> </ul> | 1 minute 5 seconds             |

| Metric ID            | Metrics Name       | Description                  | Value Range | Monitored Object     | Monitoring Interval (Raw Data) |
|----------------------|--------------------|------------------------------|-------------|----------------------|--------------------------------|
| mongo007_chunk_num1  | Chunks of Shard 1  | Number of chunks in shard 1  | 0-64 Counts | DDS cluster instance | 1 minute                       |
| mongo007_chunk_num2  | Chunks of Shard 2  | Number of chunks in shard 2  | 0-64 Counts | DDS cluster instance | 1 minute                       |
| mongo007_chunk_num3  | Chunks of Shard 3  | Number of chunks in shard 3  | 0-64 Counts | DDS cluster instance | 1 minute                       |
| mongo007_chunk_num4  | Chunks of Shard 4  | Number of chunks in shard 4  | 0-64 Counts | DDS cluster instance | 1 minute                       |
| mongo007_chunk_num5  | Chunks of Shard 5  | Number of chunks in shard 5  | 0-64 Counts | DDS cluster instance | 1 minute                       |
| mongo007_chunk_num6  | Chunks of Shard 6  | Number of chunks in shard 6  | 0-64 Counts | DDS cluster instance | 1 minute                       |
| mongo007_chunk_num7  | Chunks of Shard 7  | Number of chunks in shard 7  | 0-64 Counts | DDS cluster instance | 1 minute                       |
| mongo007_chunk_num8  | Chunks of Shard 8  | Number of chunks in shard 8  | 0-64 Counts | DDS cluster instance | 1 minute                       |
| mongo007_chunk_num9  | Chunks of Shard 9  | Number of chunks in shard 9  | 0-64 Counts | DDS cluster instance | 1 minute                       |
| mongo007_chunk_num10 | Chunks of Shard 10 | Number of chunks in shard 10 | 0-64 Counts | DDS cluster instance | 1 minute                       |
| mongo007_chunk_num11 | Chunks of Shard 11 | Number of chunks in shard 11 | 0-64 Counts | DDS cluster instance | 1 minute                       |
| mongo007_chunk_num12 | Chunks of Shard 12 | Number of chunks in shard 12 | 0-64 Counts | DDS cluster instance | 1 minute                       |



| Metric ID                  | Metrics Name                            | Description                                                                                                                       | Value Range  | Monitored Object                                                                                                      | Monitoring Interval (Raw Data) |
|----------------------------|-----------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| mongo008_connections       | Active Instance Connections             | Total number of connections attempting to connect to a DDS DB instance                                                            | 0–200 Counts | DDS DB instance                                                                                                       | 1 minute                       |
| mongo009_migFail_num       | Chunk Migration Failures in Last 24 hrs | Number of chunk migration failures in the last 24 hours                                                                           | ≥ 0 Counts   | DDS cluster instance                                                                                                  | 1 minute                       |
| mongo007_connections       | Active Node Connections                 | Total number of connections attempting to connect to a DDS DB instance node                                                       | 0–200 Counts | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• dds mongos node</li> <li>• Primary node</li> <li>• Secondary node</li> </ul> | 1 minute 5 seconds             |
| mongo007_connections_usage | Percentage of Active Node Connections   | Percentage of the number of connections that attempt to connect to the instance node to the total number of available connections | 0~100%       | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• dds mongos node</li> <li>• Primary node</li> <li>• Secondary node</li> </ul> | 1 minute 5 seconds             |
| mongo008_mem_resident      | Resident Memory                         | Size of resident memory in MB                                                                                                     | ≥ 0 MB       | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• dds mongos node</li> <li>• Primary node</li> <li>• Secondary node</li> </ul> | 1 minute                       |

| Metric ID                   | Metrics Name                              | Description                                         | Value Range | Monitored Object                                                                                                      | Monitoring Interval (Raw Data) |
|-----------------------------|-------------------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------|-------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| mongo009_mem_virtual        | Virtual Memory                            | Size of virtual memory in MB                        | ≥ 0 MB      | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• dds mongos node</li> <li>• Primary node</li> <li>• Secondary node</li> </ul> | 1 minute                       |
| mongo010_regular_asserts_ps | Regular Asserts per Second                | Number of regular asserts per second                | ≥ 0 Count/s | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• dds mongos node</li> <li>• Primary node</li> <li>• Secondary node</li> </ul> | 1 minute                       |
| mongo011_warning_asserts_ps | Warning Asserts per Second                | Number of warning asserts per second                | ≥ 0 Count/s | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• dds mongos node</li> <li>• Primary node</li> <li>• Secondary node</li> </ul> | 1 minute                       |
| mongo012_msg_asserts_ps     | Message Asserts per Second                | Number of message asserts per second                | ≥ 0 Count/s | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• dds mongos node</li> <li>• Primary node</li> <li>• Secondary node</li> </ul> | 1 minute                       |
| mongo013_user_asserts_ps    | User Asserts per Second                   | Number of user asserts per second                   | ≥ 0 Count/s | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• dds mongos node</li> <li>• Primary node</li> <li>• Secondary node</li> </ul> | 1 minute                       |
| mongo014_queues_total       | Operations Queued Waiting for a Lock      | Number of operations queued waiting for a lock      | ≥ 0 Counts  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Primary node</li> <li>• Secondary node</li> </ul>                            | 1 minute                       |
| mongo015_queues_readers     | Operations Queued Waiting for a Read Lock | Number of operations queued waiting for a read lock | ≥ 0 Counts  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Primary node</li> <li>• Secondary node</li> </ul>                            | 1 minute                       |

| Metric ID                | Metrics Name                               | Description                                              | Value Range | Monitored Object                                                                       | Monitoring Interval (Raw Data) |
|--------------------------|--------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|-------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| mongo016_queues_writers  | Operations Queued Waiting for a Write Lock | Number of operations queued waiting for a write lock     | ≥ 0 Counts  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Primary node</li> <li>Secondary node</li> </ul> | 1 minute                       |
| mongo017_page_faults     | Page Faults                                | Number of page faults on the monitored nodes             | ≥ 0 Counts  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Primary node</li> <li>Secondary node</li> </ul> | 1 minute                       |
| mongo018_porfling_num    | Slow Queries                               | Number of slow queries on the monitored nodes            | ≥ 0 Counts  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Primary node</li> <li>Secondary node</li> </ul> | 1 minute                       |
| mongo019_cursors_open    | Maintained Cursors                         | Number of maintained cursors on the monitored nodes      | ≥ 0 Counts  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Primary node</li> <li>Secondary node</li> </ul> | 1 minute                       |
| mongo020_cursors_timeOut | Timeout Cursors                            | Number of timed out cursors on the monitored nodes       | ≥ 0 Counts  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Primary node</li> <li>Secondary node</li> </ul> | 1 minute                       |
| mongo021_wt_cache_usage  | Bytes in WiredTiger Cache                  | Size of data in the WiredTiger cache in MB               | ≥ 0 MB      | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Primary node</li> <li>Secondary node</li> </ul> | 1 minute                       |
| mongo022_wt_cache_dirty  | Tracked Dirty Bytes in WiredTiger Cache    | Size of tracked dirty data in the WiredTiger cache in MB | ≥ 0 MB      | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Primary node</li> <li>Secondary node</li> </ul> | 1 minute                       |

| Metric ID               | Metrics Name                        | Description                                                                                            | Value Range | Monitored Object                                                                       | Monitoring Interval (Raw Data) |
|-------------------------|-------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| mongo023_wInto_wtCache  | Bytes Written Into Cache per Second | Bytes written into WiredTiger cache per second                                                         | ≥ 0 bytes/s | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Primary node</li> <li>Secondary node</li> </ul> | 1 minute                       |
| mongo024_wFrom_wtCache  | Bytes Written From Cache per Second | Bytes written from the WiredTiger cache to the disk per second                                         | ≥ 0 bytes/s | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Primary node</li> <li>Secondary node</li> </ul> | 1 minute                       |
| mongo025_repl_oplog_win | Oplog Window                        | Available time in hour in the monitored primary node's oplog                                           | ≥ 0 Hours   | Primary node                                                                           | 1 minute                       |
| mongo026_oplog_size_ph  | Oplog Growth Rate                   | Speed in MB/hour at which oplogs are generated on the monitored primary node                           | ≥ 0 MB/Hour | Primary node                                                                           | 1 minute                       |
| mongo025_repl_headroom  | Replication Headroom                | Time difference in seconds between the primary's oplog window and the replication lag of the secondary | ≥ 0 Seconds | Secondary node                                                                         | 1 minute                       |

| Metric ID               | Metrics Name                             | Description                                                                                                                  | Value Range | Monitored Object | Monitoring Interval (Raw Data) |
|-------------------------|------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|------------------|--------------------------------|
| mongo026_repl_lag       | Replication Lag                          | A delay in seconds between an operation on the primary and the application of that operation from the oplog to the secondary | ≥ 0 Seconds | Secondary node   | 1 minute                       |
| mongo027_repl_commands  | Replicated COMMAND Statements per Second | Number of replicated COMMAND statements executed on the secondary node per second                                            | ≥ 0 Count/s | Secondary node   | 1 minute                       |
| mongo028_repl_update_ps | Replicated UPDATE Statements per Second  | Number of replicated UPDATE statements executed on the secondary node per second                                             | ≥ 0 Count/s | Secondary node   | 1 minute                       |
| mongo029_repl_delete_ps | Replicated DELETE Statements per Second  | Number of replicated DELETE statements executed on the secondary node per second                                             | ≥ 0 Count/s | Secondary node   | 1 minute                       |

| Metric ID               | Metrics Name                            | Description                                                                      | Value Range    | Monitored Object                                                                                                      | Monitoring Interval (Raw Data) |
|-------------------------|-----------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| mongo030_repl_insert_ps | Replicated INSERT Statements per Second | Number of replicated INSERT statements executed on the secondary node per second | ≥ 0<br>Count/s | Secondary node                                                                                                        | 1 minute                       |
| mongo031_cpu_usage      | CPU Usage                               | CPU usage of the monitored object                                                | 0~100%         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• dds mongos node</li> <li>• Primary node</li> <li>• Secondary node</li> </ul> | 1 minute<br>5 seconds          |
| mongo032_mem_usage      | Memory Usage                            | Memory usage of the monitored object                                             | 0~100%         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• dds mongos node</li> <li>• Primary node</li> <li>• Secondary node</li> </ul> | 1 minute<br>5 seconds          |
| mongo033_bytes_output   | Network Output Throughput               | Outgoing traffic in bytes per second                                             | ≥ 0<br>bytes/s | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• dds mongos node</li> <li>• Primary node</li> <li>• Secondary node</li> </ul> | 1 minute<br>5 seconds          |
| mongo034_bytes_input    | Network Input Throughput                | Incoming traffic in bytes per second                                             | ≥ 0<br>bytes/s | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• dds mongos node</li> <li>• Primary node</li> <li>• Secondary node</li> </ul> | 1 minute<br>5 seconds          |
| mongo035_disk_usage     | Storage Space Usage                     | Storage space usage of the monitored object                                      | 0~100%         | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Primary node</li> <li>• Secondary node</li> </ul>                            | 1 minute                       |

| Metric ID                       | Metrics Name                | Description                                                                  | Value Range    | Monitored Object                                                                       | Monitoring Interval (Raw Data) |
|---------------------------------|-----------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| mongo036_iops                   | IOPS                        | Average number of I/O requests processed by the system in a specified period | ≥ 0<br>Count/s | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Primary node</li> <li>Secondary node</li> </ul> | 1 minute                       |
| mongo037_read_throughput        | Disk Read Throughput        | Number of bytes read from the disk per second                                | ≥ 0<br>bytes/s | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Primary node</li> <li>Secondary node</li> </ul> | 1 minute                       |
| mongo038_write_throughput       | Disk Write Throughput       | Number of bytes written into the disk per second                             | ≥ 0<br>bytes/s | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Primary node</li> <li>Secondary node</li> </ul> | 1 minute                       |
| mongo039_avg_disk_sec_per_read  | Average Time per Disk Read  | Average time required for each disk read in a specified period               | ≥ 0<br>Seconds | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Primary node</li> <li>Secondary node</li> </ul> | 1 minute                       |
| mongo040_avg_disk_sec_per_write | Average Time per Disk Write | Average time required for each disk write in a specified period              | ≥ 0<br>Seconds | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Primary node</li> <li>Secondary node</li> </ul> | 1 minute                       |
| mongo042_disk_total_size        | Total Storage Space         | Total storage space of the monitored object                                  | 0-1000<br>GB   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Primary node</li> <li>Secondary node</li> </ul> | 1 minute                       |
| mongo043_disk_used_size         | Used Storage Space          | Used storage space of the monitored object                                   | 0-1000<br>GB   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Primary node</li> <li>Secondary node</li> </ul> | 1 minute                       |

| Metric ID                  | Metrics Name                                   | Description                                                                              | Value Range      | Monitored Object                                                                              | Monitoring Interval (Raw Data) |
|----------------------------|------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| mongo044_swap_usage        | SWAP Usage                                     | Swap usage, in percentage.                                                               | 0~100%           | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• dds mongos node</li> <li>• Secondary node</li> </ul> | 1 minute                       |
| mongo050_top_total_time    | Total Time Spent on Collections                | Mongotop-total time: total time spent on collection operations, in milliseconds.         | ≥ 0 Milliseconds | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Primary node</li> <li>• Secondary node</li> </ul>    | 1 minute                       |
| mongo051_top_read_time     | Total Time Spent on Collections                | Mongotop-read time: total time spent reading collections, in milliseconds.               | ≥ 0 Milliseconds | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Primary node</li> <li>• Secondary node</li> </ul>    | 1 minute                       |
| mongo052_top_write_time    | Total Time Spent on Collections                | Mongotop-write time: total time spent writing collections, in milliseconds.              | ≥ 0 Milliseconds | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Primary node</li> <li>• Secondary node</li> </ul>    | 1 minute                       |
| mongo053_wt_flushes_status | Number of Times that Checkpoints Are Triggered | Number of times that the checkpoint is triggered during a polling interval of WiredTiger | ≥ 0 Counts       | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Primary node</li> <li>• Secondary node</li> </ul>    | 1 minute                       |



| Metric ID                              | Metrics Name                                                  | Description                                                   | Value Range | Monitored Object                                                                       | Monitoring Interval (Raw Data) |
|----------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| mongo054_wt_cache_used_percent         | Percentage of the Cache Used by WiredTiger                    | Cache size used by WiredTiger, in percentage                  | 0~100%      | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Primary node</li> <li>Secondary node</li> </ul> | 1 minute                       |
| mongo055_wt_cache_dirty_percent        | Percentage of Dirty Data in the WiredTiger Cache              | Dirty size in the WiredTiger cache, in percentage             | 0~100%      | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Primary node</li> <li>Secondary node</li> </ul> | 1 minute                       |
| mongo070_rocks_active_memtable         | Memtable Data Size                                            | Size of data in the active memtable                           | 0~100 GB    | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Primary node</li> <li>Secondary node</li> </ul> | 1 minute                       |
| mongo071_rocks_oplogcf_active_memtable | Memtable Data Size on Oplogcf                                 | Size of data in the active memtable on oplogcf                | 0~100 GB    | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Primary node</li> <li>Secondary node</li> </ul> | 1 minute                       |
| mongo072_rocks_all_memtable            | Total Data Size of Memtable and Immutable-memtable            | Total data size of memtable and immutable-memtable            | 0~100 GB    | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Primary node</li> <li>Secondary node</li> </ul> | 1 minute                       |
| mongo073_rocks_oplogcf_all_memtable    | Total Data Size of Memtable and Immutable-memtable on Oplogcf | Total data size of memtable and immutable-memtable on oplogcf | 0~100 GB    | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Primary node</li> <li>Secondary node</li> </ul> | 1 minute                       |
| mongo074_rocks_snapshots               | Unreleased Snapshots                                          | Number of unreleased snapshots                                | ≥ 0 Counts  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Primary node</li> <li>Secondary node</li> </ul> | 1 minute                       |

| Metric ID                                | Metrics Name                                            | Description                                                    | Value Range | Monitored Object                                                                       | Monitoring Interval (Raw Data) |
|------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| mongo075_rocks_oplogcf_snapshots         | Unreleased Snapshots on Oplogcf                         | Number of unreleased snapshots on oplogcf                      | ≥ 0 Counts  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Primary node</li> <li>Secondary node</li> </ul> | 1 minute                       |
| mongo076_rocks_live_versions             | Active Versions                                         | Number of active versions                                      | ≥ 0 Counts  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Primary node</li> <li>Secondary node</li> </ul> | 1 minute                       |
| mongo077_rocks_oplogcf_live_versions     | Active Versions on Oplogcf                              | Number of active versions on oplogcf                           | ≥ 0 Counts  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Primary node</li> <li>Secondary node</li> </ul> | 1 minute                       |
| mongo078_rocks_block_cache               | Data Size in Blockcache                                 | Size of data in blockcache                                     | 0~100 GB    | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Primary node</li> <li>Secondary node</li> </ul> | 1 minute                       |
| mongo079_rocks_background_errors         | Accumulated Background Errors                           | Accumulated number of background errors                        | ≥ 0 Counts  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Primary node</li> <li>Secondary node</li> </ul> | 1 minute                       |
| mongo080_rocks_oplogcf_background_errors | Accumulated Background Errors on Oplogcf                | Number of accumulated background errors on oplogcf             | ≥ 0 Counts  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Primary node</li> <li>Secondary node</li> </ul> | 1 minute                       |
| mongo081_rocks_conflict_bytes_usage      | Buffer Usage for Processing Transaction Write Conflicts | Usage of the buffer for processing transaction write conflicts | 0~100%      | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Primary node</li> <li>Secondary node</li> </ul> | 1 minute                       |
| mongo082_rocks_uncommitted_keys          | Uncommitted Keys                                        | Number of uncommitted keys                                     | ≥ 0 Counts  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Primary node</li> <li>Secondary node</li> </ul> | 1 minute                       |

| Metric ID                         | Metrics Name                              | Description                                       | Value Range | Monitored Object                                                                       | Monitoring Interval (Raw Data) |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------|-------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| mongo083_rocks_committed_keys     | Committed Keys                            | Number of committed keys                          | ≥ 0 Counts  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Primary node</li> <li>Secondary node</li> </ul> | 1 minute                       |
| mongo084_rocks_active_txn         | Length of Active Transaction Linked Lists | Length of active transaction linked lists         | ≥ 0 Counts  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Primary node</li> <li>Secondary node</li> </ul> | 1 minute                       |
| mongo085_rocks_read_queue         | Length of Read Queues                     | Length of read queues                             | ≥ 0 Counts  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Primary node</li> <li>Secondary node</li> </ul> | 1 minute                       |
| mongo086_rocks_committed_queues   | Length of Committed Queues                | Length of committed queues                        | ≥ 0 Counts  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Primary node</li> <li>Secondary node</li> </ul> | 1 minute                       |
| mongo087_rocks_ct_write_out       | Used Concurrent Write Transactions        | Number of used concurrent write transactions      | ≥ 0 Counts  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Primary node</li> <li>Secondary node</li> </ul> | 1 minute                       |
| mongo088_rocks_ct_write_available | Available Concurrent Write Transactions   | Number of available concurrent write transactions | ≥ 0 Counts  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Primary node</li> <li>Secondary node</li> </ul> | 1 minute                       |
| mongo089_rocks_ct_read_out        | Used Concurrent Read Transactions         | Number of used concurrent read transactions       | ≥ 0 Counts  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Primary node</li> <li>Secondary node</li> </ul> | 1 minute                       |
| mongo090_rocks_ct_read_available  | Available Concurrent Read Transactions    | Number of available concurrent read transactions  | ≥ 0 Counts  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Primary node</li> <li>Secondary node</li> </ul> | 1 minute                       |

| Metric ID                     | Metrics Name                   | Description                                                                                               | Value Range | Monitored Object                                                                                                                                                                                                      | Monitoring Interval (Raw Data) |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| mongo091_active_session_count | Active Sessions                | Number of active sessions cached in the memory of the Mongo instance since the last refresh               | ≥ 0 Counts  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• DDS DB instance</li> <li>• Read replica of a DDS replica set instance</li> <li>• Primary node</li> <li>• Secondary node</li> <li>• Hidden nodes of a DDS instance</li> </ul> | 1 minute                       |
| mongo092_rx_errors            | Error Rate of Received Packets | Ratio of the number of error packets to the total number of received packets during the monitoring period | 0~100%      | DDS DB instance                                                                                                                                                                                                       | 1 minute<br>5 seconds          |
| mongo093_rx_dropped           | Loss Rate of Received Packets  | Ratio of the number of lost packets to the total number of received packets during the monitoring period  | 0~100%      | DDS DB instance                                                                                                                                                                                                       | 1 minute<br>5 seconds          |

| Metric ID              | Metrics Name               | Description                                                                                           | Value Range | Monitored Object | Monitoring Interval (Raw Data) |
|------------------------|----------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------------|------------------|--------------------------------|
| mongo094_tx_errors     | Error Rate of Sent Packets | Ratio of the number of error packets to the total number of sent packets during the monitoring period | 0~100%      | DDS DB instance  | 1 minute 5 seconds             |
| mongo095_tx_dropped    | Loss Rate of Sent Packets  | Ratio of the number of lost packets to the total number of sent packets during the monitoring period  | 0~100%      | DDS DB instance  | 1 minute 5 seconds             |
| mongo096_retrans_segs  | Retransmitted Packets      | The number of retransmitted packets during the monitoring period                                      | ≥ 0 Counts  | DDS DB instance  | 1 minute 5 seconds             |
| mongo097_retrans_rate  | Retransmission Ratio       | Ratio of retransmitted packets during the monitoring period                                           | 0~100%      | DDS DB instance  | 1 minute 5 seconds             |
| mongo098_out_rsts_nums | Sent RST Packets           | The number of sent RST packets during the monitoring period                                           | ≥ 0 Counts  | DDS DB instance  | 1 minute 5 seconds             |

 NOTE

Metrics whose IDs contain rocks are used to monitor instances or instance nodes of version 4.2.

## Dimensions

| Key                 | Value                                                                                                                    |
|---------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| mongodb_instance_id | DDS DB instance ID<br>Supports cluster instances of Community Edition, replica set instances, and single node instances. |
| mongodb_node_id     | DDS node ID                                                                                                              |

 NOTE

**mongodb\_instance\_id** is used to specify dimension fields when the Cloud Eye API is invoked. Replica sets and single node instance types do not have instance-level metrics.

## 12.2 Configuring Monitoring by Seconds


The default monitoring interval is 1 minute. To improve the instantaneous accuracy of monitoring metrics, you can set the monitoring interval to 5 seconds.


### Precautions

- Only some monitoring metrics support monitoring by seconds. For details, see [Monitoring Metrics](#).
- To apply for the advanced O&M permission, submit a service ticket by choosing [Service Tickets > Create Service Ticket](#) in the upper right corner of the management console.
- To apply for the monitoring permission, submit a service ticket by choosing [Service Tickets > Create Service Ticket](#) in the upper right corner of the management console.

### Enabling Monitoring by Seconds

**Step 1** [Log in to the management console](#).

**Step 2** Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

**Step 3** Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

**Step 4** On the **Instances** page, click the target instance name.

**Step 5** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Advanced O&M**.

**Step 6** On the displayed page, click the **Real-Time Monitoring** tab and click  next to **Monitoring by Seconds**.

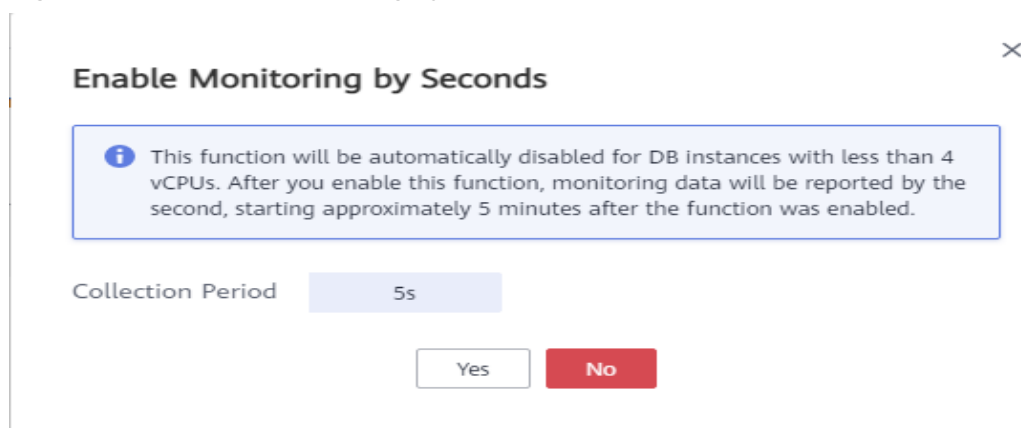
**NOTICE**

Instances with fewer than four vCPUs do not support monitoring by seconds.

**Step 7** In the displayed dialog box, select a collection period and click **Yes**.

Monitoring by Seconds will be automatically disabled for instances with fewer than 4 vCPUs. After you enable this function, monitoring data will be reported again and will be displayed by seconds about five minutes later.

**Figure 12-1** Enable Monitoring by Seconds




----End

## Disabling Monitoring by Seconds

**Step 1** [Log in to the management console](#).

**Step 2** Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

**Step 3** Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

**Step 4** On the **Instances** page, click the target instance name.

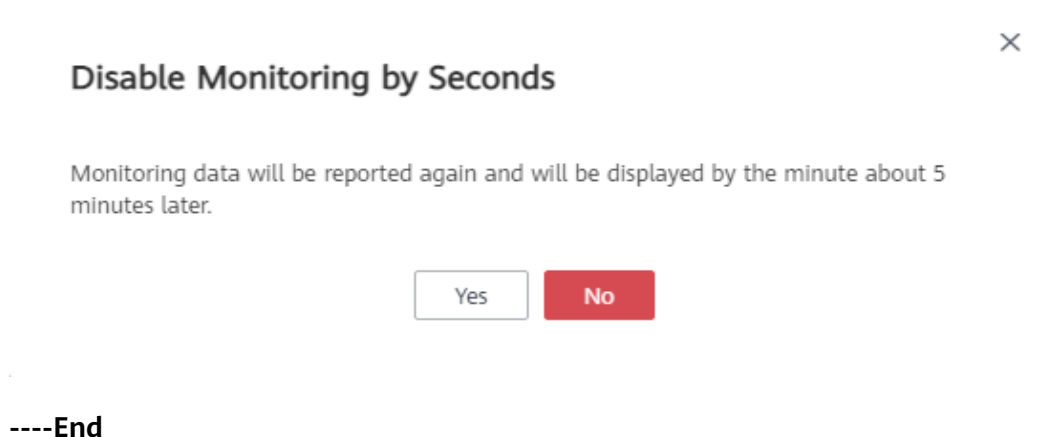
**Step 5** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Advanced O&M**.

**Step 6** On the displayed page, click the **Real-Time Monitoring** tab and click  next to **Monitoring by Seconds**.

**Step 7** In the displayed dialog box, click **Yes**.

After you disable this function, monitoring data will be reported again and will be displayed by the minute about five minutes later.

Figure 12-2 Disable Monitoring by Seconds



----End

## 12.3 Viewing DDS Metrics

- Cloud Eye monitors DDS running statuses. You can obtain the monitoring metrics of DDS on the management console.
- Monitored data requires a period of time for transmission and display. The status of DDS displayed on the Cloud Eye page is from about 5 to 10 minutes ago, so the data for a newly created DB instance takes about 5 to 10 minutes to show up on Cloud Eye.
- The monitoring data is retained for 30 days.
- If you receive an alarm (for example, indicating that the data disk space is insufficient), you need to filter the instance nodes to check whether each node is normal when you view the instance monitoring data for problem location and analysis.


### Prerequisites

- The DDS DB instance is running normally.  
Cloud Eye does not display the metrics of faulty or deleted DB instances or nodes. You can view the monitoring information only after the instance is restarted or recovered.
- The DB instance has been properly running for at least 10 minutes.  
For a newly created DB instance, you need to wait a bit before the monitoring metrics show up on Cloud Eye.

### Procedure

**Step 1** [Log in to the management console.](#)

**Step 2** Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

**Step 3** Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

**Step 4** On the **Instances** page, click the target DB instance.

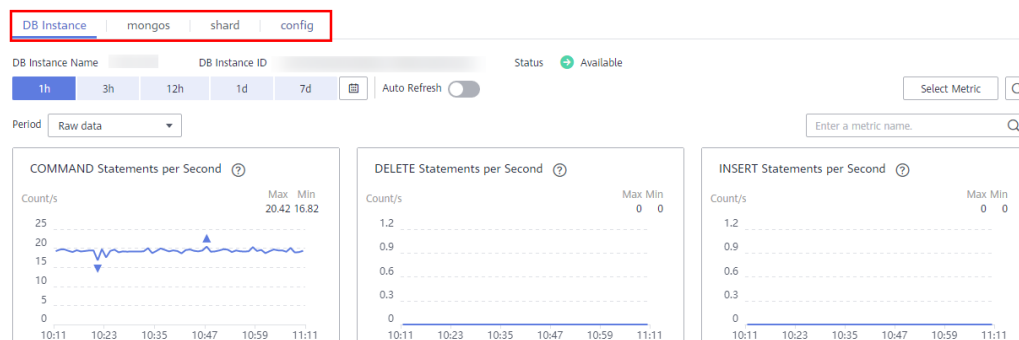


**Step 5** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Advanced O&M**.

**Step 6** View metrics.

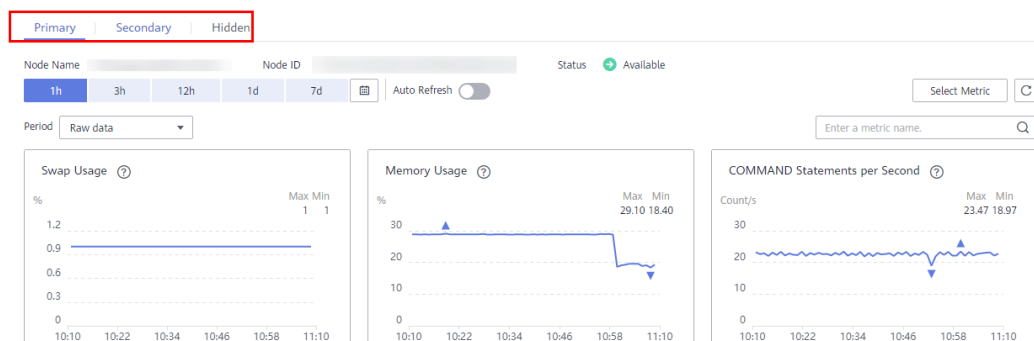
- For cluster instances, you can view metrics of instances, and dds mongos, shard, and config nodes.

**Figure 12-3** Viewing metrics of a cluster instance



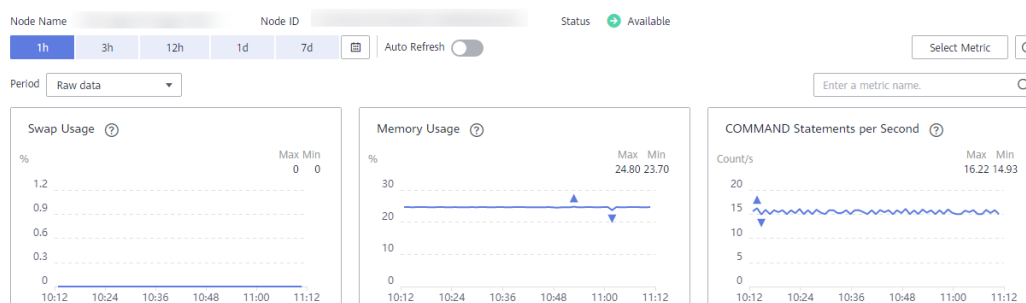
- For replica set instances, you can view metrics of primary, secondary, and hidden nodes.

**Figure 12-4** Viewing metrics of a replica set instance



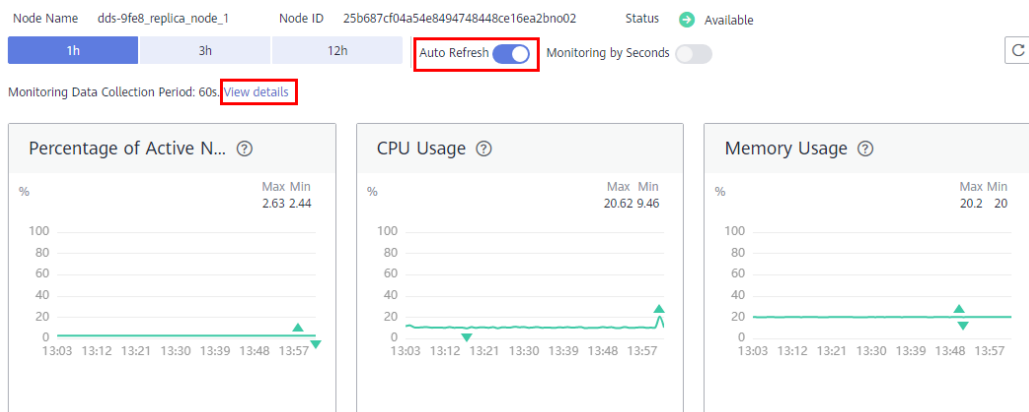
- For single node instances, you can view node metrics.

**Figure 12-5** Viewing metrics of a single node instance



**Step 7** View monitoring metrics of cluster instances, cluster instance nodes, and replica set instance nodes.

**Step 8** In the DDS monitoring area, you can select a duration to view the monitoring data. You can view the monitoring data of the last 1 hour, 3 hours, and 12 hours.

**Figure 12-6** Enabling Auto Refresh

- If automatic refresh is enabled, monitoring data is automatically refreshed every 60 seconds.
- For more metric information, click **View details** to switch to the Cloud Eye console.

----End

## 12.4 Configuring Alarm Rules

DDS allows you to set threshold rules for instance metrics. If the value of a metric exceeds the threshold, an alarm is triggered. The system automatically sends an alarm notification to the cloud account contact through SMN, helping you learn about the running status of the DDS instance in a timely manner.

You can configure alarm rules on the Cloud Eye console.

### Precautions

The basic alarm function is free of charge. SMN sends you the alarm messages and charges you for that. For pricing details, see [Pricing Details](#).

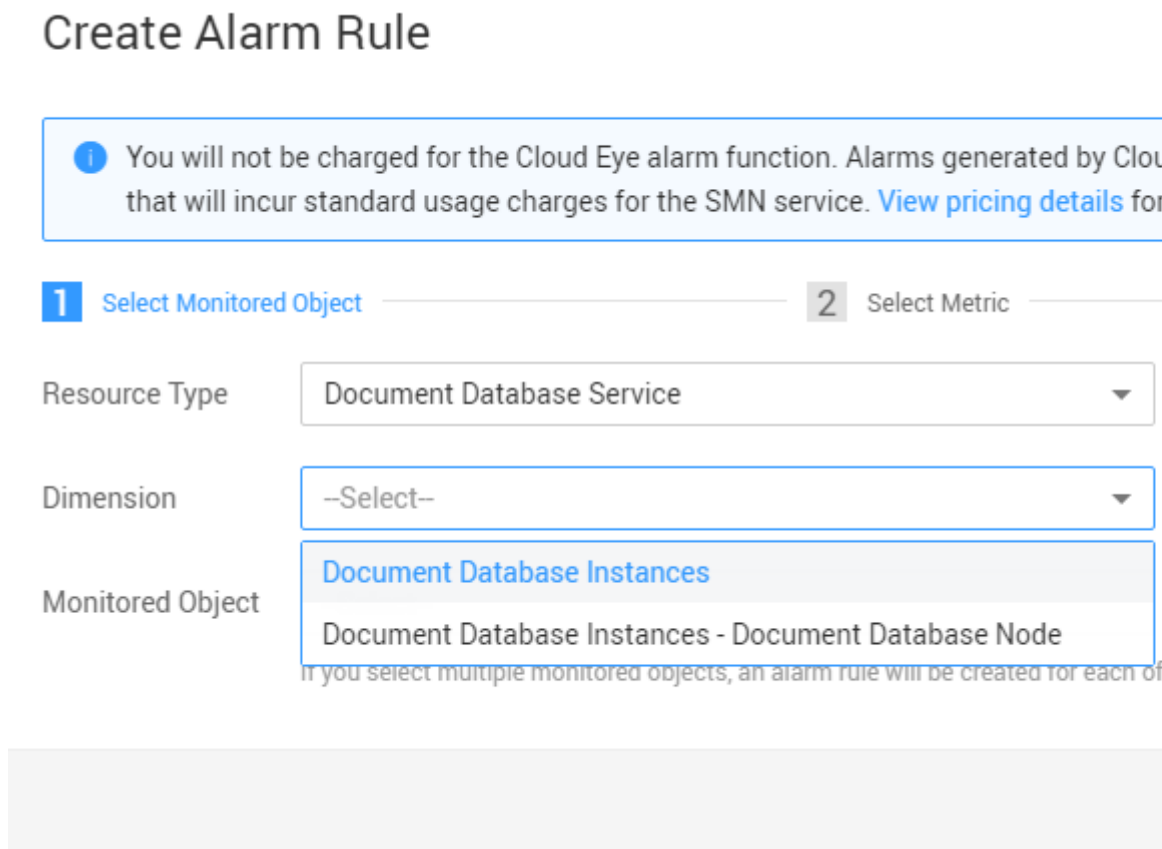
### Customizing Alarm Rules

- Step 1** Log in to the management console.
- Step 2** Under **Management & Governance**, click **Cloud Eye**.
- Step 3** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Alarm Management > Alarm Rules**.
- Step 4** On the displayed **Alarm Rules** page, click **Create Alarm Rule**.
- Step 5** On the **Create Alarm Rule** page, follow the prompts to set the parameters.

Pay attention to the following parameters:

- **Resource Type:** Select **Document Database Service**.
- **Dimension:** DDS supports instance-level and node-level monitoring dimensions. Different monitoring metrics support different monitoring dimensions. For details, see [DDS Metrics](#).

Figure 12-7 Configuring monitoring dimensions



**Step 6** After the alarm rule is set, the system automatically notifies you when an alarm is triggered.

----End

## 12.5 Managing Alarm Rules

This section describes how to enable and disable alarm reporting on the Cloud Eye console.

### Disabling an Alarm Rule

**Step 1** Log in to the management console.

**Step 2** Under **Management & Governance**, click **Cloud Eye**.

**Step 3** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Alarm Management > Alarm Rules**, locate the alarm rule you want to disable and click **Disable** in the **Operation** column.

**Figure 12-8** Disabling an Alarm Rule

| <input type="checkbox"/> | Name/ID  | Resource Type ... | Monitored Obj...                   | Alarm Policy                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     | Status  | No... | Enterprise Proj... | Operation                        |
|--------------------------|----------|-------------------|------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|---------|-------|--------------------|----------------------------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> | al<br>al | Cloud Search S... | CSS Clusters<br>Specific resource: | Trigger an alarm if Disk Usage Raw data >= 70% for 3 consecutive periods.<br>Trigger an alarm one day again if the alarm persists.<br>Trigger an alarm if Cluster Health Status Raw data > 0 for 1 consecutive periods.<br>Trigger an alarm one day again if the alarm persists. | Enabled | --    | default            | <b>Disable</b>   Modify   Delete |

**Step 4** In the displayed **Disable Alarm Rule** dialog box, click **Yes** to disable the alarm rule.

If you want to disable multiple alarm rules, on the **Alarm Rules** page, select multiple alarm rules, and click **Disable** in the upper left of the alarm rule list. In the displayed **Disable Alarm Rule** dialog box, click **Yes**.

----End

## Enabling an Alarm Rule

**Step 1** Log in to the management console.

**Step 2** Under **Management & Governance**, click **Cloud Eye**.

**Step 3** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Alarm Management > Alarm Rules**, locate the alarm rule you want to enable and click **Enable** in the **Operation** column.

**Figure 12-9** Enabling an Alarm Rule

|                          |          |                   |                                        |                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |           |    |         |                                 |
|--------------------------|----------|-------------------|----------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|----|---------|---------------------------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> | al<br>al | Relational Dat... | MySQL Instanc...<br>Specific resource: | Trigger an alarm if Memory Usage Raw data > 90% for 5 consecutive periods.<br>Trigger an alarm one day again if the alarm persists.<br>Trigger an alarm if Storage Space Usage Raw data > 75% for 5 consecutive periods.<br>Trigger an alarm one day again if the alarm persists.<br>... | Disabl... | -- | default | <b>Enable</b>   Modify   Delete |
|--------------------------|----------|-------------------|----------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|-----------|----|---------|---------------------------------|

**Step 4** In the displayed **Enable Alarm Rule** dialog box, click **Yes** to enable the alarm rule.

If you want to enable multiple alarm rules, on the **Alarm Rules** page, select multiple alarm rules, and click **Enable** in the upper left of the alarm rule list. In the displayed **Enable Alarm Rule** dialog box, click **Yes**.

----End

## 12.6 Event Monitoring

### 12.6.1 Introduction to Event Monitoring

Event monitoring provides reporting, query, and alarm functions for event data. You can create alarm rules for both system events and custom events. When specific events occur, Cloud Eye generates alarms for you.

Events are key operations on DDS that are stored and monitored by Cloud Eye. You can view events to see operations performed by specific users on specific resources, such as deleting a read replica or changing instance specifications.

Event monitoring provides an API for reporting custom events, which helps you collect and report abnormal events or important change events generated by services to Cloud Eye.

Event monitoring is enabled by default. You can view monitoring details about system events and custom events. For details about system events, see [Events Supported by Event Monitoring](#).

## 12.6.2 Viewing Event Monitoring Data

### Scenarios


Event monitoring provides reporting, query, and alarm functions for event data. You can create alarm rules for both system events and custom events. When specific events occur, Cloud Eye generates alarms for you.

Event monitoring is enabled by default. You can view monitoring details about system events and custom events.

This topic describes how to view the event monitoring data.

### Procedure


**Step 1** [Log in to the management console](#).

**Step 2** Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

**Step 3** On the **Instances** page, locate the instance and click **View Metric** in the **Operation** column to go to the Cloud Eye console.

Alternatively, go to the Cloud Eye console using either of the following methods:


- On the **Instances** page, locate the instance and click its name. On the displayed **Basic Information** page, click **View Metric** in the upper right corner to go to the Cloud Eye console.
- On the **Instances** page, locate the instance and click its name. On the displayed **Basic Information** page, in the **Node Information** area, click **View Metric** in the **Operation** column to go to the Cloud Eye console.
- On the **Instances** page, locate the instance and click its name. In the navigation pane on the left, click **Advanced O&M**, locate the target node, and click **View details** to go to the Cloud Eye console.

**Step 4** Click  in the upper left corner to return to the main page of Cloud Eye.

**Step 5** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Event Monitoring**.

On the displayed **Event Monitoring** page, all system events generated in the last 24 hours are displayed by default.

You can also click **1h**, **3h**, **12h**, **1d**, **7d**, or **30d** to view events generated in different periods.

**Step 6** Click  to expand an event, and click **View Event** in the **Operation** column to view details about a specific event.

----End


## 12.6.3 Creating an Alarm Rule to Monitor an Event

### Scenarios

This topic describes how to create an alarm rule to monitor an event.

### Procedure

**Step 1** [Log in to the management console.](#)

**Step 2** Click  in the upper left corner of the page. Under **Management & Governance**, click **Cloud Eye**.


**Step 3** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Event Monitoring**.

**Step 4** On the event list page, click **Create Alarm Rule** in the upper right corner.

**Step 5** On the **Create Alarm Rule** page, configure the parameters.

**Table 12-3** Parameter description

| Parameter        | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Name             | Specifies the alarm rule name. The system generates a random name, which you can modify.                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| Description      | (Optional) Provides supplementary information about the alarm rule.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| Alarm Type       | Specifies the alarm type corresponding to the alarm rule.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| Event Type       | Specifies the event type of the metric corresponding to the alarm rule.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
| Event Source     | Specifies the service the event is generated for.<br>Select <b>Document Database Service</b> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| Monitoring Scope | Specifies the monitoring scope for event monitoring.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                               |
| Method           | Select <b>Configure manually</b> .                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| Alarm Policy     | <b>Event Name</b> indicates the instantaneous operations users performed on system resources, such as login and logout.<br>For details about events supported by Event Monitoring, see <a href="#">Events Supported by Event Monitoring</a> .<br>Select <b>Trigger Mode</b> and <b>Alarm Severity</b> as required. |

Click  to enable alarm notification. The validity period is 24 hours by default. If the topics you require are not displayed in the drop-down list, click **Create an SMN topic**.

**Table 12-4** Alarm notification parameters

| Parameter           | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|---------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Alarm Notification  | Specifies whether to notify users when alarms are triggered. Notifications can be sent by email, text message, or HTTP/HTTPS message.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| Notification Type   | You can select a notification group or topic subscription as required.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
| Notification Group  | Specifies the notification group that needs to send alarm notifications.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
| Notification Object | Specifies the object that receives alarm notifications. You can select the account contact or a topic. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Account contact</b> is the mobile phone number and email address of the registered account.</li> <li>• <b>Topic</b> is used to publish messages and subscribe to notifications. If the required topic is unavailable, create one first and add subscriptions to it. For details, see <a href="#">Creating a Topic</a> and <a href="#">Adding Subscriptions</a>.</li> </ul> |
| Validity Period     | Cloud Eye sends notifications only within the validity period specified in the alarm rule.<br>If <b>Validity Period</b> is set to <b>08:00-20:00</b> , Cloud Eye sends notifications only within 08:00-20:00.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| Trigger Condition   | Specifies the condition for triggering an alarm notification.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |

Configure the enterprise project as prompted.

**Table 12-5** Parameter description

| Parameter          | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|--------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Enterprise Project | Specifies the enterprise project that the alarm rule belongs to. Only users with the enterprise project permissions can view and manage the alarm rule. For details about how to create an enterprise project, see <a href="#">Creating an Enterprise Project</a> . |

**Step 6** After the configuration is complete, click **Create**.

----End

## 12.6.4 Events Supported by Event Monitoring

**Table 12-6** Document Database Service (DDS)

| Event Source | Event Name                   | Event ID                | Event Severity | Description                                                                                     | Solution                                                                               | Impact                           |
|--------------|------------------------------|-------------------------|----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------|
| DDS          | DB instance creation failure | DDSCreateInstanceFailed | Major          | A DDS instance fails to be created due to insufficient disks, quotas, and underlying resources. | Check the number and quota of disks. Release resources and create DDS instances again. | DDS instances cannot be created. |



| Event Source | Event Name         | Event ID                     | Event Severity | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              | Solution                 | Impact                                                                                        |
|--------------|--------------------|------------------------------|----------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|              | Replication failed | DDSAbnormalReplicationStatus | Major          | <p>The possible causes are as follows:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. The replication delay between the primary and secondary nodes is too long, which usually occurs when a large amount of data is written to databases or a large transaction is performed. During off-peak hours, the replication delay gradually decreases.</li> <li>2. The network between the primary and secondary nodes is disconnected.</li> </ol> | Submit a service ticket. | Your applications are not affected because this event does not interrupt data read and write. |

| Event Source | Event Name            | Event ID                      | Event Severity | Description                                                                                                                                           | Solution                       | Impact                                   |
|--------------|-----------------------|-------------------------------|----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
|              | Replication recovered | DDSReplicationStatusRecovered | Major          | The replication delay between the primary and standby instances is within the normal range, or the network connection between them has restored.      | No further action is required. | None                                     |
|              | DB instance faulty    | DDSFaultyDBInstance           | Major          | This event is a key alarm event and is reported when an instance is faulty due to a disaster or a server failure.                                     | Submit a service ticket.       | The database service may be unavailable. |
|              | DB instance recovered | DDSDBInstanceRecovered        | Major          | If a disaster occurs, NoSQL provides an HA tool to automatically or manually rectify the fault. After the fault is rectified, this event is reported. | No further action is required. | None                                     |

| Event Source | Event Name                             | Event ID                   | Event Severity | Description                                                                                                                                           | Solution                                                                     | Impact                                   |
|--------------|----------------------------------------|----------------------------|----------------|-------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------|
|              | Faulty node                            | DDSFaultyDBNode            | Major          | This event is a key alarm event and is reported when a database node is faulty due to a disaster or a server failure.                                 | Check whether the database service is available and submit a service ticket. | The database service may be unavailable. |
|              | Node recovered                         | DDSDBNodeRecovered         | Major          | If a disaster occurs, NoSQL provides an HA tool to automatically or manually rectify the fault. After the fault is rectified, this event is reported. | No further action is required.                                               | None                                     |
|              | Primary/standby switchover or failover | DDSPrietaryStandbySwitcheD | Major          | This event is reported when a primary/secondary switchover or a failover is triggered.                                                                | No further action is required.                                               | None                                     |

| Event Source | Event Name                            | Event ID                  | Event Severity | Description                                                                       | Solution                                                                                                     | Impact                                                                       |
|--------------|---------------------------------------|---------------------------|----------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
|              | Insufficient storage space            | DDSRiskyDataDiskUsage     | Major          | The storage space is insufficient.                                                | Scale up storage space. For details, see section "Scaling Up Storage Space" in the corresponding user guide. | The instance is set to read-only and data cannot be written to the instance. |
|              | Data disk expanded and being writable | DDSDataDiskUsageRecovered | Major          | The capacity of a data disk has been expanded and the data disk becomes writable. | No action is required.                                                                                       | No adverse impact.                                                           |

# 13 Auditing

## 13.1 Key Operations Recorded by CTS

With Cloud Trace Service (CTS), you can record operations associated with DDS for later query, audit, and backtrack operations.

**Table 13-1** Key operations on DDS

| Operation                            | Resource | Trace Name              |
|--------------------------------------|----------|-------------------------|
| Restoring data to a new DB instance  | instance | ddsRestoreToNewInstance |
| Restoring to an existing DB instance | instance | ddsRestoreToOldInstance |
| Creating a DB instance               | instance | ddsCreateInstance       |
| Deleting a DB instance               | instance | ddsDeleteInstance       |
| Restarting a DB instance             | instance | ddsRestartInstance      |
| Scaling up a DB instance             | instance | ddsGrowInstance         |
| Scaling up storage space             | instance | ddsExtendInstanceVolume |
| Resetting the database password      | instance | ddsResetPassword        |
| Renaming a DB instance               | instance | ddsRenameInstance       |
| Switching SSL                        | instance | ddsSwitchSsl            |
| Modifying a DB instance port         | instance | ddsModifyInstancePort   |
| Creating a backup                    | backup   | ddsCreateBackup         |
| Deleting a backup                    | backup   | ddsDeleteBackup         |

| Operation                                               | Resource       | Trace Name               |
|---------------------------------------------------------|----------------|--------------------------|
| Setting a backup policy                                 | backup         | ddsSetBackupPolicy       |
| Applying a parameter template                           | parameterGroup | ddsApplyConfigurations   |
| Replicating a parameter template                        | parameterGroup | ddsCopyConfigurations    |
| Resetting a parameter template                          | parameterGroup | ddsResetConfigurations   |
| Creating a parameter template                           | parameterGroup | ddsCreateConfigurations  |
| Deleting a parameter template                           | parameterGroup | ddsDeleteConfigurations  |
| Updating a parameter template                           | parameterGroup | ddsUpdateConfigurations  |
| Binding an EIP                                          | instance       | ddsBindEIP               |
| Unbinding an EIP                                        | instance       | ddsUnBindEIP             |
| Editing a tag                                           | tag            | ddsModifyTag             |
| Deleting an instance tag                                | tag            | ddsDeleteInstanceTag     |
| Adding an instance tag                                  | tag            | ddsAddInstanceTag        |
| Rolling back upon scaling-up failure                    | instance       | ddsDeleteExtendedDdsNode |
| Changing DB instance classes                            | instance       | ddsResizeInstance        |
| Unfreezing a DB instance                                | instance       | ddsUnfreezeInstance      |
| Freezing a DB instance                                  | instance       | ddsFreezeInstance        |
| Changing a private IP address                           | instance       | ddsModifyIP              |
| Modifying a private domain name                         | instance       | ddsModifyDNSName         |
| Enabling or disabling cluster balancing                 | instance       | ddsSetBalancer           |
| Switching the internal communication mode               | instance       | ddsSwitchInnerSsl        |
| Adding read replicas                                    | instance       | AddReadOnlyNode          |
| Enabling shard/config IP address for a cluster instance | instance       | ddsCreatelp              |

| Operation                                        | Resource       | Trace Name                         |
|--------------------------------------------------|----------------|------------------------------------|
| Changing a security group                        | instance       | ddsModifySecurityGroup             |
| Changing an AZ                                   | instance       | ddsMigrateAvailabilityZone         |
| Modifying instance remarks                       | instance       | ddsModifyInstanceRemark            |
| Configuring a maintenance window                 | instance       | ddsModifyInstanceMaintenanceWindow |
| Upgrading patches                                | instance       | ddsUpgradeDatastorePatch           |
| Performing a primary/standby switchover          | instance       | ddsReplicaSetSwitchover            |
| Configuring cross-CIDR access                    | instance       | ddsModifyInstanceSourceSubnet      |
| Modifying instance parameters                    | parameterGroup | ddsUpdateInstanceConfigurations    |
| Exporting a parameter template for a DB instance | parameterGroup | ddsSaveConfigurations              |
| Setting a cross-region backup policy             | backup         | ddsModifyOffsiteBackupPolicy       |
| Enabling plaintext display of slow query logs    | instance       | ddsOpenSlowLogPlaintextSwitch      |
| Disabling plaintext display of slow query logs   | instance       | ddsCloseSlowLogPlaintextSwitch     |
| Downloading error or slow query logs             | instance       | ddsDownloadLog                     |
| Enabling the audit policy for a DB instance      | instance       | ddsOpenAuditLog                    |
| Disabling the audit policy for a DB instance     | instance       | ddsCloseAuditLog                   |
| Downloading audit logs for a DB instance         | instance       | ddsDownloadAuditLog                |
| Deleting audit logs for a DB instance            | instance       | ddsDeleteAuditLogFile              |
| Modifying recycling policy                       | instance       | ddsModifyRecyclePolicy             |

## 13.2 Viewing CTS Traces

For details about how to view audit logs, see [Querying Real-Time Traces](#).



# 14 Logs

---

## 14.1 Log Reporting

### Prerequisites

You have created a log group and a log stream on the Log Tank Service (LTS) console.

### Scenarios

If you enable log reporting to LTS, new audit logs generated for DDS DB instances will be uploaded to LTS for management. You can view details about audit logs of DDS DB instances, including searching for logs, visualizing logs, downloading logs, and viewing real-time logs.

- Enable log reporting to LTS for a single DB instance by referring to [Enabling Log Reporting to LTS for a Single DB Instance](#).
- Edit log reporting to LTS for a single DB instance by referring to [Editing Log Reporting to LTS for a Single DB Instance](#).
- Disable log reporting to LTS for a single DB instance by referring to [Disabling Log Reporting to LTS for a Single DB Instance](#).
- Enable log reporting to LTS in batches by referring to [Enabling Log Reporting to LTS in Batches](#).
- Disable log reporting to LTS in batches by referring to [Disabling Log Reporting to LTS in Batches](#).

### Precautions


- To apply for the log reporting permission, submit a service ticket by choosing [Service Tickets > Create Service Ticket](#) in the upper right corner of the management console.
- Logs record all requests sent to your DB instance and are stored in LTS.
- This request does not take effect immediately. There is a delay of about 10 minutes.

- You will be billed for log reporting. For details, see [LTS Pricing Details](#).
- After this function is enabled, all audit policies are reported by default.
- If **Audit Policy** is enabled, LTS reuses the audit policy set for your DB instance and you will also be billed for reporting audit logs to LTS. (Only after you disable **Audit Policy**, the fee will be terminated.)
- If you enable audit log reporting to LTS for an instance with the **Audit Policy** toggle switch turned on, you can turn off this switch only when the instance status becomes available.

## Enabling Log Reporting to LTS for a Single DB Instance

**Step 1** Log in to the console.

**Step 2** Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

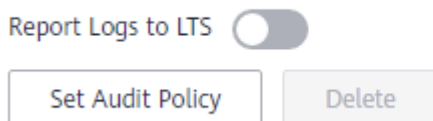
**Step 3** Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

**Step 4** On the **Instances** page, locate a target DB instance and click its name.

**Step 5** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Audit Logs**.

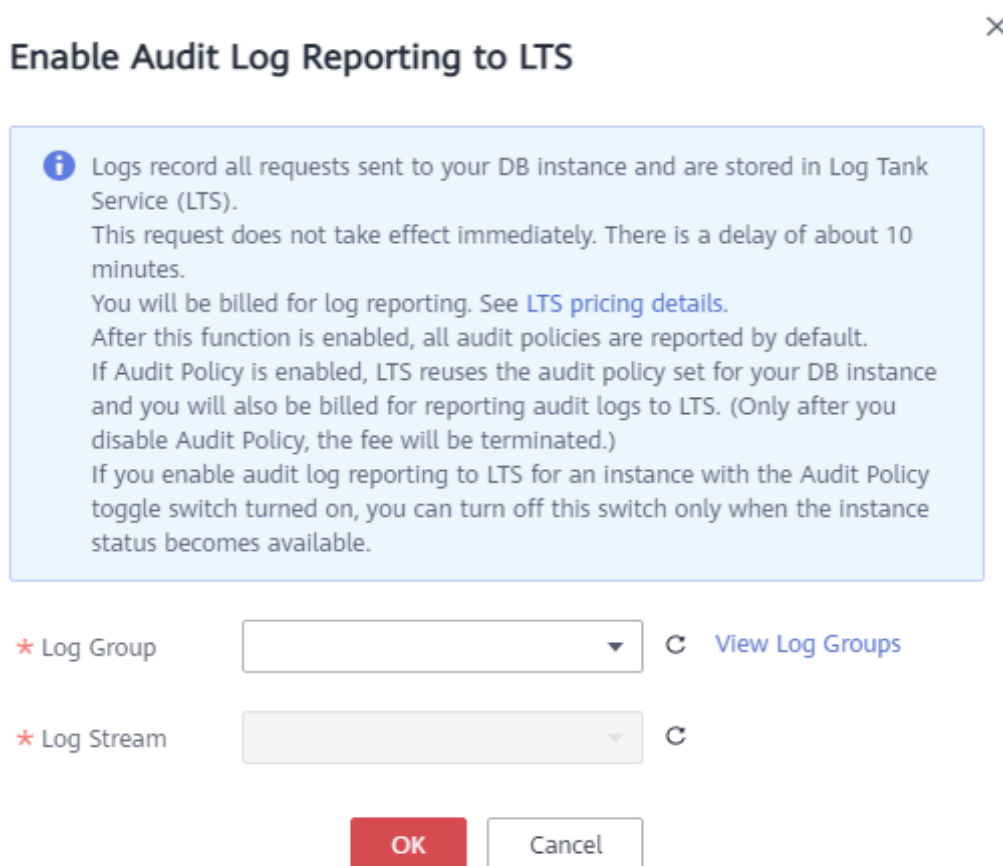
**Step 6** On the **Audit Logs** page, click  next to **Report Logs to LTS**.

**Figure 14-1** Enabling Report Logs to LTS



**Step 7** In the displayed dialog box, specify **Log Group** and **Log Stream**.

**Figure 14-2** Enabling audit log reporting to LTS



**NOTE**

If you enable log reporting to LTS for the first time, click **View Log Groups** to log in to the LTS console and configure log groups and log streams. For details, see [Managing Log Groups](#) and [Managing Log Streams](#).


**Step 8** Click **OK**.

----End

## Editing Log Reporting to LTS for a Single DB Instance

**Step 1** Log in to the console.

**Step 2** Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

**Step 3** Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

**Step 4** On the **Instances** page, locate a target DB instance and click its name.

**Step 5** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Audit Logs**.

**Step 6** On the **Audit Logs** page, click **Edit** next to the **Report Logs to LTS** toggle switch.

 **NOTE**

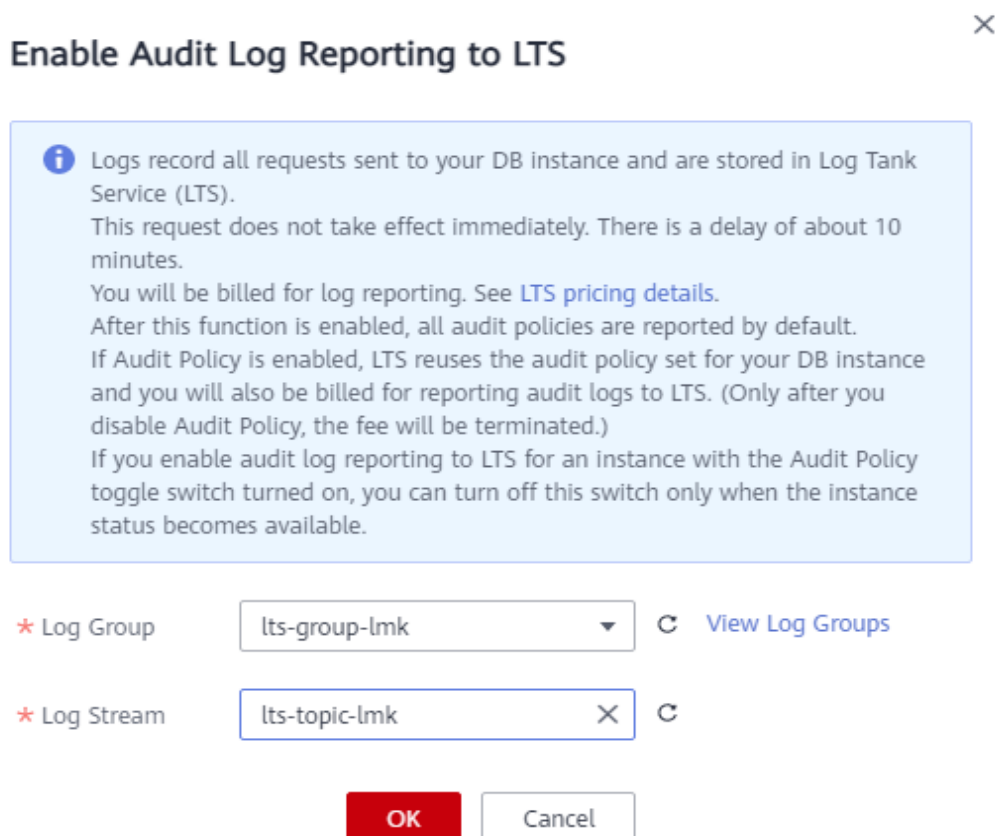
The editing function is available only when the **Report Logs to LTS** toggle switch is turned on.

**Step 7** In the displayed dialog box, specify **Log Group** and **Log Stream**.

 **NOTE**

Select the target log group and log stream.

**Figure 14-3** Editing audit log reporting to LTS




**Step 8** Click **OK**.

----End

## Disabling Log Reporting to LTS for a Single DB Instance

**Step 1** Log in to the console.

**Step 2** Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

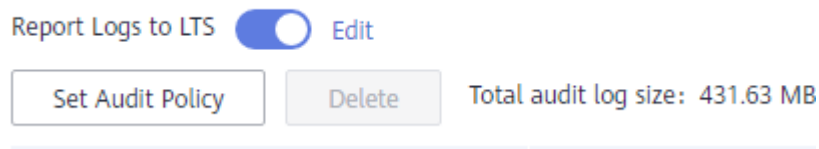
**Step 3** Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

**Step 4** On the **Instances** page, locate a target DB instance and click its name.

**Step 5** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Audit Logs**.

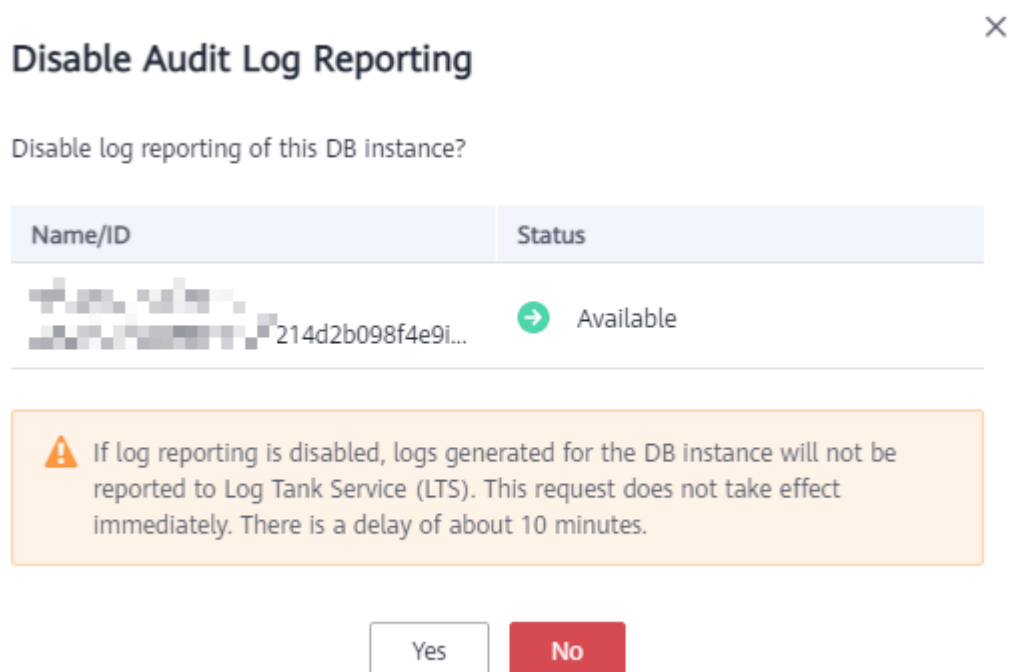
**Step 6** On the **Audit Logs** page, click  next to **Report Logs to LTS**.

**Figure 14-4** Disabling Report Logs to LTS



**Step 7** In the displayed dialog box, click **Yes**.


**Figure 14-5** Disabling audit log reporting to LTS




----End

## Enabling Log Reporting to LTS in Batches

**Step 1** Log in to the console.

**Step 2** Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

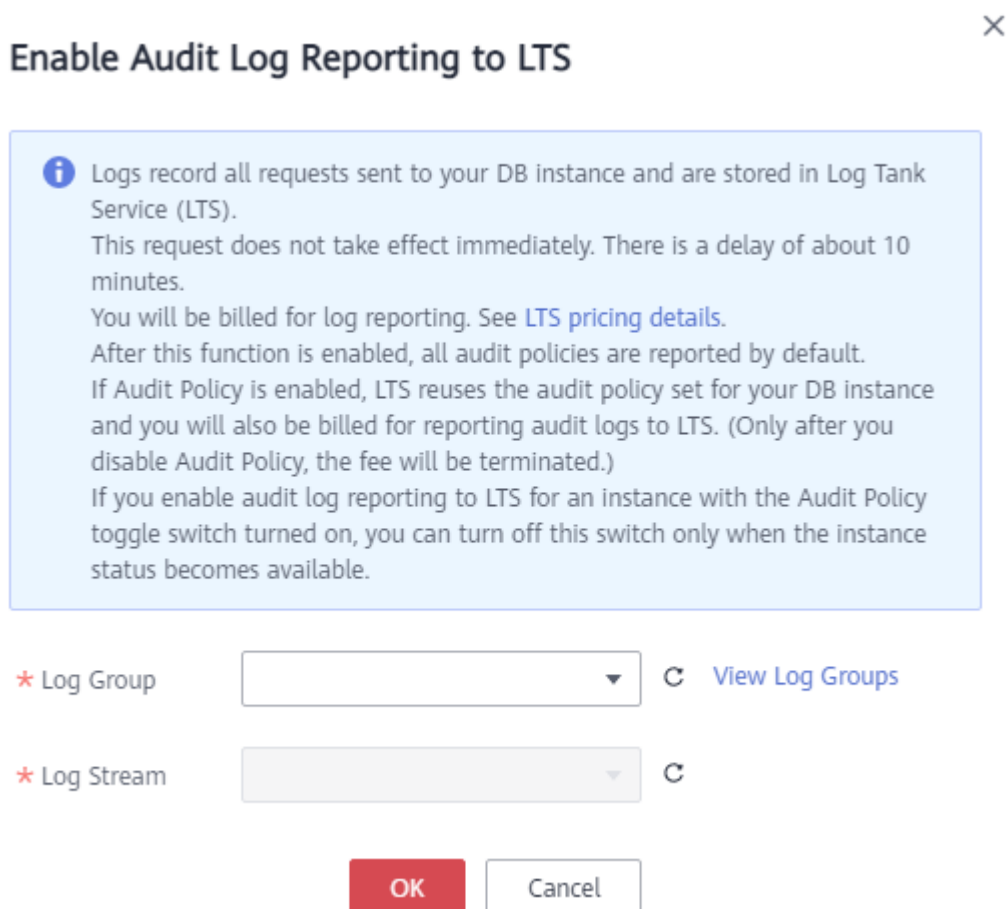
**Step 3** Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

**Step 4** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Log Reporting**.

**Step 5** Select target DB instances and click **Enable Log Reporting**.

**Step 6** In the displayed dialog box, specify **Log Group** and **Log Stream**.

**Figure 14-6** Enabling log reporting to LTS in batches



**NOTE**

- Select the target log group and log stream.
- If you enable log reporting to LTS for the first time, click **View Log Groups** to log in to the LTS console and configure log groups and log streams. For details, see [Managing Log Groups](#) and [Managing Log Streams](#).


**Step 7** Click **OK**.

----End

## Disabling Log Reporting to LTS in Batches

**Step 1** Log in to the console.

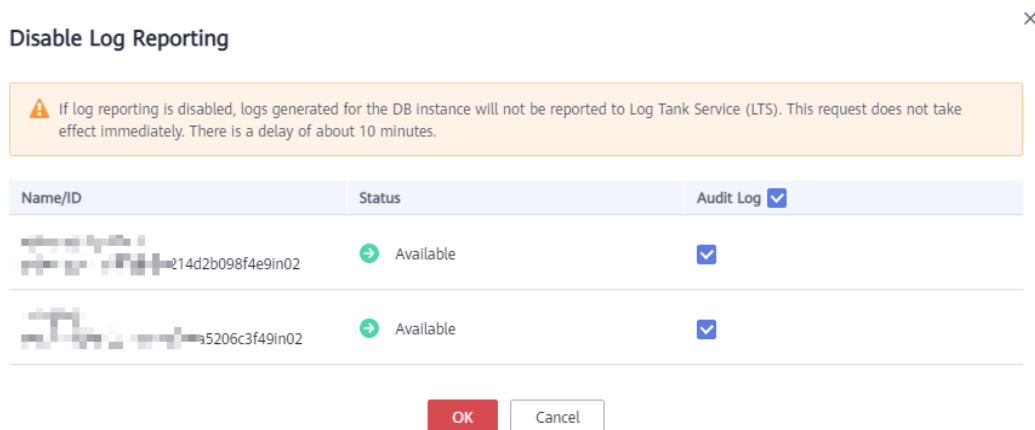
**Step 2** Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

**Step 3** Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

**Step 4** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Log Reporting**.

**Step 5** Select target DB instances and click **Disable Log Reporting**.

**Figure 14-7** Disabling log reporting to LTS in batches



**Step 6** In the displayed dialog box, click **OK**.


----End


## 14.2 Error Logs

DDS log management allows you to view database-level logs, including warning- and error-level logs generated during database running, which help you analyze system problems.

### Viewing and Exporting Log Details

**Step 1** [Log in to the management console](#).

**Step 2** Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

**Step 3** Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

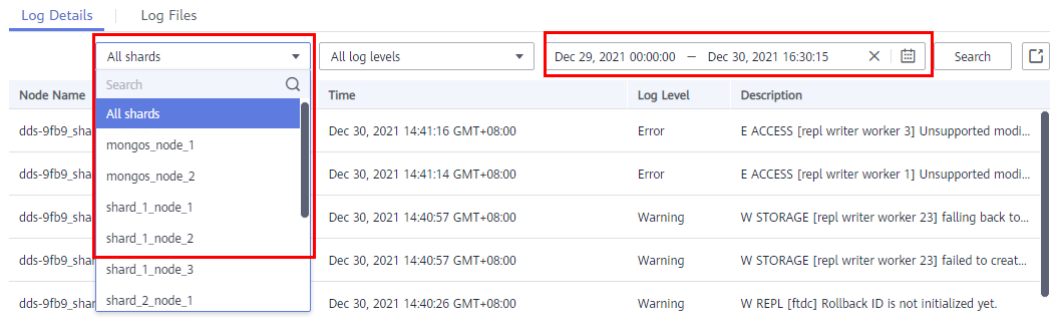
**Step 4** On the **Instances** page, click the instance name.

**Step 5** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Error Logs**.

**Step 6** On the displayed page, click **Error Logs**. Then, view the log details on the **Log Details** tab.

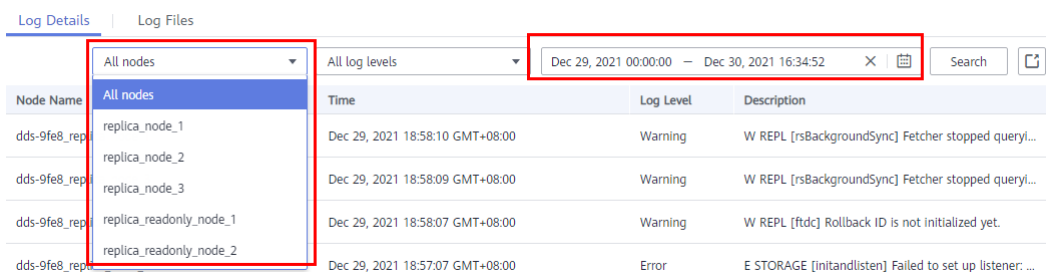
- For a cluster instance, you can view error logs of the dds mongos, shard, and config nodes.

**Figure 14-8** Viewing error logs of a cluster instance



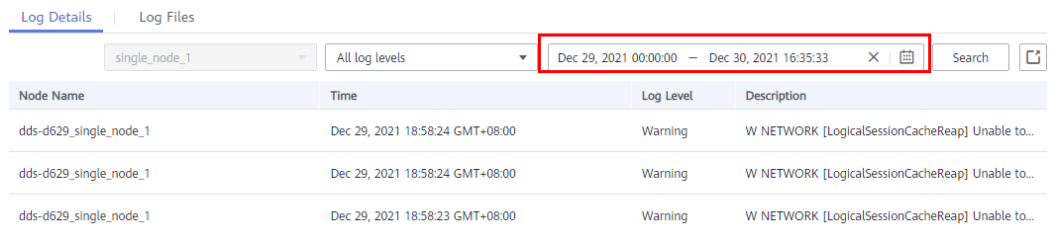
- For a replica set instance, you can view the error logs of the primary, secondary, hidden nodes, and read replicas.

**Figure 14-9** Viewing error logs of a replica set instance



- For a single node instance, you can view error logs of the current node.

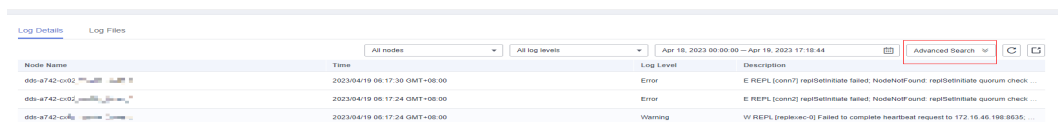
**Figure 14-10** Viewing error logs of a single-node instance



- You can view up to 2,000 error logs of a specified node type, at a specified level, and within a specified period.

**Step 7** On the **Log Details** tab, click **Advanced Search**.

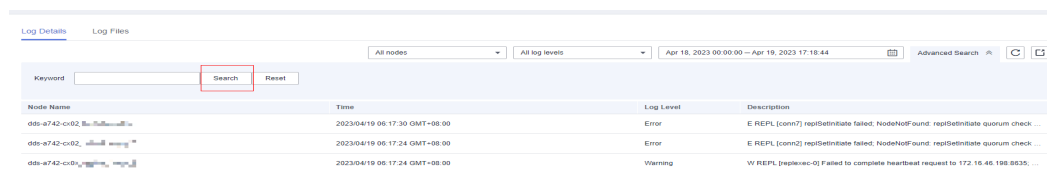
**Figure 14-11** Advanced search



**Step 8** Specify **Keyword** and click **Search** to view log information.

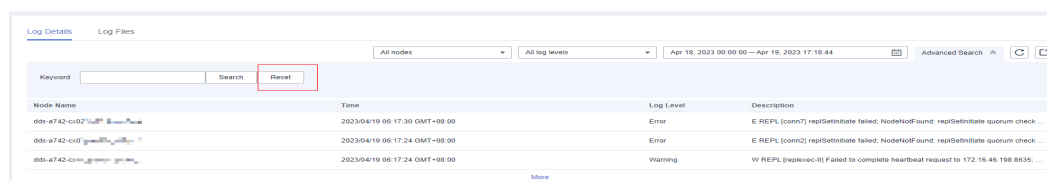



**Figure 14-12** Setting advanced search parameters



**Step 9** To clear the parameter settings of **Advanced Search**, click **Reset**.

**Figure 14-13** Resetting advanced search parameters



**Step 10** On the **Log Details** tab, click  in the upper right corner of the log list to export log details.


- View the .csv file exported to your local PC.
- Up to 2,000 log details can be exported at a time.

----End

## Downloading Logs

**Step 1** [Log in to the management console](#).

**Step 2** Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

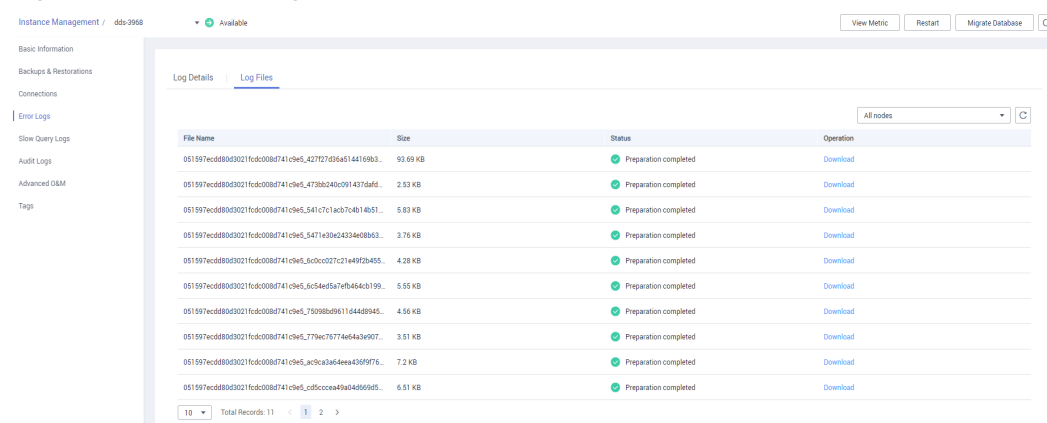
**Step 3** Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

**Step 4** On the **Instances** page, click the Community Edition instance name.

**Step 5** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Error Logs**.

**Step 6** On the **Error Logs** page, click the **Log Files** tab. Locate a log whose status is **Preparation completed** and click **Download** in the **Operation** column.

**Figure 14-14** Error Logs



- The system automatically loads the downloading preparation tasks. The time it takes to download the logs depends on the file size and on the network environment.
  - During the downloading preparation, the log status is **Preparing**.
  - Once the logs are ready for download, the log status changes to **Preparation completed**.
  - If the downloading preparation fails, the log status is **Abnormal**.
- You can download only one log file from a node. The maximum size of a log file to be downloaded is 40 MB.
- The download link is valid for 15 minutes. After the download link expires, a message is displayed indicating that the download link has expired. To download the log, click **OK**.

----End

## 14.3 Slow Query Logs

Slow query logs record statements that exceed **operationProfiling.slowOpThresholdMs** (500 seconds by default). You can view log details and statistics to identify statements that are executing slowly and optimize the statements. You can also download slow query logs for service analysis.

### Precautions

- Community Edition instances allow you to view and export log details, enable Show Original Log, and download log files on the management console.
- The Show Original Log function cannot be enabled when you delete DB instances, add nodes, change DB instance class, rebuild secondary node, or the DB instance is frozen.
- If **Show Original Log** is being enabled, you cannot delete instances, add nodes, or change instance class.
- By default, if the execution time of a SQL statement exceeds 500 ms, a slow query log is recorded.
- When the size of slow query logs reaches a specified threshold, old data is automatically deleted. If you need to analyze slow query logs, download the logs on the console in a timely manner.
- You can query slow logs for the last 30 days.
- You cannot delete slow query logs of DDS.
- When you export data on the **Log Details** page, all logs displayed on the current page will be exported.
- For details about how to sort slow query logs by field, such as execution completion time, SQL statement, client IP address, user, execution duration, lock wait time, scanned documents, returned documents, and scanned indexes, see "Slow Query Logs" in *Data Admin Service (DAS) User Guide*.
- To apply for the advanced search permission, submit a service ticket by choosing [Service Tickets > Create Service Ticket](#) in the upper right corner of the management console. DB instances of 230830 and later versions support the advanced search function.

## Parameter description

**Table 14-1** Parameters related to DDS slow query logs

| Parameter                            | Description                                                                                                                                                                        |
|--------------------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| operationProfiling.slowOpThresholdMs | Queries that exceed the threshold in the unit of ms are deemed slow. The default value is <b>500 ms</b> .<br>Unless otherwise specified, keeping the default value is recommended. |


## Enabling Show Original Log

### NOTE

- If **Show Original Log** is enabled, original logs are displayed. By default, the system automatically deletes original logs after 30 days, and the period cannot be changed.
- If the instance a slow query log belongs to is deleted, related logs are deleted along with it.
- **Show Original Log** can be disabled after it is enabled. The slow query logs reported before the function is disabled are displayed. The slow query logs reported after the function is disabled are not displayed.

**Step 1** [Log in to the management console](#).

**Step 2** Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

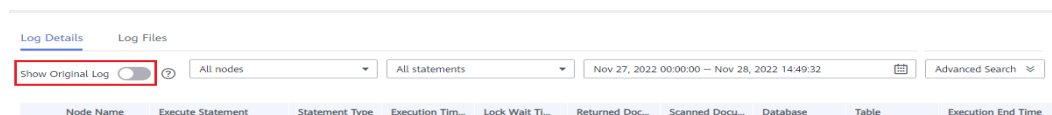
**Step 3** Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

**Step 4** On the **Instances** page, click the instance name.

**Step 5** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Slow Query Logs**.

**Step 6** On the displayed page, click **Slow Query Logs**. Then, click  on the **Log Details** tab.

**Figure 14-15** Enabling Show Original Log





**Step 7** In the displayed dialog box, click **Yes** to enable the function of slowing original logs.

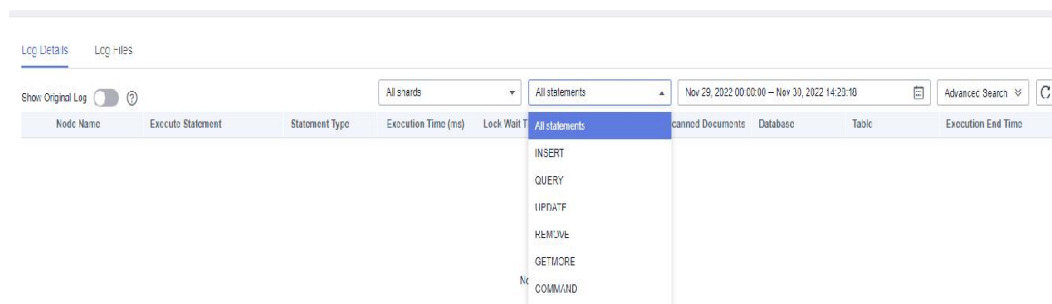
----End

## Viewing and Exporting Log Details

**Step 1** [Log in to the management console](#).

- Step 2** Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.
- Step 3** Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.
- Step 4** On the **Instances** page, click the instance name.
- Step 5** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Slow Query Logs**.
- Step 6** On the **Slow Query Logs** page, set search criteria on the **Log Details** tab to view log information.

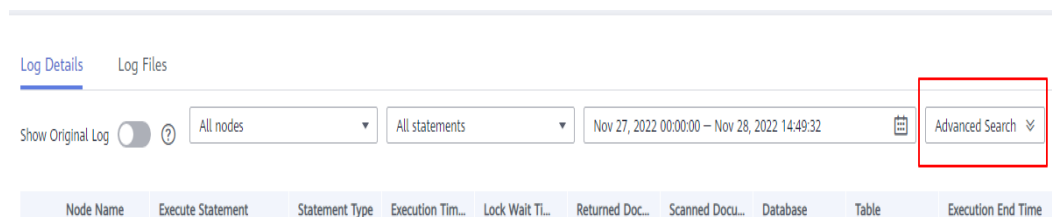
**Figure 14-16** Querying slow query logs



- Log records of all shards of a cluster instance
- Log records of all nodes in a replica set instance
- Slow query logs of a node in different time periods
- Slow query statements of the following levels
  - All statement type
  - INSERT
  - QUERY
  - UPDATE
  - REMOVE
  - GETMORE
  - COMMAND
  - KILLCURSORS
- You can view up to 2,000 slow logs of a specified node type, at a specified level, and within a specified period.

**Step 7** On the **Log Details** tab, click **Advanced Search**.

**Figure 14-17** Advanced search

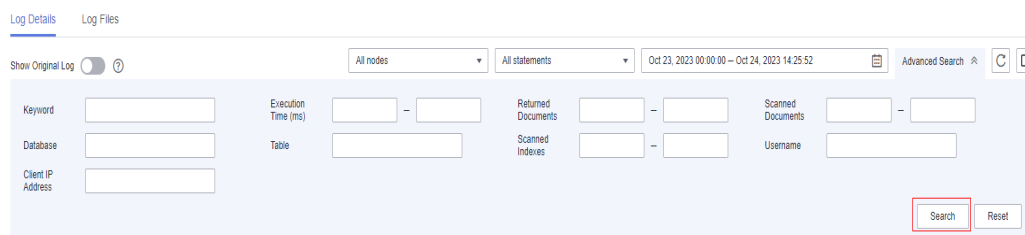


 **NOTE**

- To apply for the advanced search permission, submit a service ticket by choosing [Service Tickets > Create Service Ticket](#) in the upper right corner of the management console. DB instances of 230830 and later versions support the advanced search function.

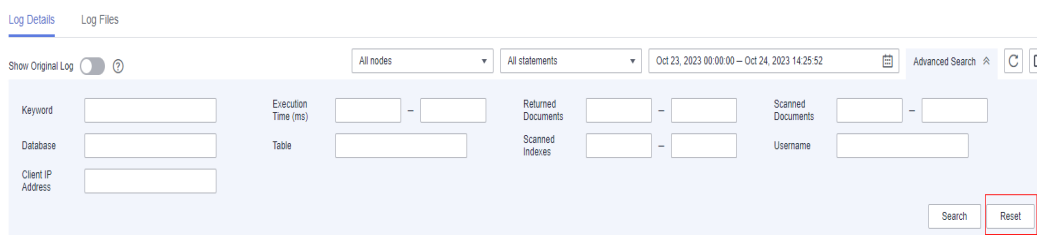
**Step 8** Specify **Keyword**, **Execution Time (ms)**, **Returned Documents**, **Scanned Documents**, **Database**, **Table**, **Scanned Indexes**, **Username**, and **Client IP Address** and click **Search** to view log information.


**Figure 14-18** Setting advanced search parameters



**Step 9** To clear the parameter settings of **Advanced Search**, click **Reset**.

**Figure 14-19** Resetting advanced search parameters




**Step 10** On the **Log Details** tab, click  in the upper right corner of the log list to export log details.


- View the .csv file exported to your local PC.
- Up to 2,000 log details can be exported at a time.

----End

## Downloading Logs

**Step 1** [Log in to the management console](#).

**Step 2** Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

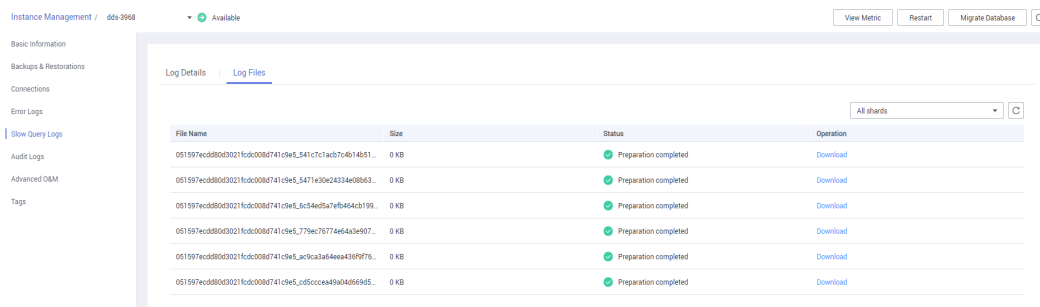
**Step 3** Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

**Step 4** On the **Instances** page, click the instance name.

**Step 5** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Slow Query Logs**.

**Step 6** On the **Slow Query Logs** page, click the **Log Files** tab. Locate a log whose status is **Preparation completed** and click **Download** in the **Operation** column.

Figure 14-20 Slow Query Logs



| File Name                                               | Size | Status                | Operation |
|---------------------------------------------------------|------|-----------------------|-----------|
| 051597ecd880d3021fcd0086741c9e5_541c7c1ac704b14b51...   | 0 KB | Preparation completed | Download  |
| 051597ecd880d3021fcd0086741c9e5_5471e30e2434408863...   | 0 KB | Preparation completed | Download  |
| 051597ecd880d3021fcd0086741c9e5_6c54e05a7e6d464c3199... | 0 KB | Preparation completed | Download  |
| 051597ecd880d3021fcd0086741c9e5_779ec76774e54a3e907...  | 0 KB | Preparation completed | Download  |
| 051597ecd880d3021fcd0086741c9e5_ac9ca3a844ee438f9f76... | 0 KB | Preparation completed | Download  |
| 051597ecd880d3021fcd0086741c9e5_c05cc0ea49a0466995...   | 0 KB | Preparation completed | Download  |

- The system automatically loads the downloading preparation tasks. The time required depends on the log file size and the network environment.
  - During the downloading preparation, the log status is **Preparing**.
  - Once the logs are ready for download, the log status changes to **Preparation completed**.
  - If the downloading preparation fails, the log status is **Abnormal**.
- You can download only one log file from a node. The maximum size of a log file to be downloaded is 40 MB.
- The download link is valid for 5 minutes. After the download link expires, a message is displayed indicating that the download link has expired. To download the log, click **OK**.

----End

## Reference

[How Do I Optimize Slow Operations?](#)

## 14.4 Audit Logs

### 14.4.1 Audit Log Policy Management

An audit log records operations performed on your databases and collections. The generated log files are stored in OBS. Auditing logs can enhance your database security and help you analyze the cause of failed operations.

#### Precautions

- The audit policy of a DDS DB instance is disabled by default. You can enable it based on your service requirements. After the function is enabled, the system records audit information about write operations, which may deteriorate the performance by 15% to 20%.
- You will be charged for enabling SQL audit log. For details, see [Service Pricing](#).
- DDS checks generated audit logs. If the retention period of logs exceeds the period you set, DDS will delete the logs. It is recommended that audit logs be stored for more than 180 days for tracing and problem analysis.

- After the audit policy is modified, DDS audits logs according to the new policy and the retention period of the original audit logs is subject to the modified retention period.
- You are not advised to delete audit logs. To delete audit logs, ensure that this operation meets external and internal security compliance requirements, and [download audit logs](#) and back them up locally. Audit logs cannot be restored after being deleted. Exercise caution when performing this operation.
- You can view, download, and delete DDS instance audit logs on the DDS console. For details, see [Viewing Audit Logs on the DDS Console](#). By enabling log reporting in [Log Reporting](#), you can also view details about audit logs of DDS DB instances on the LTS console, including searching for logs, monitoring logs, downloading logs, and viewing real-time logs. For details, see [Viewing Audit Logs on the LTS Console](#).

## Example Traces


The following is an example of querying the replica set status. For details about the fields, see [Trace Structure](#).


```
{
 "atype": "replSetGetStatus",
 "ts": {
 "$date": "2022-06-29T07:23:29.077+0000"
 },
 "local": {
 "ip": "127.0.0.1",
 "port": 8636
 },
 "remote": {
 "ip": "127.0.0.1",
 "port": 50860
 },
 "users": [
 {
 "user": "rwuser",
 "db": "admin"
 }
],
 "roles": [
 {
 "role": "root",
 "db": "admin"
 }
],
 "param": {
 "command": "replSetGetStatus",
 "ns": "admin",
 "args": {
 "replSetGetStatus": 1,
 "forShell": 1,
 "$clusterTime": {
 "clusterTime": {
 "$timestamp": {
 "t": 1656487409,
 "i": 117
 }
 }
 },
 "signature": {
 "hash": {
```

```
 "$binary": "PTJhGQ6cr8RyzuqbevXfg0xWj/c=",
 "$type": "00"
 },
 "keyId": {
 "$numberLong": "7102437926763495425"
 }
},
"$db": "admin"
}
},
"result": 0
}
```

## Configuring the Audit Policy

**Step 1** [Log in to the management console.](#)

**Step 2** Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

**Step 3** Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

**Step 4** On the **Instances** page, click the instance name.

**Step 5** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Audit Logs**.

**Step 6** On the **Audit Logs** page, click **Set Audit Policy**.

**Step 7** On the displayed page, click .

**Step 8** Configure required parameters and click **OK** to enable the audit policy.



Figure 14-21 Enabling audit policy

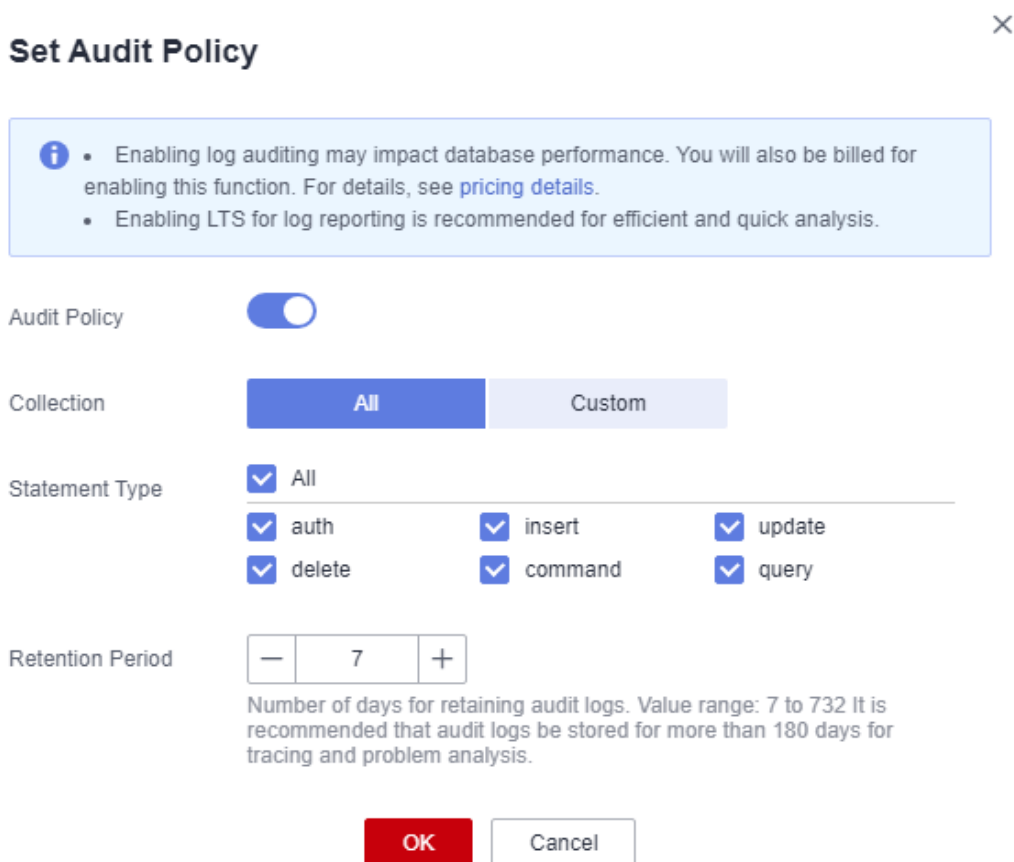


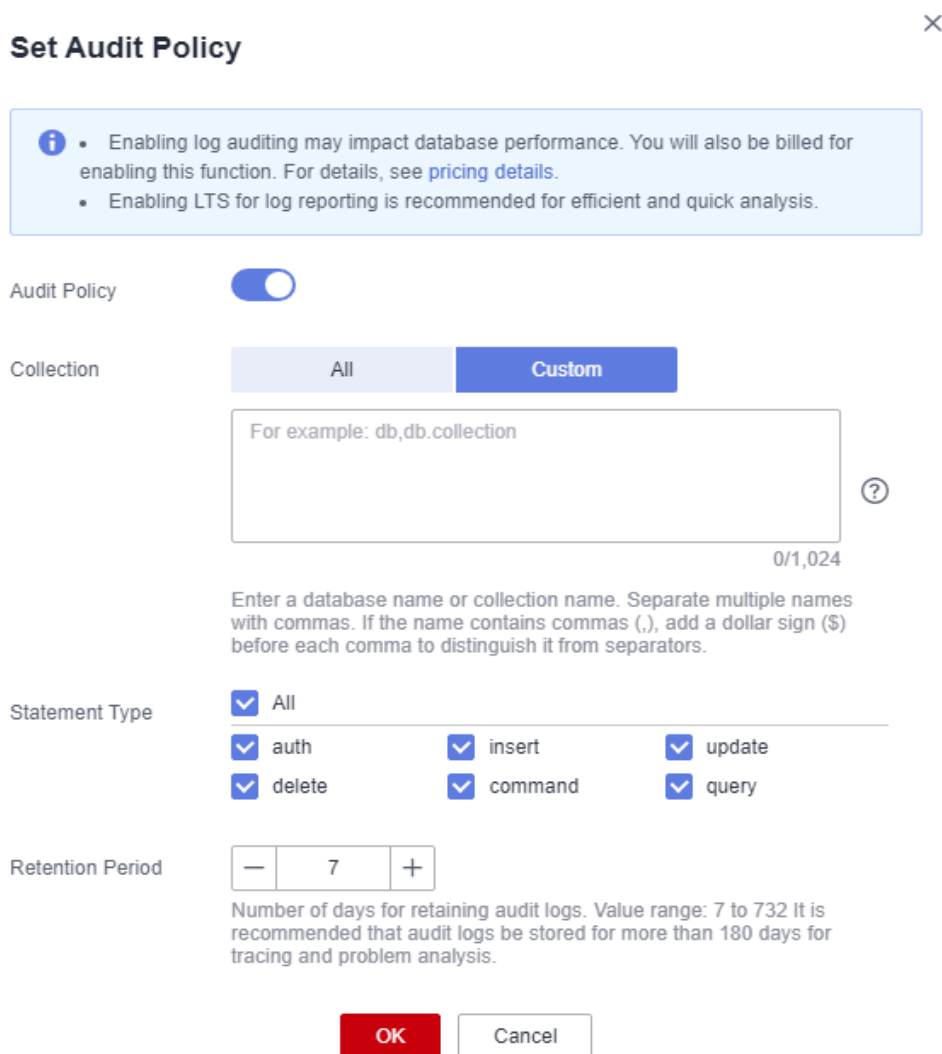
Table 14-2 Parameter description

| Parameter      | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
|----------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| All            | Audit all collections in the instance.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| Custom         | Audit specified databases or collections in the instance.<br>The database or collection name cannot contain spaces or the following special characters: \ ' : " [ ] { } ( ) The dollar sign (\$) can be used only as an escape character.<br>The database name can contain a maximum of 64 characters.<br>If you enter a combined database and collection name, the total name length is 120 characters with the database name length of no more than 64 characters and the collection name cannot be blank, contain <b>null</b> , or use <b>system.</b> in prefix. |
| Statement Type | You can query audit logs of specified statements in a collection, including auth, insert, update, delete, command and query statements.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| Retention Days | The number of days to retain audit logs. Range: 7 to 732                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |

- After the audit policy is enabled, you can modify it as required. After the modification, logs are generated according to the new policy and the retention period of the original logs is subject to the modified retention period.

To modify the audit policy, click **Set Audit Policy**. In the dialog box that is displayed, modify the audit policy.

**Figure 14-22** Modifying the audit policy



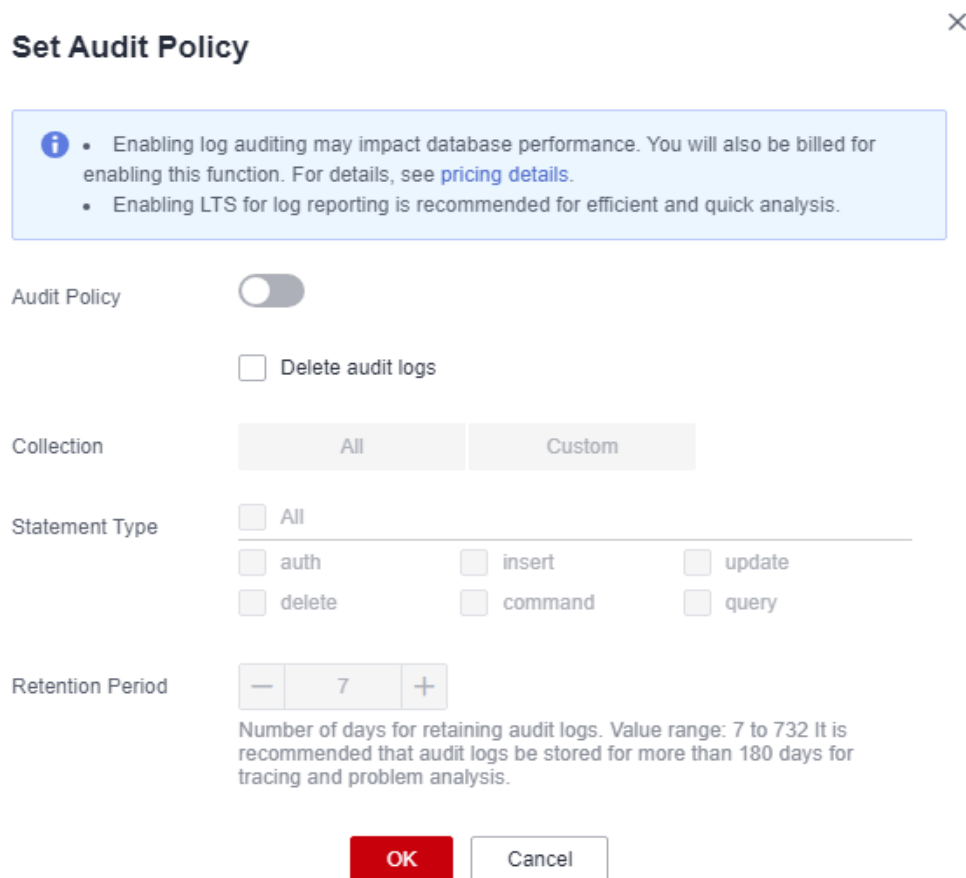
- Disable the audit policy.

**NOTE**

After the audit policy is disabled, no audit log is generated.

To disable the audit policy, click . **Figure 14-23** shows the dialog box for setting the backup policy.

**Figure 14-23** Disabling audit policy



You can determine whether to delete all audit logs:

- If you do not select **Delete audit logs**, all audit logs within the retention period will be retained. You can manually delete them later.
- If you select **Delete audit logs**, all audit logs within the retention period will be deleted.

Click **OK**.

----End

## 14.4.2 Viewing Audit Logs on the LTS Console

You can analyze, search for, monitor, download, and view real-time logs on the LTS console.

### Querying Audit Logs Reported to LTS

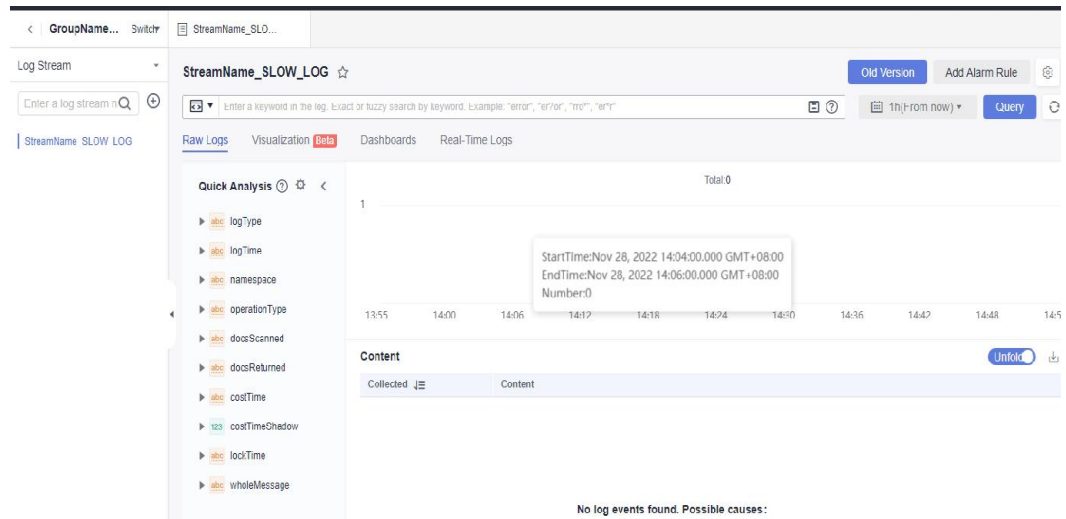
**NOTE**

You have enabled log reporting to LTS. For details, see [Log Reporting](#).

- Step 1** Click in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Management & Governance > Log Tank Service**.

**Step 2** In the **Log Groups** area, locate a target log group and click its name. For details about logs, see [Log Management](#).

**Figure 14-24** Viewing log details




----End

## Downloading Audit Logs Reported to LTS

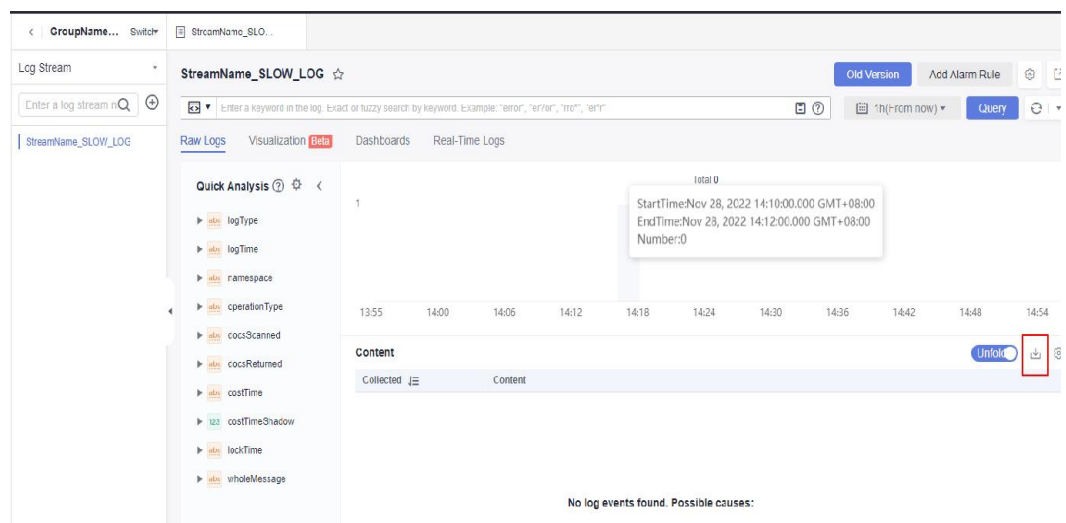
### NOTE

If you have enabled log reporting to LTS for your DB instance in [Log Reporting](#), you can download logs on the LTS console.

**Step 1** Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Management & Governance > Log Tank Service**.

**Step 2** In the **Log Groups** area, locate a target log group and click its name.

**Figure 14-25** Downloading logs



**Step 3** Click .

----End


## 14.4.3 Viewing Audit Logs on the DDS Console

You can view, download, and delete audit logs on the DDS console.

### Querying Audit Logs

**Step 1** [Log in to the management console.](#)

**Step 2** Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

**Step 3** Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

**Step 4** On the **Instances** page, locate a target DB instance and click its name.

**Step 5** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Audit Logs**.


**Step 6** On the **Audit Logs** page, locate a target log file and click **Download** in the **Operation** column to download the log file to the local PC for query.

----End

### Downloading Logs

**Step 1** [Log in to the management console.](#)

**Step 2** Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

**Step 3** Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

**Step 4** On the **Instances** page, locate a target DB instance and click its name.

**Step 5** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Audit Logs**.



**Step 6** On the **Audit Logs** page, locate a target log file and click **Download** in the **Operation** column.

- The system automatically loads the downloading preparation tasks. The time required depends on the log file size and the network environment.
- The download link is valid for 5 minutes. After the download link expires, a message is displayed indicating that the download link has expired. To download the log, click **OK**.

----End

### Deleting Logs

**Step 1** [Log in to the management console.](#)

- Step 2** Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.
- Step 3** Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.
- Step 4** On the **Instances** page, locate a target DB instance and click its name.
- Step 5** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Audit Logs**.
- Step 6** On the **Audit Logs** page, locate a target log file and click **Delete** in the **Operation** column.
- Step 7** Click **Yes**.
- End

# 15 Task Center

This section describes how to view the progress and result of asynchronous tasks on the **Task Center** page.

## Precautions

Tasks that fail to be executed will be retained for seven days by default.

## Tasks Overview

**Table 15-1** List of tasks that can be viewed

| Task Name                                  | Description                                                                                                          |
|--------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Creating an instance                       | Creating a cluster instance or replica set instance.                                                                 |
| Scaling up storage space                   | Scaling up the storage space of the shard node of a cluster instance or the storage space of a replica set instance. |
| Changing instance class                    | Changing the class of a cluster instance or replica set instance.                                                    |
| Adding nodes                               | Adding nodes to a cluster instance.                                                                                  |
| Adding read replicas                       | Adding read replicas to a cluster or replica set instance of Community Edition.                                      |
| Restarting DB instances                    | Restarting a cluster instance, one or more cluster instance nodes, or a replica set instance.                        |
| Restoring to a new DB instance             | Restoring data to a new cluster instance or replica set instance.                                                    |
| Restoring data to the original DB instance | Restoring data to a new Community Edition cluster instance, single node instance, or replica set instance.           |


| Task Name                                         | Description                                                                                                   |
|---------------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Restoring to a point in time                      | Restoring a replica set instance to a point in time.                                                          |
| Restoring databases and tables to a point in time | Restores table-level data of a replica set instance to a specified point in time.                             |
| Performing a primary/standby switchover           | Perform a primary/standby switchover for a replica set instance.                                              |
| Binding and unbinding an EIP                      | Bind or unbind an EIP to or from a cluster instance, single node instance, or replica set instance.           |
| Switching SSL                                     | Enabling or disabling SSL for a cluster instance, single node instance, or replica set instance.              |
| Changing a database port                          | Changing the database port of a cluster , single node, or replica set instance of Community Edition.          |
| Changing a security group                         | Changing the security group of a cluster, single node, or replica set instance of Community Edition.          |
| Changing a private IP address                     | Changing the private IP address of a cluster, single node, or replica set instance of Community Edition.      |
| Changing an AZ                                    | Changing the AZ of a cluster, single node, or replica set instance of Community Edition.                      |
| Enabling the shard/config IP address              | Enabling the shard/config address for the cluster instance of Community Edition.                              |
| Modifying the oplog size                          | Changing the oplog size of a cluster, single node, or replica set instance of Community Edition               |
| Physical backup                                   | Creating automated and manual backups of a cluster, single node, or replica set instance of Community Edition |
| Upgrading minor version                           | Community Edition cluster and replica set instances are being patched.                                        |

## Procedure

**Step 1** [Log in to the management console.](#)

**Step 2** Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.



**Step 3** Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

**Step 4** In the navigation pane on the left, click **Task Center**.

**Step 5** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Task Center**. Then, view the task progresses and results.

- You can view tasks in a specified period.
- The tasks can be located by DB instance name and ID or by task status or type from the drop-down list in the upper right corner.

----End

# 16 DBA Assistant

---

## 16.1 Real-Time Diagnosis

### 16.1.1 Real-Time Sessions

You can manage sessions in the following scenarios:

- **Emergency Channel:** If the maximum number of connections for an instance has been reached and the instance cannot be logged in to, you can view and kill unnecessary sessions through the emergency channel.
- **History Logs:** You can view history logs to learn details of the kill operations that you performed using the emergency channel function.


#### Precautions

- This function is not recommended unless you really need it. All your kill operations will be logged.
- DB instances of Community Edition 3.4, 4.0, 4.2, and 4.4 are supported.
- DB instances in the creating, frozen or abnormal state are not supported.
- Killing inactive sessions is not allowed.

#### Procedure

**Step 1** [Log in to the management console.](#)

**Step 2** Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

**Step 3** Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service.**

**Step 4** On the **Instances** page, click the cluster instance name.

**Step 5** In the navigation tree, choose **DBA Assistant.**

**Step 6** Choose **Real-Time Diagnosis.**

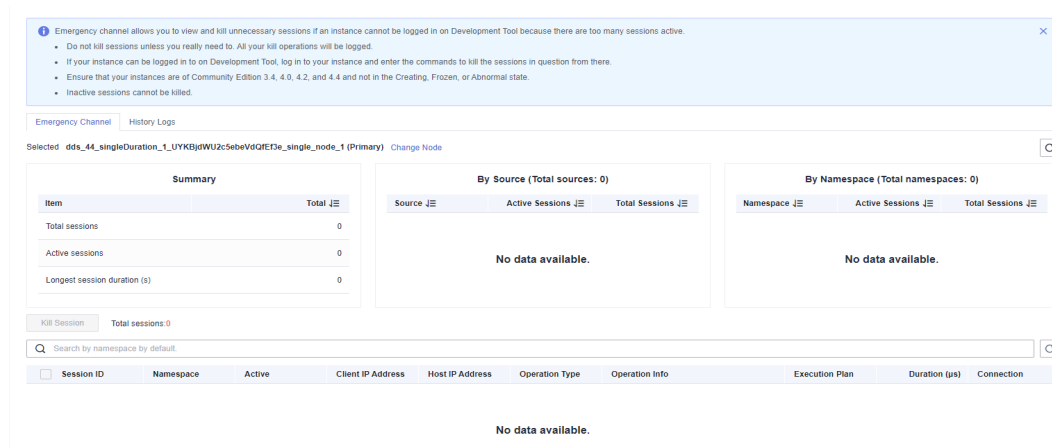
**Step 7** Click **Real-Time Sessions**.

**Step 8** On the displayed **Emergency Channel** page, view session statistics of the current instance node by overview, source, or namespace.

**Step 9** By default, sessions are sorted and displayed in the session list in descending order by duration. You can also search for sessions by specifying **Sessions lasting longer than** or **Namespace**.

**Step 10** Select the sessions that you want to kill and click **Kill Session**.

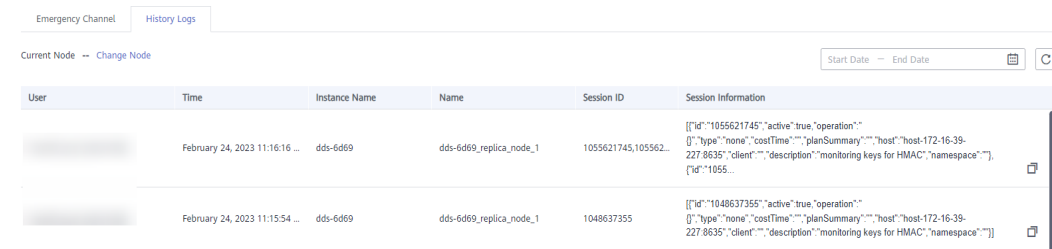
**Figure 16-1** Killing a session



**Step 11** In the **Kill Session** dialog box, confirm the session information and click **Yes**.

**Step 12** Click **History Logs** to view the sessions killed through the emergency channel.

**Figure 16-2** Viewing history logs



----End

# 17 SQL Execution Control

---

## Scenarios


- All requests whose execution duration exceeds  $n$  seconds need to be killed.
- Requests from an IP address for a specific client need to be killed.
- All requests for full table scan need to be killed.


## Precautions

- The instance node must have 4 or more vCPUs.
- Replica set instances and cluster instances of versions 3.4, 4.0, 4.2, and 4.4 are supported.
- A maximum of 10 rules can be created for a DB instance.
- For an ultra-large cluster with more than 32 shards, creating and enabling rules whose **Node Type** is **shard** or **dds mongos\_shard** will fail. You are advised to create rules whose **Node Type** is **dds mongos**.
- For a cluster with more than 10 shards, you are advised to select one rule at a time when enabling or disabling rules.

## Creating a Rule

**Step 1** [Log in to the management console](#).

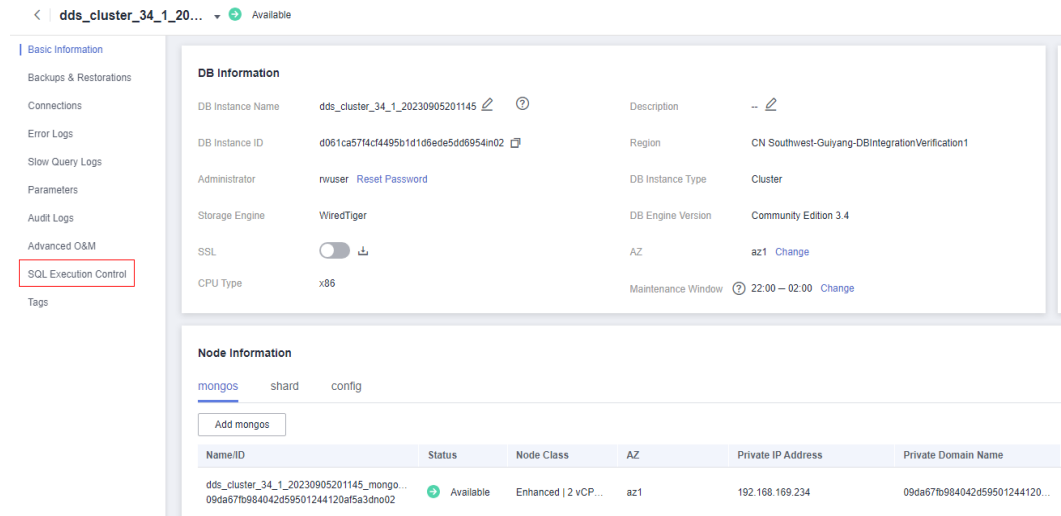
**Step 2** Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

**Step 3** Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

**Step 4** On the **Instances** page, locate the target DB instance and click its name.

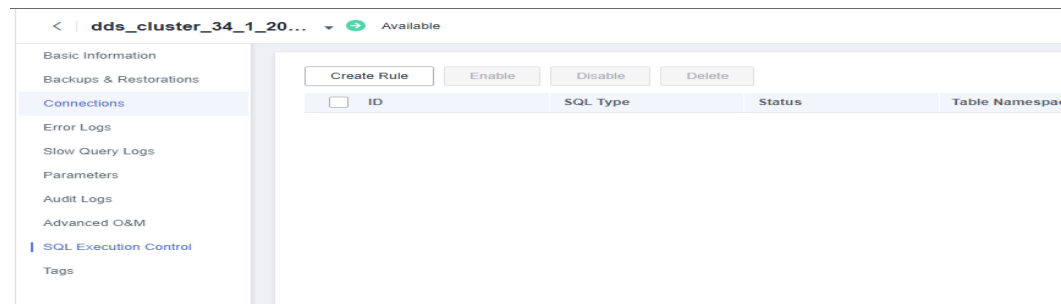
**Step 5** In the navigation tree on the left, click **SQL Execution Control**.

Figure 17-1 SQL Execution Control



Step 6 Click **Create Rule**.

Figure 17-2 Create Rule



Step 7 On the **Create Rule** page, set parameters as required. For details, see [Table 17-1](#).

Figure 17-3 Parameters for creating a rule

**Create Rule**
✕

---

\* SQL Type

Table Namespace   
The option can be left blank, indicating that this rule has no restrictions on table namespaces. Value format: database\_name.table\_name

Client IP Address  ⊕ ⊖  
The option can be left empty, indicating that this rule has no restrictions on client IP addresses. Only IPv4 is supported. A maximum of five IP addresses can be configured.

Execution Plan   
The option can be left empty, indicating that this rule has no restrictions on execution plans.

Maximum Concurrency  − +  
The option can be left empty or set to 0, indicating that this rule has no restrictions on the maximum number of concurrent SQL operations. Either the maximum concurrency or the maximum execution duration must be greater than 0.

Maximum Execution Duration  − + (Unit: second)  
The option can be left empty or set to 0, indicating that this rule has no restrictions on the maximum execution duration of a single SQL operation.

\* Node Type

OK
Cancel

Table 17-1 Parameter description

| Parameter | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|-----------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| SQL Type  | <p>You can specify one or more SQL statement types. The value can be:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>query</b>: operation for querying data.</li> <li>• <b>update</b>: operation for updating data.</li> <li>• <b>insert</b>: operation for inserting data.</li> <li>• <b>remove</b>: operation for deleting data.</li> <li>• <b>command</b>: command operation.</li> <li>• <b>getmore</b>: operation for obtaining more data.</li> </ul> |


| Parameter                  | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
|----------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| Table Namespace            | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• If this parameter is left blank, this rule applies to operations on all databases and tables in the DB instance.</li><li>• If this parameter is set to a database name, this rule applies to operations on all collections in the database. For example, the value can be <b>db1</b>.</li><li>• If this parameter is set to a value in the format of <code>database_name.collection_name</code>, this rule only applies to operations on the collection. For example, the value can be <b>db1.coll1</b>.</li></ul> |
| Client IP Address          | <p>If a Huawei Cloud ECS is used, the value is the private IP address of the ECS.</p> <p><b>NOTE</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• This parameter does not take effect for cluster DB instances of version 3.4.</li></ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| Execution Plan             | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• By default, this parameter is left blank, indicating that this rule applies to all execution plans.</li><li>• The value <b>COLLSCAN</b> indicates that the operation for full table scan will be killed.</li></ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                 |
| Maximum Concurrency        | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• The value <b>0</b> indicates that this parameter does not take effect.</li><li>• For example, if this parameter is set to <b>100</b>, a maximum of 100 operations that meet the conditions can be performed.</li></ul> <p><b>NOTE</b></p> <p>If there are 110 <b>currentOp</b> operations that meet the conditions, 10 operations will be randomly killed.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Either this parameter or <b>Maximum Execution Duration</b> must be greater than <b>0</b>.</li></ul>         |
| Maximum Execution Duration | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• The value <b>0</b> indicates that this parameter does not take effect.</li><li>• For example, if this parameter is set to <b>5</b>, <b>currentOp</b> operations executed for more than 5s will be killed. The value must be no less than <b>2</b>.</li><li>• Either this parameter or <b>Maximum Concurrency</b> must be greater than <b>0</b>.</li></ul>                                                                                                                                                          |
| Node Type                  | <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• <b>dds mongos</b> indicates that this rule only applies to mongos nodes in a DDS instance.</li><li>• <b>shard</b> indicates that this rule only applies to shard nodes.</li><li>• <b>dds mongos_shard</b> indicates that this rule applies to both mongos and shard nodes in a DDS instance.</li><li>• <b>replica</b> indicates that this rule applies to replica sets.</li></ul>                                                                                                                                  |


**Step 8** Click **OK**.

----End

## Enabling a Rule

**Step 1** [Log in to the management console](#).

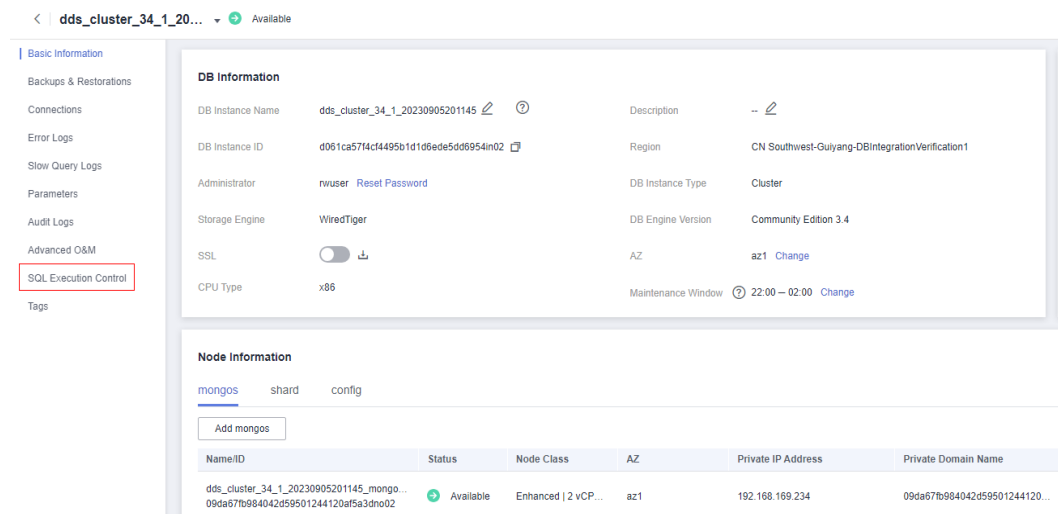
**Step 2** Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

**Step 3** Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

**Step 4** On the **Instances** page, locate the target DB instance and click its name.

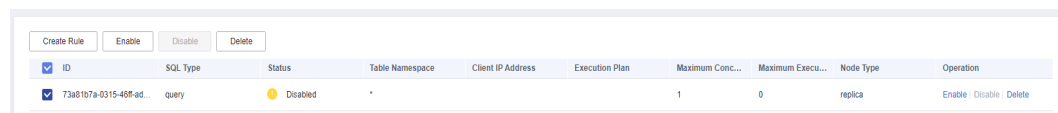
**Step 5** In the navigation tree on the left, click **SQL Execution Control**.

**Figure 17-4** SQL Execution Control



**Step 6** Locate the target rule and click **Enable** in the **Operation** column.

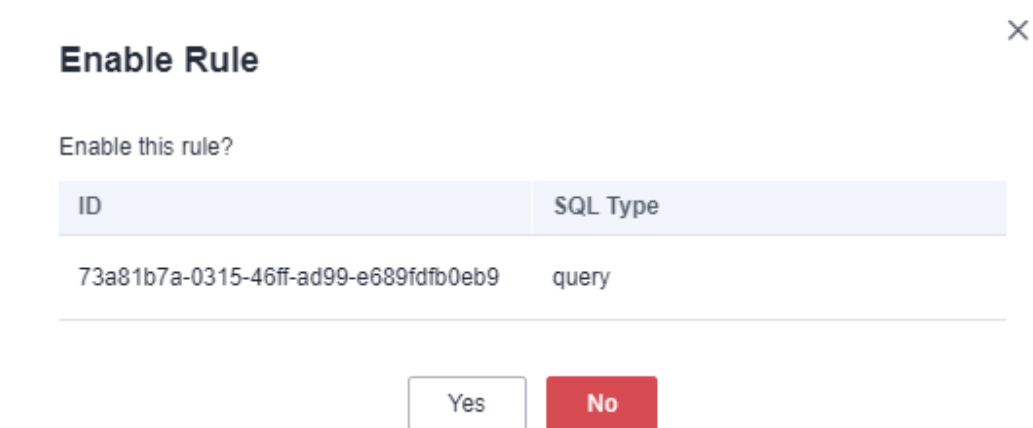
**Figure 17-5** Enable



**Step 7** Click **Yes**.



**Figure 17-6 Enable Rule**



**Step 8** View the rule status on the **SQL Execution Control** page.


**Figure 17-7 Status**


| ID                      | SQL Type | Status  | Table Namespace | Client IP Address | Execution Plan | Maximum Conc... | Maximum Execu... | Node Type | Operation                 |
|-------------------------|----------|---------|-----------------|-------------------|----------------|-----------------|------------------|-----------|---------------------------|
| acada97f-30d1-48ea-a... | query    | Enabled |                 |                   |                | 1               | 0                | replica   | Enable   Disable   Delete |

----End

## Disabling a Rule

**Step 1** [Log in to the management console.](#)

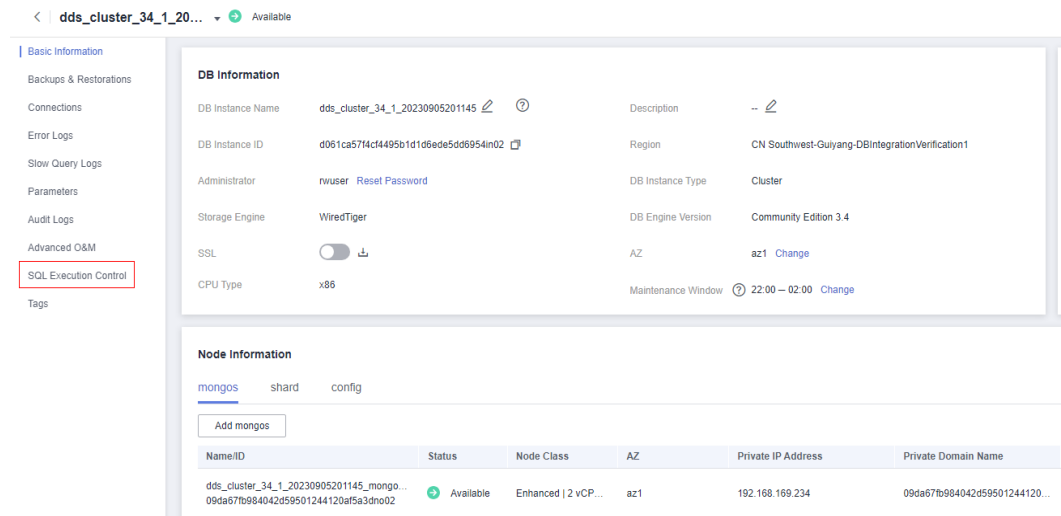
**Step 2** Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

**Step 3** Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

**Step 4** On the **Instances** page, locate the target DB instance and click its name.

**Step 5** In the navigation tree on the left, click **SQL Execution Control**.

**Figure 17-8** SQL Execution Control



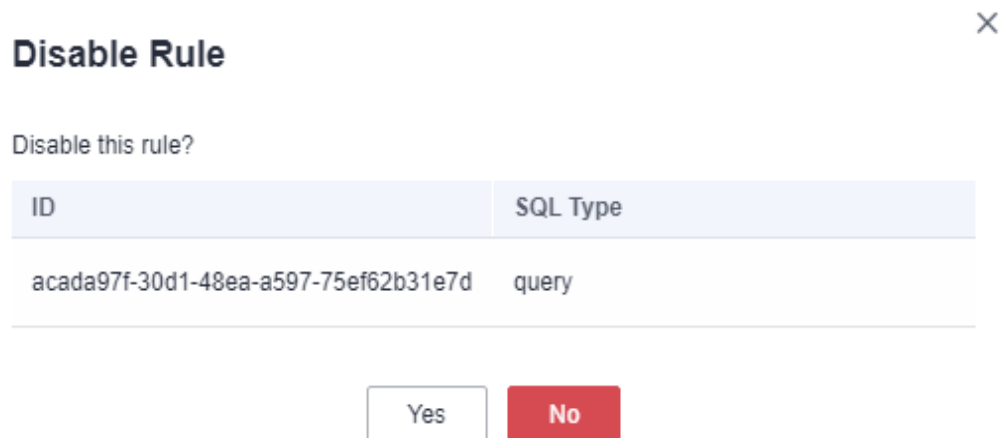
**Step 6** Locate the target rule and click **Disable** in the **Operation** column.

**Figure 17-9** Disable



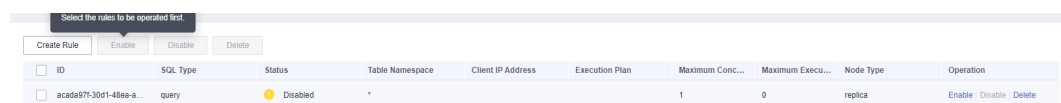
**Step 7** Click **Yes**.

**Figure 17-10** Disable Rule



**Step 8** View the rule status on the **SQL Execution Control** page.

**Figure 17-11** Status



----End


## Deleting a Rule

### CAUTION

An enabled rule cannot be deleted. To delete a rule, you must disable the rule by referring to [Disabling a Rule](#).

**Step 1** Log in to the management console.

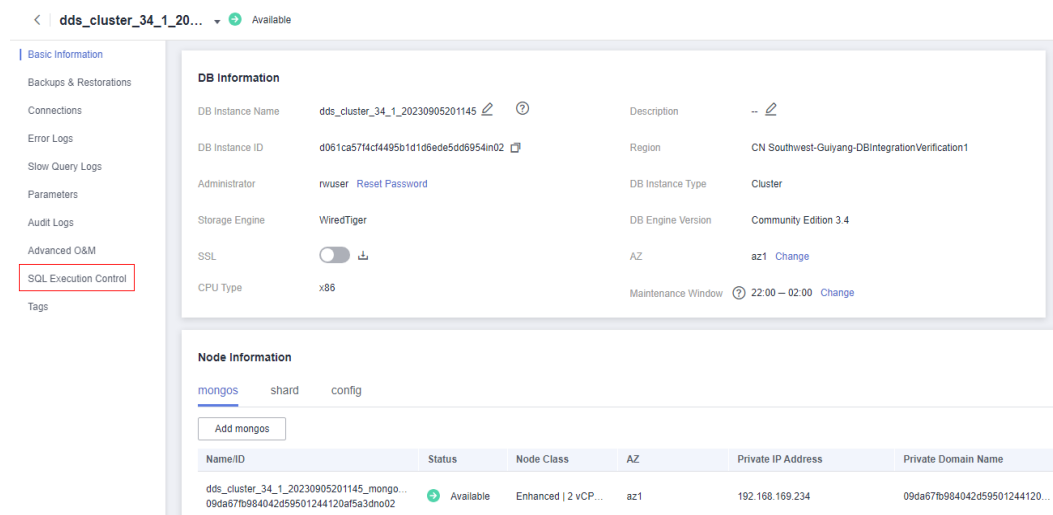
**Step 2** Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

**Step 3** Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

**Step 4** On the **Instances** page, locate the target DB instance and click its name.

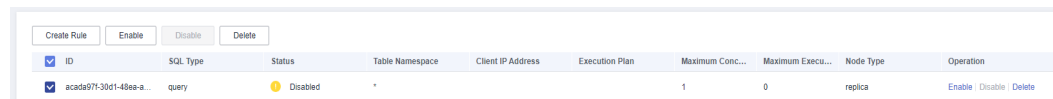
**Step 5** In the navigation tree on the left, click **SQL Execution Control**.

**Figure 17-12** SQL Execution Control



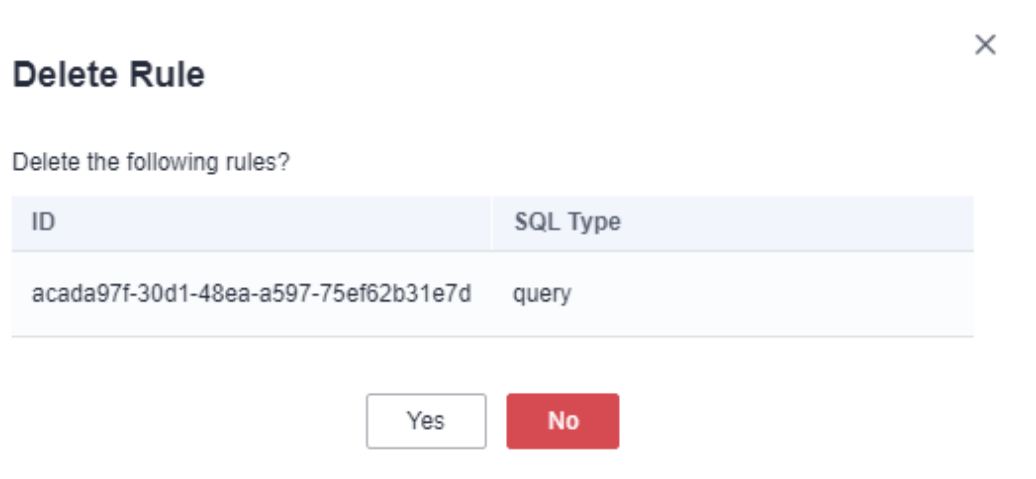
**Step 6** Locate the target rule and click **Delete** in the **Operation** column.

**Figure 17-13** Delete



**Step 7** Click **Yes**.

**Figure 17-14** Delete Rule



----End

# 18 Cross-AZ Disaster Recovery

---

## 18.1 Creating a Cross-AZ Cluster Instance

DDS allows you to create a multi-AZ cluster. A multi-AZ cluster has higher DR capabilities than a single-AZ cluster and can withstand the impact caused by equipment room faults. To obtain higher DR capability, deploy resources across different AZs in the same region.

This section describes how to create a multi-AZ cluster instance.

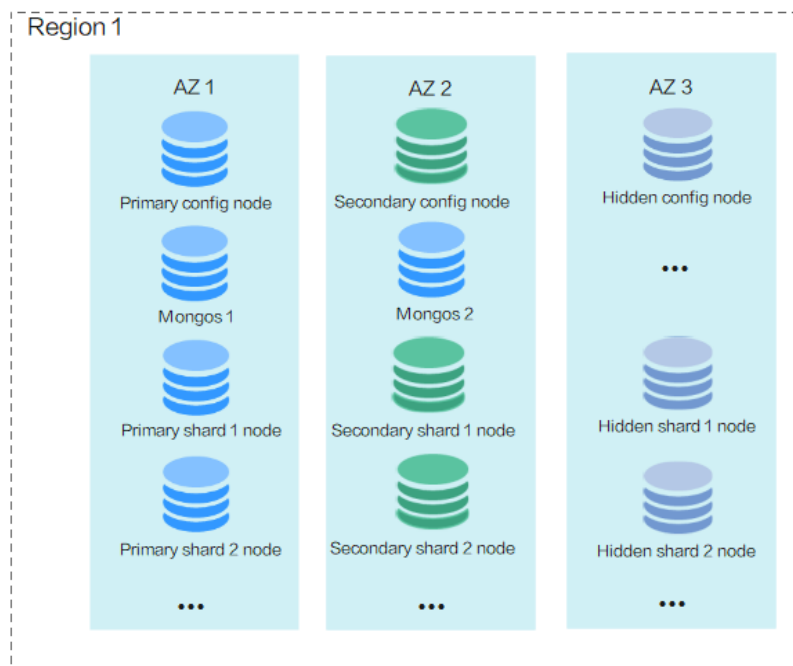
### Precautions

- Only some regions support multi-AZ cluster instances.
- To create a multi-AZ instance, ensure that there are three or more AZs available in the region.
- Multi-AZ deployment means that the components of an instance are deployed in three different AZs.



### Deployment Architecture Comparison

- Single AZ  
If an instance is deployed in a single AZ, all components of the instance are deployed in the same AZ. By default, anti-affinity deployment is configured. With an anti-affinity deployment, your primary, secondary, and hidden nodes are deployed on different physical machines for high availability.
- Multiple AZs  
The components of an instance are deployed in three different AZs for disaster recovery.
  - Two dds mongos nodes are respectively deployed in two AZs. If one dds mongos node is added, it will be deployed in the third AZ.
  - The primary, secondary, and hidden shard nodes are randomly and evenly deployed in three AZs.

**Figure 18-1** Multi-AZ Deployment



## Procedure

- Step 1** Log in to the management console.
- Step 2** Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.
- Step 3** Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.
- Step 4** On the **Instances** page, click **Buy DB Instance**.
- Step 5** Configure the instance details and click **Next**.
  - **AZ:** Select three AZs as shown in [Figure 18-2](#).

**Figure 18-2** Selecting multiple AZs



- For details about other configuration items, see [Buying a Cluster Instance](#).
- Step 6** Confirm the order as prompted and complete the payment.

----End

## 18.2 Creating a Cross-AZ Replica Set Instance

You can deploy a replica set instance across three AZs. Multi-AZ replica set instances have higher DR capabilities than a single-AZ replica set instance and can withstand the impact caused by equipment room faults. To obtain higher DR capability, deploy resources across different AZs in the same region.

This section describes how to create a replica set instance across AZs.

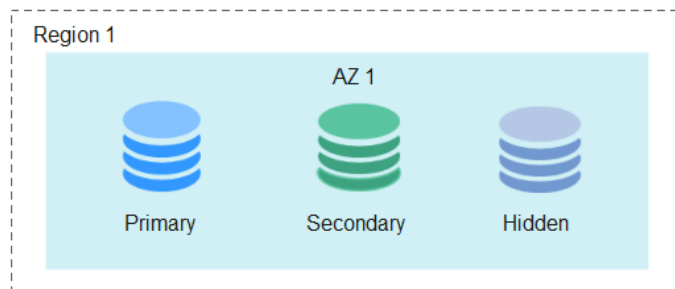
## Precautions

- Only some regions support multi-AZ replica set instances.
- To create a multi-AZ instance, ensure that there are three or more AZs available in the region.
- If an instance is deployed in multiple AZs, the primary, secondary, and hidden nodes of the instance are deployed in three different AZs.

## Deployment Architecture Comparison

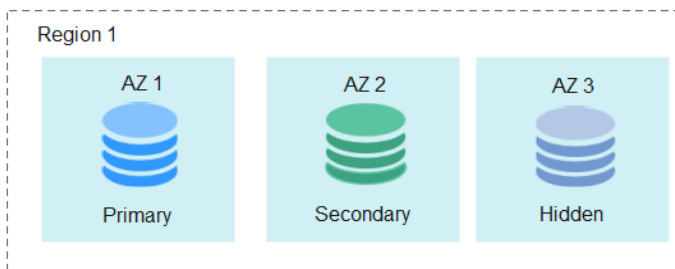
- **Single AZ**  
If an instance is deployed in a single AZ, the primary, secondary, and hidden nodes of the instance are deployed in the same AZ.

**Figure 18-3** Single-AZ deployment





- **Multiple AZs**  
If an instance is deployed in multiple AZs, the primary, secondary, and hidden nodes of the instance are deployed in three different AZs for disaster recovery.

**Figure 18-4** Multi-AZ deployment



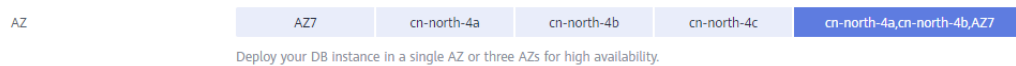
## Procedure

- Step 1** Log in to the management console.
- Step 2** Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.
- Step 3** Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.
- Step 4** On the **Instances** page, click **Buy DB Instance**.

**Step 5** Configure the instance details and click **Next**.

- **AZ:** Select three AZs as shown in [Figure 18-5](#).

**Figure 18-5** Selecting multiple AZs



- For details about other configuration items, see [Buying a Replica Set Instance](#).

**Step 6** Confirm the order as prompted and complete the payment.

----End



# 19 Billing

---

## 19.1 Renewing Instances


This section describes how to renew your yearly/monthly instances.


### Precautions

- Pay-per-use DB instances do not involve renewals.
- Yearly/Monthly instances can only be renewed when their statuses are **Available**.

### Renewing Instances

**Step 1** [Log in to the management console](#).

**Step 2** Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

**Step 3** Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.


**Step 4** On the **Instances** page, select the target instances and click **Renew** in the upper left corner of the instance list. In the displayed dialog box, click **Yes**.


**Step 5** On the displayed page, renew the instances.

----End

### Renewing an Instance

**Step 1** [Log in to the management console](#).

**Step 2** Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

**Step 3** Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

**Step 4** On the **Instances** page, locate the target instance and click **Renew** in the **Operation** column.

**Step 5** On the displayed page, renew the instance.

----End

## 19.2 Changing the Billing Mode from Pay-per-Use to Yearly/Monthly

You can change the billing mode of an instance from pay-per-use to yearly/monthly to reduce your costs for using the instance for a long period of time.


### Precautions

Only when the status of a pay-per-use instance is **Available**, its billing mode can be changed to yearly/monthly.

### Changing Instance Billing in Batches

**Step 1** [Log in to the management console.](#)

**Step 2** Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

**Step 3** Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.


**Step 4** On the **Instances** page, select the target instances and click **Change to Yearly/Monthly** above the instance list. In displayed dialog box, click **Yes**.

**Step 5** On the displayed page, select how many months you wish to renew the instance for. The minimum duration is one month.

Confirm the settings and click **Pay**.

**Step 6** Select a payment method and click **Pay**.

**Step 7** View the results on the **Instances** page.


In the upper right corner of the instance list, click  to refresh the list. After the instance billing mode is changed to yearly/monthly, the instance status will change to **Available**. The billing mode becomes to **Yearly/Monthly**.

----End

### Changing the Billing Mode of a Single Instance

**Step 1** [Log in to the management console.](#)

**Step 2** Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

**Step 3** Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

- Step 4** On the **Instances** page, locate the target DB instance and in the **Operation** column, click **Change to Yearly/Monthly**.
- Step 5** On the displayed page, select the renewal duration in month. The minimum duration is one month. **Figure 19-1** shows how to change a pay-per-use cluster instance to yearly/monthly.


**Figure 19-1** Changing from pay-per-use to yearly/monthly

The screenshot shows the 'Change Subscription' interface. At the top, there is a title 'Change Subscription' and a '< Changes' button. Below this is a table with columns: Name/ID, Service Type, Specifications, Region, Status, and Enabled. The table contains one instance with ID 'ebf0055988db4dc0a93377d104d69dc3m10.cluster', Service Type 'Document Databas...', Specifications 'dds|sharding', Region 'Database Song...', Status 'Subscri...', and Enabled 'Feb 10, 2020 10:51:42 GMT+08:00'. Below the table, there is a section 'Choose how often you would like to renew.' with a 'Renewal Duration:' label. A slider is shown with '4 months' selected. Below the slider are options for 1 month, 2 months, 3 months, 4 months, 5 months, 6 months, 7 months, 8 months, 9 months, 1 year, 2 years, and 3 years. There is an 'Auto-Renew' checkbox and an 'Expected Expiration Date' field showing 'Jun 10, 2020 23:59:59 GMT+08:00'. At the bottom, there is a 'Renewal Amount' field, a note 'This price is an estimate and may differ from the final price.', and a 'Pay' button.

Confirm the settings and click **Pay**.

- Step 6** Select a payment method and click **Pay**.

- Step 7** View the results on the **Instances** page.

In the upper right corner of the instance list, click  to refresh the list. After the instance billing mode is changed to yearly/monthly, the instance status will change to **Available**. The billing mode becomes to **Yearly/Monthly**.

----End

## 19.3 Changing the Billing Mode from Yearly/Monthly to Pay-per-Use

You can change yearly/monthly instances to pay-per-use instances on DDS and then pay only for the actual usage of your resources.

### Precautions


- The billing mode can only be changed when the instance is in the **Available** status.

- Auto renewal will be disabled after the billing mode of your instances change to pay-per-use. Exercise caution when performing this operation.

## Procedure

**Step 1** [Log in to the management console](#).

**Step 2** Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

**Step 3** Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

**Step 4** On the **Instances** page, locate the target instance and click **Change to Pay-per-Use** in the **Operation** column.

**Step 5** On the displayed page, confirm the instance information and click **Change to Pay-per-Use** to submit the change. The billing mode will change to pay-per-use after the instance expires.

**Step 6** After you submit the change, a message is displayed in the **Billing Mode** column of the target instance, indicating that the billing mode will be changed to pay-per-use after the instance expires.

**Step 7** To cancel the change, choose **Billing > Renewal** to enter the Billing Center. On the **Renewals** page, locate the target DB instance and click **More > Cancel Change to Pay-per-Use**.

**Step 8** In the displayed dialog box, click **OK**.

----End

## 19.4 Unsubscribing from a Yearly/Monthly Instance

To unsubscribe from an instance billed on a yearly/monthly basis, you need to unsubscribe from the order.



### Precautions

- If the instance is frozen, you can release the instance resource on the DDS console or in the billing center. For details about how to release resources in the billing center, refer to [Releasing Resources](#).
- To unsubscribe from an instance billed on a pay-per-use basis, you need to locate the instance and click **Delete** on the **Instances** page. For details, see [Deleting a Pay-per-Use Instance](#).
- Unsubscribe operations cannot be undone. Exercise caution when performing this operation. To retain data, create a manual backup before unsubscribing.

### Method 1

Unsubscribe from a yearly/monthly instance on the **Instances** page.

**Step 1** [Log in to the management console](#).

- Step 2** Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.
- Step 3** Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.
- Step 4** On the **Instances** page, select instances and click **Unsubscribe** above the instance list. Alternatively, in the **Operation** column, choose **More > Unsubscribe**.
- Step 5** In the displayed dialog box, click **Yes**.
- Step 6** On the displayed page, confirm the order to be unsubscribed and select a reason. Then, click **Confirm**.
- For details about unsubscribing from resources, see [Unsubscription Rules](#).
- Step 7** In the displayed dialog box, click **Yes**.

---

**NOTICE**



1. After an unsubscription request is submitted, resources and data will be deleted and cannot be retrieved.
2. If you want to retain data, complete a manual backup before submitting the unsubscription request.

- Step 8** View the results. After the DB instance order is successfully unsubscribed, the DB instance is no longer displayed in the instance list on the **Instances** page.

----End

## Method 2

Unsubscribe from a yearly/monthly instance on the **Billing Center** page

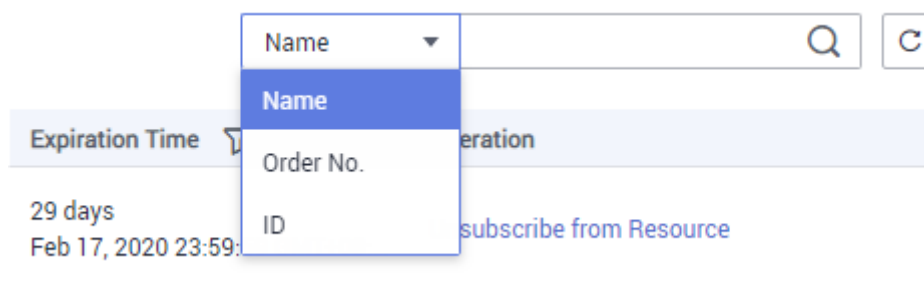
- Step 1** [Log in to the management console](#).
- Step 2** Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.
- Step 3** Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.
- Step 4** In the upper right corner, click **Billing Center**.
- Step 5** In the navigation pane on the left, choose **Orders > Unsubscriptions and Returns/Exchanges**.
- Step 6** On the displayed **Cloud Service Unsubscriptions** page, select the order to be unsubscribed and click **Unsubscribe** in the **Operation** column.
- You can select **Document Database Service (DDS)** in the **Service Type** to filter all DDS orders.

**Figure 19-2** Filtering all orders

| <input type="checkbox"/>   | Name/ID                                                 | Service Type              | Current Configuration                       |
|----------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------|---------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| ▼ <input type="checkbox"/> | dds-1fb9<br>ca39ba90ce02466799818fb69a64fc3bin...       | Document Data             | DDS  × Q<br>Document Database Service (DDS) |
| ▼ <input type="checkbox"/> | dds-2c67<br>a19efb2284a64ef1824d6b001705504cin...       | Document Database Serv... | dds single                                  |
| ▼ <input type="checkbox"/> | chenty-replica<br>2238bd83b14b47afbeeda8f1663b79d0in... | Document Database Serv... | dds repset                                  |
| ▼ <input type="checkbox"/> | dds-8747<br>3573e67aeff0441bab8ea4a906624a0ain...       | Document Database Serv... | dds repset                                  |

- Alternatively, you can search for orders by name, order No., or ID in the search box in the upper right corner of the order list.

**Figure 19-3** Searching for orders



- A maximum of 20 orders can be unsubscribed from at a time.

**Step 7** On the displayed page, confirm the order to be unsubscribed and select a reason. Then, click **Confirm**.

For details about unsubscribing from resources, see [Unsubscription Rules](#).

**Step 8** In the displayed dialog box, click **Yes**.

**NOTICE**

1. After an unsubscription request is submitted, resources and data will be deleted and cannot be retrieved.
2. If you want to retain data, complete a manual backup before submitting the unsubscription request.

**Step 9** View the results. After the DB instance order is successfully unsubscribed, the DB instance is no longer displayed in the instance list on the **Instances** page.

----End

# 20 Tags

---

## 20.1 Adding or Modifying a Tag

Tags help you identify and manage DDS resources. When there are a large number of instances, you can add tags to them to quickly filter them. An instance can be tagged during or after it is created.


This section describes how to add and modify tags after an instance is created.


### Precautions

- You are advised to set predefined tags on the TMS console.
- A tag consists of a key and value. You can add only one value for each key. For details about the naming rules of tag keys and tag values, see [Table 20-1](#).
- Up to 20 tags can be added for a DB instance.
- Deleting tags of a DB instance has no adverse impact on the DB instance. After all tags of a DB instance are deleted, the DB instance cannot be filtered by tag.

### Procedure

**Step 1** [Log in to the management console](#).

**Step 2** Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

**Step 3** Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service**.

**Step 4** On the **Instances** page, click the instance name.

**Step 5** In the navigation pane on the left, click **Tags**.

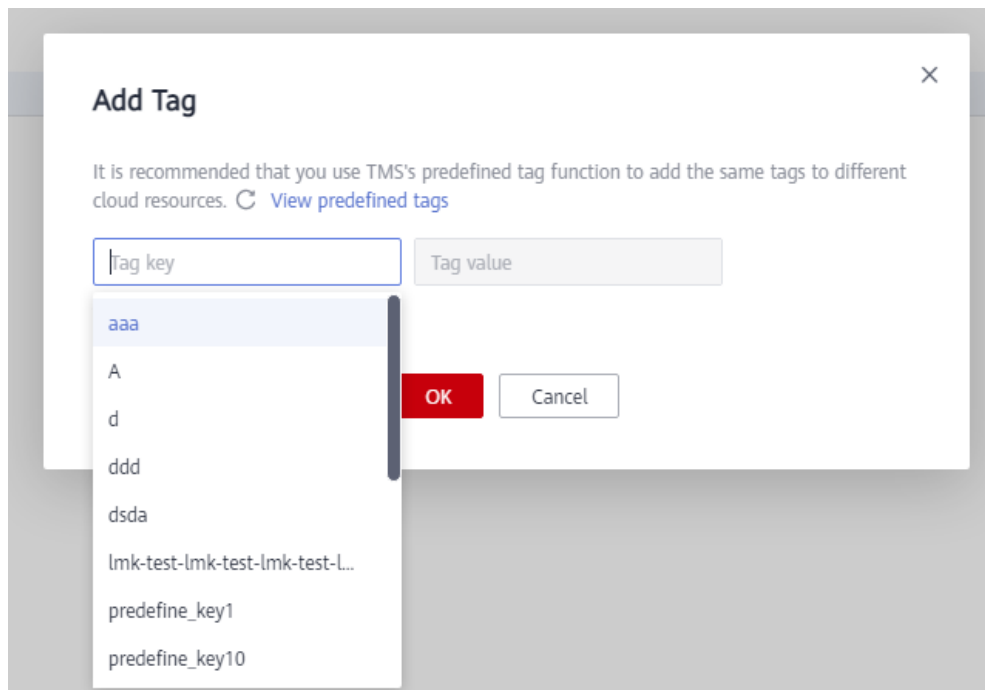
**Step 6** On the **Tags** page, click **Add Tag**. In the displayed dialog box, specify the tag key and value and click **OK**.

- Add a predefined tag.  
Predefined tags can be used to identify multiple cloud resources.

To tag a cloud resource, you can select a created predefined tag from the drop-down list, without entering a key and value for the tag.

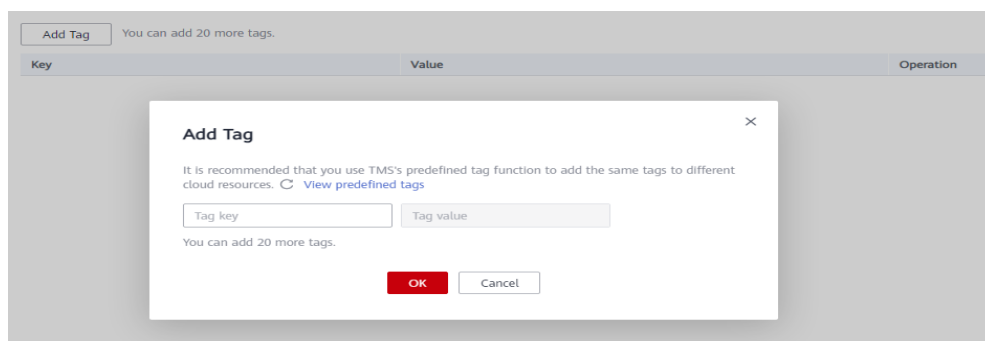
For example, if a predefined tag has been created, its key is test02 and value is Project1. When you configure the key and value for a cloud resource, the created predefined tag will be automatically displayed on the page.

**Figure 20-1** Adding a predefined tag



- Create a tag.  
When creating a tag, enter the tag key and value.

**Figure 20-2** Adding a tag





**Table 20-1** Naming rules

| Parameter | Requirement                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                | Example      |
|-----------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|--------------|
| Tag key   | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- The key cannot be empty and contains 1 to 128 single-byte characters.</li> <li>- The key can contain UTF-8 letters (including Chinese characters), digits, spaces, and the following characters: _./=+-@</li> <li>- Do not enter labels starting with <b>_sys_</b>, which are system labels.</li> <li>- The key can only consist of digits, letters, underscores (_), and hyphens (-).</li> </ul> | Organization |
| Tag value | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- The value can contain UTF-8 letters (including Chinese characters), digits, spaces, and the following characters: _./=+-@</li> <li>- The value can be empty or null and contains 0 to 255 single-byte characters.</li> <li>- The value can only consist of digits, letters, underscores (_), periods (.), and hyphens (-).</li> </ul>                                                             | dds_01       |

**Step 7** View and manage tags on the **Tags** page.

You can click **Edit** in the **Operation** column to change the tag value.

 **NOTE**

Only the tag value can be edited when editing a tag.

**Figure 20-3** Tag added





----End

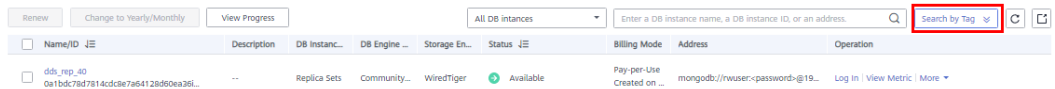
## 20.2 Filtering Instances by Tag

After a tag is added, you can filter instances by tag to quickly find instances of a specified category.

## Procedure

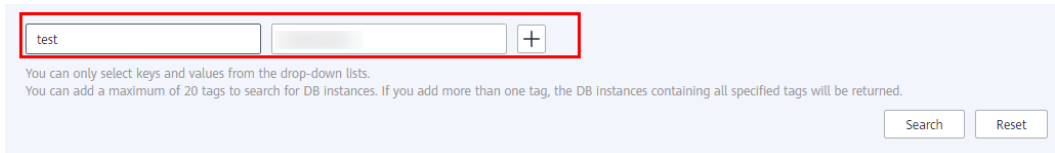
- Step 1** [Log in to the management console.](#)
- Step 2** Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.
- Step 3** Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service.**
- Step 4** On the **Instances** page, click **Search by Tag** in the upper right corner of the instance list.

**Figure 20-4** Search by Tag



- Step 5** Enter the tag key and value associated with the instance and click **Search.**

**Figure 20-5** Entering the tag key and value



- Step 6** View the instance information.

**Figure 20-6** Viewing instance information





----End

## 20.3 Deleting a Tag

If a tag is no longer needed, you can delete the tag to unbind it from the instance.

### Procedure

- Step 1** [Log in to the management console.](#)
- Step 2** Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.
- Step 3** Click  in the upper left corner of the page and choose **Databases > Document Database Service.**
- Step 4** On the **Instances** page, click the instance name.
- Step 5** In the navigation pane on the left, click **Tags.**

**Step 6** On the **Tags** page, locate the tag to be deleted and click **Delete** in the **Operation** column. In the displayed dialog box, click **Yes**.

**Figure 20-7** Deleting a tag



**Step 7** After the tag is deleted, it is no longer displayed on the **Tags** page.

----End

# 21 Quotas

Quotas are enforced for service resources on the platform to prevent unforeseen spikes in resource usage. For example, the maximum number of DDS DB instances that can be created varies depending on the DB instance type. You can apply for increasing quotas if necessary.

This section describes how to view the usage of each type of DDS resource and the total quotas in a specified region.

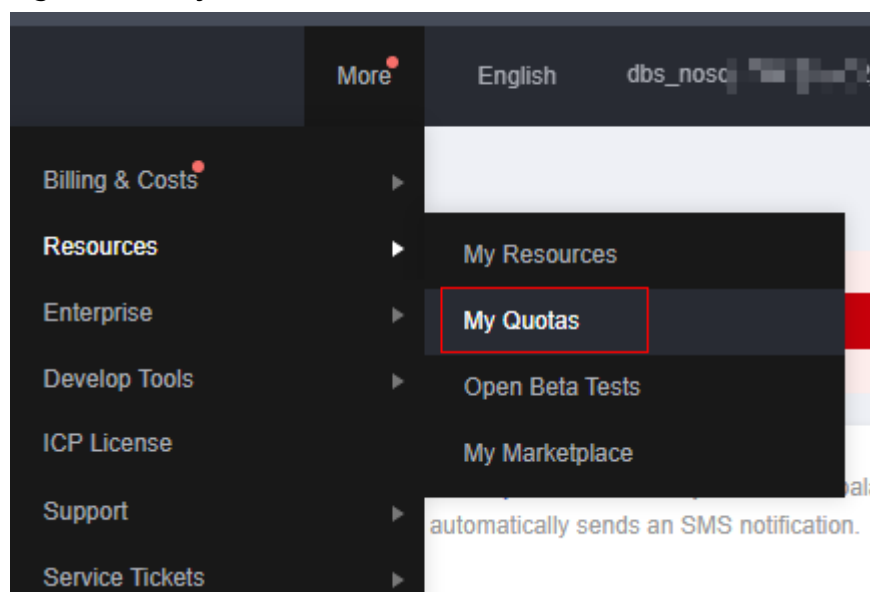
## Viewing Quotas

**Step 1** [Log in to the management console.](#)

**Step 2** Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.

**Step 3** In the upper right corner of the DDS console, choose **Resources > My Quota**.


**Figure 21-1** My Quota



**Step 4** View the used and total quota of each type of DDS resource.

----End

## Increasing Quotas

- Step 1** Log in to the management console.
  - Step 2** Click  in the upper left corner and select a region and a project.
  - Step 3** In the upper right corner of the DDS console, choose **Resources > My Quota**.
  - Step 4** Click **Increase Quota**.
  - Step 5** On the **Create Service Ticket** page, configure parameters as required.  
In the **Problem Description** area, fill in the content and reason for adjustment.
  - Step 6** After all necessary parameters are configured, select **I have read and agree to the Tenant Authorization Letter and Privacy Statement** and click **Submit**.
- End

# 22 DDS Usage Suggestions

---

## 22.1 Design Rules

### Naming

- The name of a database object (database name, table name, field name, or index name) has to start with a lowercase letter and must be followed by a letter or digit. The length of the name cannot exceed 32 bytes.
- The database name cannot contain special characters ("\".\$\/\*?~#:#|") or null character (\0). The database name cannot be a system database name, such as **admin**, **local**, and **config**.
- The database collection name can only contain letters and underscores (\_). The name cannot be prefixed with "system". The total length of *<Database name>.<Collection name>* cannot exceed 120 characters.

### Index

You can use indexes to avoid full table scans and improve query performance.

- A column index can have up to 512 bytes, an index name can have up to 64 characters, and a composite index can have up to 16 columns.
- The total length of *<Database name>.<Collection name>.\$<Index name>* cannot exceed 128 characters.
- Create indexes for fields with high selectivity. If you create indexes for low selective fields, large result sets may be returned. This should be avoided.
- Write operations on a collection will trigger more I/O operations on indexes in the collection. Ensure that the number of indexes in a collection does not exceed 32.
- Do not create indexes that will not be used. Unused indexes loaded to the memory will cause a waste of memory. In addition, useless indexes generated due to changes in service logic must be deleted in a timely manner.
- Indexes must be created in the background instead of foreground.
- An index must be created for the sort key. If a composite index is created, the column sequence of the index must be the same as that of the sort key. Otherwise, the index will not be used.

- Do not create an index based on the leading-edge column of a composite index. If the leading-edge column of a composite index is the column used in another index, the smaller index can be removed. For example, a composite index based on "firstname" and "lastname" can be used for queries on "firstname". In this case, creating another firstname-based index is unnecessary.

## Sharding

You can shard collections to maximize the cluster performance. For details, see, [Sharding a Collection](#).

Suggestions for sharding collections:

- In scenarios where the data volume is large (more than one million rows) and the write/read ratio is high, sharding is recommended if the data volume increases with the service volume.
- If you shard a collection using a hashed shard key, pre-splitting the chunks of the sharded collection can help reduce the impact of automatic balancing and splitting on service running.
- If sharding is enabled for a non-empty collections, the time window for enabling the balancer must be set during off-peak hours. Otherwise conflicts may occur during data balancing between shards and service performance will be affected.
- If you want to perform a sort query based on the shard key and new data is evenly distributed based on the shard key, you can use ranged sharding. In other scenarios, you can use hashed sharding.
- Properly design shard keys to prevent a large amount of data from using the same shard key, which may lead to jumbo chunks.
- If a sharded cluster is used, you must run **flushRouterConfig** after running **dropDatabase**. For details, see [How Do I Prevent dds mongos Cache Problem?](#)
- The update request of the service must match the shard key. When a sharded table is used, an error will be reported for the update request and "An upsert on a sharded collection must contain the shard key and have the simple collation" will be returned in the following scenarios:
  - The filter field of the update request does not contain the shard key field and the value of **multi** is **false**.
  - The set field does not contain the shard key and the value of **upsert** is **true**.

## 22.2 Development Rules

### Database Connections

If the maximum number of mongod or dds mongos connections is reached, your client cannot connect to the DDS instances. Each connection received by mongod or dds mongos is processed by a single thread of 1 MB stack space. As the connections increase, too many threads will increase the context switching overhead and memory usage.

- If you connect to databases from clients, calculate the number of clients and the size of the connection pool configured for each client. The total number of connections cannot exceed 80% of the maximum number of connections allowed by the current instance.
- The connection between the client and the database must be stable. It is recommended that the number of new connections per second be less than 10.
- You are advised to set the connection timeout interval of the client to at least three times the maximum service execution duration.
- For a replica set instance, the IP addresses of both the primary and standby nodes must be configured on the client. For a cluster instance, at least two dds mongos IP addresses must be configured.
- DDS uses user **rwuser** by default. When you log in as user **rwuser**, the authentication database must be **admin**.

## Reliability

Rules for setting write concern: For mission-critical services, set write concern to  $\{w:n\}, n>0$ . A larger value is better consistency but poorer performance.

- **w:1** means that a confirmation message was returned after data was written to the primary node.
- **w:1,journal:true** means that the result was returned after data was written to the primary node and logs.
- **w:majority** means that the result was returned after data was written to more than half of the total standby nodes.

### NOTE

If data is not written using **w:majority**, the data that is not synchronized to the standby node may be lost when a primary/standby switchover occurs.

If high reliability is required, deploy a cluster in three AZs.

## Performance

### Specification

- The service program is not allowed to perform full table scanning.
- During the query, select only the fields that need to be returned. In this way, the network and thread processing loads are reduced. If you need to modify data, modify only the fields that need to be modified. Do not directly modify the entire object.
- Do not use **\$not**. DDS does not index missing data. The **\$not** query requires that all records be scanned in a single result collection. If **\$not** is the only query condition, a full table scan will be performed on the collection.
- If you use **\$and**, put the conditions with the fewest matches before other conditions. If you use **\$or**, put the conditions with the more matches first.
- In a DB instance, the total number of databases cannot exceed 200, and the total number of collections cannot exceed 500. If the number of collections is too large, the memory may be overloaded. In addition, the performance for restarting a DB instance and performing a primary/standby switchover may



deteriorate due to too many collections, which affects the high availability performance in emergencies.

- Before bringing a service online, perform a load test to measure the performance of the database in peak hours.
- Do not execute a large number of concurrent transactions at the same time or leave a transaction uncommitted for a long time.
- Before rolling out services, execute query plans to check the query performance for all query types.

### Suggestions

- Each connection is processed by an independent thread in the background. Each thread is allocated with 1 MB stack memory. The number of connections should not be too large. Otherwise, too much memory is occupied.
- Use the connection pool to avoid frequent connection and disconnection. Otherwise, the CPU usage is too high.
- Reduce disk read and write operations: Reduce unnecessary upsert operations.
- Optimize data distribution: Data is sharded and hot data is distributed evenly between shards.
- Reduce lock conflicts: Do not perform operations on the same key too frequently.
- Reduce lock wait time: Do not create indexes on the frontend.

### Notice

During the development process, each execution on a collection must be checked using `explain()` to view its execution plan. Example:

```
db.T_DeviceData.find({"deviceId":"ae4b5769-896f"}).explain();
```

```
db.T_DeviceData.find({"deviceId":"77557c2-31b4"}).explain("executionStats");
```

A covered query does not have to read a document and returns a result from an index, so using a covered query can greatly improve query efficiency. If the output of `explain()` shows that `indexOnly` is true, the query is covered by an index.

Execution plan parsing:

1. Check the execution time. The smaller the values of the following parameters, the better the performance:  
**executionStats.executionStages.executionTimeMillisEstimate** and **executionStats.executionStages.inputStage.executionTimeMillisEstimate**
  - **executionStats.executionTimeMillis** specifies how much time the database took to both select and execute the winning plan.
  - **executionStats.executionStages.executionTimeMillisEstimate** is the execution completion time of the winning plan.
  - **executionStats.executionStages.inputStage.executionTimeMillisEstimate** is the execution completion time of the child stage of the winning plan.
2. Check the number of scanned records. If the three items are the same, the index is best used.

- **executionStats.nReturned** is the number of documents that match the query condition.
  - **executionStats.totalKeysExamined** indicates the number of scanned index entries.
  - **executionStats.totalDocsExamined** indicates the number of scanned document entries.
3. Check the stage status. The following combinations of stages can provide good performance.
- Fetch+IDHACK
  - Fetch+ixscan
  - Limit+ (Fetch+ixscan)
  - PROJECTION+ixscan

**Table 22-1** Status description

| Status Name | Description                                               |
|-------------|-----------------------------------------------------------|
| COLLSCAN    | Full table scan                                           |
| SORT        | In-memory sorting                                         |
| IDHACK      | _id-based query                                           |
| TEXT        | Full-text index                                           |
| COUNTSCAN   | Number of unused indexes                                  |
| FETCH       | Index scanning                                            |
| LIMIT       | Using Limit to limit the number of returned records       |
| SUBPLA      | \$or query stage without using an index                   |
| PROJECTION  | Restricting the return of stage when a field is returned. |
| COUNT_SCAN  | Number of used indexes                                    |

## Cursor Usage Rules

If a cursor is inactive for 10 minutes, it will be automatically closed. You can also manually close it to save resources.

## Rules for Using Distributed Transactions in Version 4.2

- Spring Data MongoDB does not support the retry mechanism after a transaction error is reported. If the client uses Spring Data MongoDB as the client to connect to MongoDB, you need to use Spring Retry to retry the transaction based on the references of Spring Data MongoDB.
- The size of the distributed transaction operation data cannot exceed 16 MB.

# A Change History

| Released On | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                      |
|-------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2021-12-30  | This issue is the thirty-sixth official release, which incorporates the following changes:<br>Added <a href="#">Upgrading a Minor Engine Version</a> .                                                                                                                                                           |
| 2021-11-30  | This issue is the thirty-fifth official release, which incorporates the following change:<br>Supported <a href="#">Adding Read Replicas to a Replica Set Instance</a> .                                                                                                                                          |
| 2021-07-30  | This issue is the thirty-fourth official release, which incorporates the following changes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Added <a href="#">Changing an Instance Description</a>.</li><li>• Added <a href="#">Using Current Browser</a>.</li><li>• Added <a href="#">Using Download URL</a>.</li></ul> |
| 2021-06-30  | This issue is the thirty-third official release, which incorporates the following changes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Added <a href="#">Configuring Monitoring by Seconds</a>.</li><li>• Supported RocksDB and instances compatible with MongoDB 4.2.</li></ul>                                     |
| 2021-05-30  | This issue is the thirty-second official release, which incorporates the following changes:<br>Added <a href="#">Configuring the Maintenance Window</a> .                                                                                                                                                        |

| Released On | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
|-------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2021-04-30  | <p>This issue is the thirty-first official release, which incorporates the following changes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Added <a href="#">Viewing Parameter Change History</a>.</li> <li>• Added <a href="#">Exporting a Parameter Template</a>.</li> <li>• Added <a href="#">Applying a Parameter Template</a>.</li> <li>• Added <a href="#">Viewing Application Records of a Parameter Template</a>.</li> <li>• Changed parameter group to parameter template.</li> <li>• Supported changing the AZ where a replica set instance is deployed.</li> <li>• Supported DB instance names in Chinese.</li> <li>• Supported up to 30 CIDR blocks configured for the source client.</li> </ul> |
| 2021-03-30  | <p>This issue is the thirtieth official release, which incorporates the following change:</p> <p>Added <a href="#">Changing an AZ</a>.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
| 2021-01-30  | <p>This issue is the twenty-ninth official release, which incorporates the following change:</p> <p>Added <a href="#">Restoring a Cluster Backup to an On-premises Database</a>.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| 2020-12-30  | <p>This issue is the twenty-eighth official release, which incorporates the following changes:</p> <p>Supported Extreme SSD EVS disks.</p> <p>Supported the deletion of CIDR blocks of the source client.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                |
| 2020-10-30  | <p>This issue is the twenty-seventh official release, which incorporates the following change:</p> <p>Supported up to 20 tags per instance.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |
| 2020-09-30  | <p>This issue is the twenty-sixth official release, which incorporates the following change:</p> <p>Supported Kunpeng-based instances of Community Edition 4.0.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| 2020-08-30  | <p>This issue is the twenty-fifth official release, which incorporates the following changes:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Supported up to 32 mongos nodes and 32 shard nodes in each Community Edition cluster instance.</li> <li>• Supported up to 3,000 GB of the replica set storage space.</li> <li>• Supported restoring a DB instance of Community Edition to the original DB instance.</li> </ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |
| 2020-07-30  | <p>This issue is the twenty-fourth official release, which incorporates the following changes:</p> <p>Supported cross-CIDR access to replica set instances.</p>                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                              |

| Released On | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|-------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2020-05-30  | This issue is the twenty-third official release, which incorporates the following change:<br>Supported instance recycling.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| 2020-04-30  | This issue is the twenty-second official release, which incorporates the following change:<br>Supported the purchase of multi-AZ Community Edition DB instances.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                       |
| 2020-04-15  | This issue is the twenty-first official release, which incorporates the following change:<br>Supported cross-subnet access for replica set instances in the same VPC.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                  |
| 2020-03-31  | This issue is the twentieth official release, which incorporates the following change:<br>Added the following monitoring metrics: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• mongo044_swap_usage</li> <li>• mongo050_top_total_time</li> <li>• mongo051_top_read_time</li> <li>• mongo052_top_write_time</li> <li>• mongo053_wt_flushes_status</li> <li>• mongo054_wt_cache_used_percent</li> <li>• mongo055_wt_cache_dirty_percent</li> </ul>                                           |
| 2020-02-14  | This issue is the nineteenth official release, which incorporates the following changes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Supported adding five or seven nodes to a replica set instance.</li> <li>• Updated the procedures for restarting and deleting DB instances, adding nodes, scaling up storage space, changing instance class, backing up and restoring data, modifying parameter groups, and monitoring metrics.</li> </ul>                                           |
| 2019-12-09  | This issue is the eighteenth official release, which incorporates the following changes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Added <a href="#">Overview</a>.</li> <li>• Supported the deletion of frozen yearly/monthly DB instances.</li> <li>• Supported selecting AZs for deploying new dds mongos nodes.</li> <li>• Allowed users to view tasks, including changing specifications, adding nodes, restarting instances, or restoring instances to a point in time.</li> </ul> |

| Released On | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                            |
|-------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2019-11-11  | This issue is the seventeenth official release, which incorporates the following changes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Supported the Community Edition cluster instance with up to 2,000 GB of storage.</li><li>• Modified monitoring metrics of DDS.</li><li>• Modified section <b>Which Commands are Supported or Restricted by DDS?</b></li></ul>                                                                                                                                                        |
| 2019-10-18  | This issue is the sixteenth official release, which incorporates the following changes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Added the precautions for setting an automated backup policy.</li><li>• Added precautions for data migration.</li><li>• Modified the naming rules of tags.</li><li>• Supported exporting error logs and slow query log details.</li><li>• Added troubleshooting related to DB instance connections.</li></ul>                                                                          |
| 2019-09-11  | This issue is the fifteenth official release, which incorporates the following change:<br>Supported a maximum of 16 dds mongos nodes and 16 shards for a Community Edition cluster instance.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                           |
| 2019-08-13  | This issue is the fourteenth official release, which incorporates the following changes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Supported showing original slow query logs for Community Edition DB instances.</li><li>• Supported the statistical function by setting parameters.</li></ul>                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |
| 2019-04-19  | This issue is the thirteenth official release, which incorporates the following changes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Updated the procedures for restarting and deleting DB instances, backing up and restoring data, managing parameter groups, storage space, security groups, tags, and task centers, and monitoring metrics.</li><li>• Supported switching the primary and secondary nodes of a replica set instance.</li><li>• Added <b>Migrating Data Using mongodump and mongorestore.</b></li></ul> |
| 2019-03-25  | This issue is the twelfth official release, which incorporates the following change:<br>Supported retaining backups for a maximum of 732 days.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |

| Released On | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                   |
|-------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2019-02-15  | This issue is the eleventh official release, which incorporates the following changes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Added section <a href="#">Restoring a Replica Set Backup to an On-Premises Database</a>.</li><li>• Deleted the specification confirmation page and related description from the pay-per-use DB instance scaling.</li></ul>                                                                                                     |
| 2019-01-07  | This issue is the tenth official release, which incorporates the following changes:<br>Added a new method to change the DB instance name.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                     |
| 2018-11-23  | This issue is the ninth official release, which incorporates the following change:<br>Supported downloading error logs and slow query logs for DB instances of DDS Community Edition.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                         |
| 2018-11-02  | This issue is the eighth official release, which incorporates the following changes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Supported changing the pay-per-use replica set instance to yearly/monthly.</li><li>• Supported changing pay-per-use DB instances to yearly/monthly in batches.</li><li>• Supported renewing yearly/monthly DB instances in batches.</li></ul>                                                                                    |
| 2018-09-26  | This issue is the seventh official release, which incorporates the following changes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Supported changing the CPU or memory of a DB instance without interrupting services.</li><li>• Interconnected with Tag Management Service (TMS).</li></ul>                                                                                                                                                                      |
| 2018-09-06  | This issue is the sixth official release, which incorporates the following changes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Supported changing the billing mode of cluster instances from pay-per-use to yearly/monthly.</li><li>• Supported case-sensitive manual backup names.</li><li>• Supported modifying the description of parameter groups created by users.</li><li>• Supported scaling down of Community Edition instance CPU and memory.</li></ul> |
| 2018-08-03  | This issue is the fifth official release, which incorporates the following changes:<br>Supported downloading backup files.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                    |

| Released On | Description                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                        |
|-------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 2018-07-02  | This issue is the fourth official release, which incorporates the following changes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Supported changing a security group.</li><li>• Supported the task center.</li><li>• Optimized the automated backup policy.</li><li>• Allowed users to delete automated backups.</li><li>• Changed the maximum storage capacity of replica sets to 2,000 GB.</li></ul> |
| 2018-06-15  | This issue is the third official release, which incorporates the following change:<br>Supported the enabling or disabling the automated backup policy.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                             |
| 2018-06-01  | This issue is the second official release, which incorporates the following changes: <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>• Supported DB instances that are compatible with MongoDB 3.4 Community Edition.</li><li>• Supported the second verification when a DB instance is restarted or deleted.</li></ul>                                                                                      |
| 2018-05-04  | This issue is the first official release.                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                                          |